2

ENGLISH GRAMMAR BOOK

# Grammarway

Jenny Dooley - Virginia Evans

with answers

Express Publishing

# Grammarway 2

## with answers

Jenny Dooley-Virginia Evans

Express Publishing

**Express Publishing**

**Liberty House, New Greenham Park, Newbury,**
**Berkshire RG19 6HW**
**Tel.: (0044) 1635 817 363**
**Fax: (0044) 1635 817 463**
**e-mail: inquiries@expresspublishing.co.uk**
**INTERNET http: //www.expresspublishing.co.uk**

© Jenny Dooley - Virginia Evans

Design & Illustration © Express Publishing

Colour Illustrations: Terry Wilson

ISBN 1-84216-366-3 **(with answers)**
1-903128-91-9 **(without answers)**

# Contents


Introduction ..... 5

Unit 1 Present Continuous - Present Simple (Present Simple vs Present Continuous) ..... 6
Unit 2 Past Simple (Regular/Irregular Verbs) - Used to ..... 14
Unit 3 Past Continuous (Past Continuous vs Past Simple) ..... 20
Unit 4 Present Perfect Simple (Past Simple vs Present Perfect Simple) ..... 26
Unit 5 The Future (Future Simple - Be going to - Present Continuous) ..... 32

Revision 1 (Units 1 - 5) ..... 38

Unit 6 Relatives (Relative Pronouns/Adverbs - Identifying/Non-Identifying Clauses) ..... 40
Unit 7 Present Perfect Continuous (Present Perfect Continuous vs Present Perfect Simple) ..... 46
Unit 8 Pronouns - Both/Neither - All/None - Possessives ..... 52
Unit 9 Modal Verbs I (Must/Have to/Mustn't - Needn't - Can/Could/Be able to) ..... 60
Unit 10 The Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form" ..... 66

Revision 2 (Units 1 - 10) ..... 72

Unit 11 Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous ..... 74
Unit 12 Modal Verbs II (May/Might/Could - Should/Ought to - Shall/Will) ..... 80
Unit 13 The Passive ..... 86
Unit 14 Reported Speech ..... 92
Unit 15 Conditionals - Wishes ..... 100

Revision 3 (Units 1 - 15) ..... 108

Unit 16 Adjectives - Adverbs - Comparisons ..... 110
Unit 17 Nouns - Articles (The Plural - Countable Nouns/Uncountable Nouns - Indefinite/Definite Article) ..... 118
Unit 18 Some/Any/No - A lot of/Much/Many - (A) little/(A) few ..... 126
Unit 19 Questions - Question Tags ..... 132
Unit 20 Prepositions (Time - Place - Movement) - Linking Words ..... 140

Revision 4 (Units 1 - 20) ..... 148

Irregular Verbs ..... 152
Key to the Exercises ..... 153

# Introduction

**Grammarway 2** is the second book in a four-level grammar series presented in full colour for learners of the English language at post-elementary level. The book is available in two editions - with or without answers - and is suitable for self-study or classroom use as a supplement to any course at this level.

The aim of the book is to help learners understand English grammar structures through comprehensive theory tables and functional examples, accompanied by a wealth of attractive photographs and illustrations.

The book adheres to the principle that every structure should first be heard, then practised in oral and, finally, in written form. Based on the use of full-colour visual stimuli, the book encourages learners to speak before writing, and allows them to practise English structures through a variety of enjoyable and useful activities.

The book consists of **20 units**, each focusing on a particular grammar topic.

A typical unit contains:

- presentation of grammar structures by means of visual prompts
- simple, concise explanations of the grammar structures
- examples in everyday conversational English, together with a few expressions showing slightly more formal use
- exercises practising the new structures, to help learners use correct, appropriate patterns in everyday situations
- speaking and writing activities to practise the new structures in oral and written form
- a revision box in each unit

A **revision unit** follows every five units to consolidate material presented in previous units.

The Student's Book is accompanied by a **Teacher's Book** containing:

- guidance on presenting the theory of each unit, with or without Picture Flashcards
- a full key to the exercises in the Student's Book
- four tests in two separate versions each

The **Picture Flashcards** which accompany this book can be used for lively, motivating presentation of the target grammar structures.

**Thanks**

The authors would like to thank Rania Dunn, Anna Miller, Laura Houston, Jonathan Harrison and Steven Davies for their help in producing this book. Many thanks to the Express Publishing design team. We would also like to thank those institutions and teachers who piloted the manuscript, and whose comments and feedback were invaluable in the production of the book.

# UNIT 1
# Present Continuous - Present Simple

## Present Continuous

*Bob and Claire **aren't working** today. They're on holiday.*
*They**'re having** a nice time.*
*What **is Bob doing** now?*
*He **is taking** a picture of Claire.*

**We form the present continuous with the auxiliary verb to be and the main verb with the -ing suffix. The main verb with the -ing suffix is the same in all persons.**

| Affirmative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Long form | Short form | |
| I | am | 'm | reading. |
| He/She/It | is | 's | reading. |
| You/We/They | are | 're | reading. |

| Interrogative | | |
|---|---|---|
| Am | I | reading? |
| Is | he/she/it | reading? |
| Are | you/we/they | reading? |

| Negative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Long form | Short form | |
| I | am not | 'm not | reading. |
| He/She/It | is not | isn't | reading. |
| You/We/They | are not | aren't | reading. |

## Spelling Rules

- **Verbs ending in -e, drop the -e and take the -ing suffix.**
  *dance - dancing* **but** *see - seeing*
- **Verbs ending in one stressed vowel between two consonants, double the last consonant and take the -ing suffix.**
  *run - running* *get - getting*
  **but** *open - opening*
- **Verbs ending in -l, double the -l and take the -ing suffix.**
  *travel - travelling*
- **Verbs ending in -ie, drop the -ie and take -y + -ing.**
  *lie - lying* *die - dying*

**1** **Add *-ing* to the verbs and put them in the correct boxes.**

*talk, dive, swim, shop, lie, study, mend, write, try, take, cook, stop, sleep, die, sit*

| + ing | -ie ➡ y + ing |
|---|---|
| talking | |
| -e ➡ ing | double consonant + ing |
| | |

**2** **Fill in the gaps with the *present continuous*.**

1 We .....are/'re tidying..... (tidy) the garden.
2 I ..... (not/do) my homework.
3 ..... (Dad/paint) the living-room?
4 He ..... (run).
5 The girls ..... (play) with their dolls.
6 John ..... (study) at university.
7 Helen and I ..... (make) dinner.
8 ..... (you/listen) to the radio?

## Use

**We use the present continuous:**

- **for actions happening now, at the moment of speaking.**

*He **is reading** a book right now.*

- **for temporary actions happening around now, but not at the actual moment of speaking.**

*She **is practising** for a concert these days. (She's not practising right now; she's resting.)*

- **with 'always' for actions happening too often and about which we wish to express our annoyance or criticism.**

*'You're **always interrupting** me!' (annoyance)*

- **for fixed arrangements in the near future.**

*He **is flying** to Milan in an hour. (It's been arranged.)*

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the present continuous include: *now, at the moment, these days, at present, always, tonight, still, etc.***

**3** **Look at the picture and put the verbs in brackets into the *present continuous*.**

Four people **1)** ...*are sitting*... (sit) at a table. They are in a restaurant. They **2)** ..... (have) dinner. They **3)** ..... (wear) smart clothes. The man **4)** ..... (wear) a suit. The parents **5)** ..... (smile) at each other and they **6)** ..... (talk). The children **7)** ..... (listen). The girl **8)** ..... (drink) some Coke. The boy **9)** ..... (eat) some bread. They **10)** ..... (enjoy) their meal.

## Short Answers

**In short answers we use only *Yes* or *No*, the subject pronoun and the auxiliary verb *is/isn't* or *are/aren't*. We do not repeat the whole question.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Are you leaving? | Yes, I am/we are. | No, I'm not/we aren't. |
| Is he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it is. | No, he/she/it isn't. |
| Are they ...? | Yes, they are. | No, they aren't. |

**4** **Look at the picture in ex. 3 again. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

1 the parents / wear / sports clothes?
*SA: Are the parents wearing sports clothes?*
*SB: No, they aren't. They're wearing smart clothes.*
2 the four people / have / dinner?
3 the children / talk?
4 the girl / drink / some juice?
5 the boy / eat / some ice-cream?

# Present Continuous - Present Simple

## Present Simple

*Richard Taylor and Sarah Perkins* ***work*** *in the same office.*
*What time* ***do they start*** *work?*
*Sarah* ***arrives*** *at work at 9 o'clock but Richard* ***doesn't get*** *to the office until 10 o'clock.*

**We form the present simple with the subject (i.e. the subject pronoun or noun) and the main verb. We usually add an -s to the third person singular in the affirmative. In the interrogative and negative forms, we use the auxiliary verb do/don't with I, you, we, they and does/doesn't with he, she and it. We do not add an -s to the main verb when it appears with does/doesn't.**

**Affirmative**

| | |
|---|---|
| I/You/We/They | read. |
| He/She/It | reads. |

**Interrogative**

| | |
|---|---|
| Do I/you/we/they<br>Does he/she/it | read? |

**Negative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I/You/We/They<br>He/She/It | do not<br>does not | don't<br>doesn't | read. |

## Spelling Rules

- **Most verbs take -s in the third person singular.**
  *I read - he reads*
- **Verbs ending in -ss, -sh, -ch, -x and -o, take -es.**
  *I kiss - he kisses, I brush - he brushes,*
  *I teach - he teaches, I fix - he fixes, I go - he goes*
- **Verbs ending in a consonant + y, drop the -y and take -ies.**
  *I try - he tries, I fly - he flies*
- **Verbs ending in a vowel + y, simply take -s.**
  *I buy - he buys*

**5** **Write the *third person singular* of the verbs in the list in the correct box.**

*dance, finish, study, open, mix, pray, put, miss, like, dry, do, catch, wash, say, cry, copy, watch, play, pass, begin*

| -s | -es | -ies |
|---|---|---|
| dances | finishes | studies |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... |

**6** **Fill in the gaps with the *present simple*.**

1 A: Where .....is..... (be) Jack?
  B: At school.
2 A: ..... (you/come) here very often?
  B: Yes, every evening.
3 A: I ..... (play) tennis in the summer.
  B: Really? So do I!
4 A: We ..... (leave) the house at 6:30 every morning.
  B: That's very early.
5 A: Sam ..... (not/know) anything about the party.
  B: I know. It's a surprise.

## Pronunciation

**In the present simple the suffix of the third person singular is pronounced:**

- **/ s / when the verb ends in a / f /, / k /, / p / or / t / sound.**
  *laughs, drinks, sleeps, hates*
- **/ ɪz / when the verb ends in a / s /, / ʃ /, / tʃ /, / dʒ / or / z / sound.**
  *misses, wishes, matches, arranges, rises*
- **/ z / when the verb ends in any other sound.**
  *dreams, stays, begins, stands, saves*

## Use

**The present simple is used for:**

- **permanent states.**
- **repeated actions or daily routines (often with adverbs of frequency such as: always, never, usually, etc.).**

*Mr Gibson **is** a businessman. He **lives** in New York. (permanent state)*
*He **usually starts** work at 9 am. (daily routine)*
*He **often stays** at the office until late in the evening. (daily routine)*

- **general truths or laws of nature.**
  *The moon **moves** round the earth.*

- **programmes or timetables** (trains, buses, etc.).
  *The bus **leaves** in ten minutes.*

**7** **Write the *third person singular* of the verbs in the correct box, then read them aloud.**

*laugh, kiss, read, look, speak, kick, put, catch, drive, brush, ride, walk, open, jump, play, know, cough, see, dance, close, help, listen, watch, wash, travel, write, lose, eat, rain, change*

| | |
|---|---|
| / s / | *laughs,* |
| / ɪz / | *kisses,* |
| / z / | *reads,* |

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the present simple include: *usually, always* (adverbs of frequency), etc., *every day/week/month/year*, etc., *on Mondays/Tuesdays, etc., in the morning/afternoon/evening, at night/the weekend*, etc.**

**8** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *present continuous* or the *present simple*.**

1 A: Where's James?
B: He ...*is/'s playing*... (play) football in the garden right now.
2 A: Bill ..... (dance) very well.
B: Yes, he's a good singer, too.
3 A: Lucy is very busy.
B: Yes. She ..... (work) very hard these days.
4 A: What ..... (you/do) on Saturdays?
B: I clean the house and go shopping.
5 A: Why ..... (you/pack) your suitcase?
B: Because I ..... (fly) to Paris tomorrow morning.
6 A: Fred ..... (not/know) how to swim.
B: That's because he's only three.
7 A: Max looks very fit.
B: Yes. He ..... (take) a lot of exercise these days.

## Adverbs of Frequency

- **We often use adverbs of frequency with the present simple. They show us how often something happens. They answer the question How often...?**

  *e.g. How often do you visit your aunt? I **always**/ **usually**/**sometimes** visit her on Sundays.*

| Adverbs of Frequency | |
|---|---|
| always | 100% |
| usually | 75% |
| often | 50% |
| sometimes | 25% |
| rarely/seldom | 10% |
| never | 0% |

- **Adverbs of frequency go before the main verbs (*visit, drink,* etc.), but after the verb *to be* and after auxiliary verbs such as *can, do, must,* etc.**

  *e.g. Peter **often visits** his grandparents at the weekend.*
  *Sharon **never drinks** coffee.*
  *Jim **is always** on time for work.*
  *Bob **can never** wake up early in the morning.*
  ***Do** you **often go** to the cinema at the weekend?*
  *Paul **doesn't usually eat** out on Sundays.*

- **The adverbs rarely, seldom and never have a negative meaning and they are never used with the word not.**

  *e.g. He **rarely goes** to the cinema.*
  *I **never take** sugar in my coffee.*

**9** **Rewrite the sentences putting the adverb in brackets in the correct place.**

1 You must brush your teeth twice a day. (always)
*You must always brush your teeth twice a day.*
2 Is he on time for work? (always)
.....
3 Karen has cereal for breakfast. (sometimes)
.....
4 Paul doesn't listen to music in the evening. (usually)
.....
5 The children help with the housework. (rarely)
.....
6 Must you play your music so loud? (always)
.....
7 Sheila can park her car properly. (never)
.....

**10** **Put the verbs in brackets into the presen simple or the *present continuous*.**

Charlie Foster **1)** ...*works*... (work) at a bakery. He **2** ..... (always/get up) ver early because he **3)** ..... (start work at four o'clock every morning. Charlie **4)** ..... ..... (not/be) at work this morning. A the moment he **5)** ..... (pack) a suitcase because he **6)** ..... (go) on holiday today. Charlie **7)** ..... (sing) to himself. He's very happy. Right now he **8)** ..... ..... (look for) his aeroplane tickets Where are they? He can't find them.There they are; unde his bed! Charlie **9)** ..... (call) a tax now. His plane **10)** ..... (leave in an hour. Where **11)** ..... (Charlie/go)? To Hawaii!

## Short Answers

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Do you get up early? | Yes, I/we do. | No, I/we don't. |
| Does he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it does. | No, he/she/it doesn't. |
| Do they ...? | Yes, they do. | No, they don't. |

**Note: In short answers, adverbs of frequency always go before the auxiliary verb.**

*e.g. Do you watch horror films on TV?*
*Yes, I **often do**. / No, I **never do**.*

**11** **Look at the text in ex. 10 again, then, in pairs, ask and answer questions about Charlie Foster, as in the examples.**

1 Charlie / work / at a bank?
*SA: Does Charlie work at a bank?*
*SB: No, he doesn't. He works at a bakery.*
2 Charlie / pack / a suitcase / at the moment?
*SA: Is Charlie packing a suitcase at the moment?*
*SB: Yes, he is.*
3 Charlie / start work / at 4 o'clock every morning?
4 Charlie / go on holiday / next week?
5 Charlie / sing to himself?
6 Charlie / look for his tickets / right now?
7 the plane / leave / in an hour?
8 Charlie / go / Tahiti?

# Present Simple versus Present Continuous

## Present Simple

- **The present simple is used for permanent states, for repeated actions and daily routines.**

*Claire Bryan **works** as a secretary.*
*She **starts** work at eight o'clock every day.*
*She **types** Mr Moore's letters.*

## Present Continuous

- **The present continuous is used for temporary actions happening at or around the moment of speaking.**

*It's nine o'clock. Claire is still at home because she is ill. She **is wearing** her pyjamas and she **is sitting** on her bed. She **isn't working** today.*

**12** **Look at the pictures and write sentences, as in the examples.**

1 taxi driver / drive a taxi / wash the taxi
*What does the taxi driver do?*
*He drives a taxi.*
*Is he driving a taxi now?*
*No, he isn't. He's washing the taxi.*

2 nurse / look after patients / read a book
.....
.....
.....

3 maid / clean the house / talk on the phone
.....
.....
.....

4 vet / treat animals / listen to music
.....
.....
.....

5 mechanic / repair cars / eat a sandwich
.....
.....
.....

6 waiter / serve customers / read a newspaper
.....
.....
.....

## Non-Continuous Verbs

**Some verbs do not have continuous tenses. These include:**

- ***Verbs of the senses:*** **see, hear, feel, taste, smell.**
  *e.g. This cake* ***tastes*** *delicious.*
  *(NOT: ~~This cake is tasting delicious.~~)*
- ***Verbs of perception:*** **know, remember, forget, recognise, understand, notice, realise, seem, sound, think, etc.** *e.g. I* ***don't know*** *his name.*
- ***Verbs which express likes and dislikes:*** **love, like, hate, dislike, enjoy, etc.**
  *e.g. Shirley* ***loves*** *jazz music.*
- ***Other verbs:*** **include, matter, need, belong, cost, prefer, mean, own, appear, believe, want, have (=possess), etc.**
  *e.g. That jacket* ***costs*** *a lot of money.*
  *(NOT: ~~That jacket is costing a lot of money.~~)*

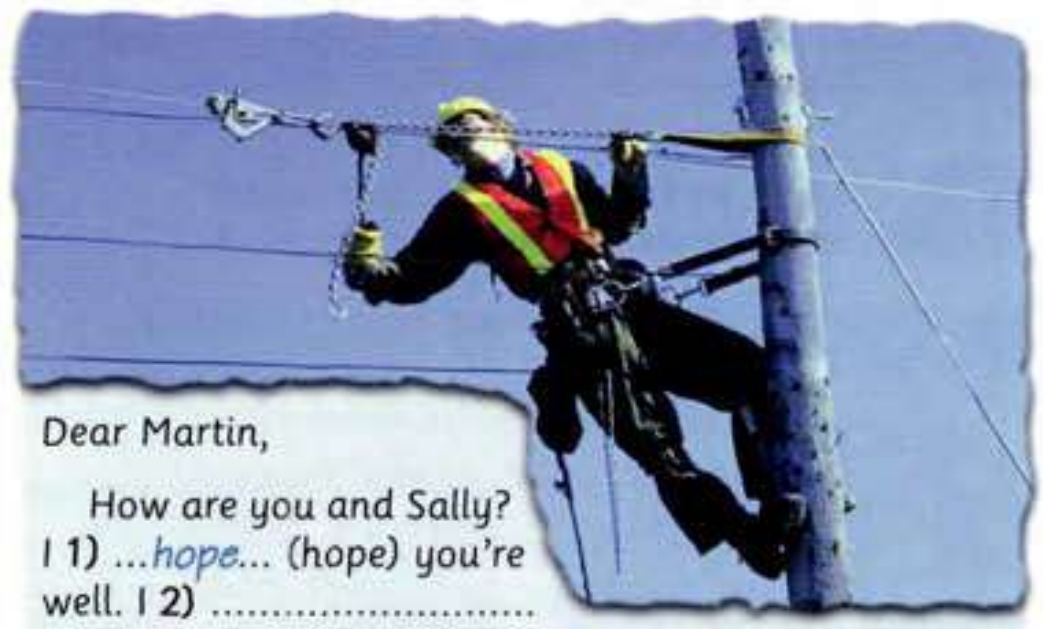
**13** **Read the following dialogue between a hotel owner and the receptionist. Put the verbs in brackets into the *present simple* or the *present continuous*.**

A: Good morning, Catherine. A special guest **1)** ...*is coming*... (come) to our hotel today.
B: Really! **2)** ..... (I/know) who it is?
A: I **3)** ..... (think) you do. He **4)** ..... (star) in the TV series, 'Rooftop', at the moment.
B: It **5)** ..... (be) Paul Roberts, isn't it? When **6)** ..... (he/come)? I can't wait to meet him in person!
A: At 3 o'clock this afternoon. But there are a few things you **7)** ..... (need) to know. First of all, he **8)** ..... (love) flowers. He also **9)** ..... (enjoy) having his breakfast in the dining-room, not in his room.
B: Why **10)** ..... (he/stay) at our hotel?
A: Because he **11)** ..... (want) some peace and quiet and he **12)** ..... ..... (not/like) to be disturbed by reporters.
B: I see. Well, let's hope that everything will be okay while he **13)** ..... (stay) here.

**14** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present simple* or the *present continuous*.**

1 Jason ...*is not coming*... (not/come) with us this evening.
2 What ..... (this sign/mean)?
3 We ..... (usually/meet) at the sports centre every Wednesday afternoon.
4 Greg ..... (train) for the next Olympic Games.
5 Michael Burns is very rich. He ..... (own) a department store.
6 John and Mary ..... (play) chess at the moment.
7 Peter ..... (not/usually/have) eggs for breakfast.
8 My father ..... (buy) a newspaper every day.
9 Mr and Mrs Dean ..... (not/go) to Mexico tomorrow.
10 '..... (Pièrre/speak) English?'
'No, but he ..... (speak) French.'

**15** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present simple* or the *present continuous*.**



Dear Martin,

How are you and Sally? I **1)** ...*hope*... (hope) you're well. I **2)** ..... ..... (write) to give you some good news. I have got a summer job for the holidays! I **3)** ..... ..... (repair) telephone lines for a telephone company.

I **4)** ..... (usually/ride) my bicycle to work because it's only a ten minute ride from home. We **5)** ..... (start) work at 8:30. We **6)** ..... (finish) at 4:30 on Mondays to Thursdays, but at 2:30 on Fridays, so I **7)** ..... (have) long weekends.

I **8)** ..... (work) very hard at the moment. To tell you the truth, I **9)** ..... (be) a bit nervous because my boss **10)** ..... (leave) for Scotland on business next week, so I'll be on my own. Lizzie says I **11)** ..... (worry) about it too much. She's probably right!

Please write with your news. Say hello to Sally for me.

Best wishes,
Richard

## 16 Correct the mistakes.

1 Steve goes fishing tomorrow.
2 Rebecca wash her hair every day.
3 I am visiting my grandparents every week.
4 Tim doesn't wants to do his homework.
5 He sits on the floor at the moment.
6 Do you watch TV in the evenings always?
7 Sarah is drinking coffee every morning.
8 They don't go usually on holiday in May.
9 Does she work late? No, she does never.
10 Peter looks for a new house at the moment.

## 17 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form of the *present simple or present continuous.*

*cost, leave, be, snow, like*

## ORAL Activity

**Look at picture A and say what the Hendersons usually do on Saturday morning, as in the example. Then, look at picture B and say what they are doing this Saturday morning.**

*e.g. Mr Henderson usually reads his newspaper.*

*e.g. Mr Henderson is taking pictures.*

## WRITING Activity

**Look at the Oral Activity and write about what the Hendersons usually do on Saturday mornings and what they are doing this Saturday morning. Start like this:**

On Saturday mornings Mr Henderson usually reads his newspaper. Mrs Henderson .....
.....

This Saturday morning the Hendersons are in the countryside. Mr Henderson is taking pictures. Mrs Henderson .....
.....
.....

# UNIT 2
# Past Simple - Used to

## Past Simple (Regular Verbs)

*Last summer, Julie and Brian **visited** Australia. They **stayed** at a lovely hotel in Sydney.*
*They **visited** the Sydney Opera House and they **walked** across the Sydney Harbour Bridge.*
***Did** they **enjoy** themselves? Yes, they did.*

**We form the past simple of regular verbs by adding -ed to the main verb.**
*e.g. She **watched** TV last night.*

**We form questions and negations with the auxiliary verb did/did not (didn't), the subject and the main verb without -ed.**
*e.g. **Did** she **watch** TV last night?*
*She **did not/didn't watch** TV last night.*

**Affirmative**

| | |
|---|---|
| I<br>He/She/It<br>You/We/They | } finished. |

**Interrogative**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Did | I<br>he/she/it<br>you/we/they | } finish? |

**Negative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I<br>He/She/It<br>You/We/They | did not | didn't | } finish. |

## Spelling Rules

- **Verbs ending in -e take only -d.** *dance - danced*
- **Verbs ending in a consonant + y, drop the y and take -ied.** *try - tried*
- **Verbs ending in a vowel + y, take -ed.**
  *play - played, stay - stayed*
- **Verbs ending in one stressed vowel between two consonants, double the last consonant and take -ed.**
  *plan - planned* ***but*** *open - opened*
- **Verbs ending in -l, double the l and take -ed.**
  *travel - travelled, quarrel - quarrelled*

**1** **Write the past simple of the verbs in the list in the correct box.**

*laugh, study, travel, pray, stop, close, cry, rob, call, love, tidy, dance, miss, drop, phone, enjoy, try, live, refer, look, carry*

| + ed | + d |
|---|---|
| *laughed* | |

| -y ➡ ied | double consonant + ed |
|---|---|
| | |

**2** **Make sentences using the prompts below as in the example.**

1 Olivia's room is clean now. (clean it/an hour ago)
*She cleaned it an hour ago.*
2 Helen isn't watching TV. (turn it off/half an hour ago)
3 Steve doesn't go to the gym any more. (stop/six months ago)
4 Mary is eating the cake. (bake it/half an hour ago)
5 Kim is having a party today. (arrange it/two weeks ago)
6 Rob doesn't live here any more. (move/three days ago)
7 Peter's house is tidy. (tidy it/two hours ago)

## Pronunciation

**The suffix -ed is pronounced:**

- **/ ɪd / when the verb ends in a / t / or / d / sound.**
  *posted, succeeded*
- **/ t / when the verb ends in a / k /, / s /, / tʃ /, / ʃ /, / f / or / p / sound.**
  *cooked, kissed, touched, wished, laughed, stepped*
- **/ d / when the verb ends in any other sound.**
  *arrived, prepared, showed, robbed*

**3** **Write the *past simple* of the verbs in the correct box, then read them aloud.**

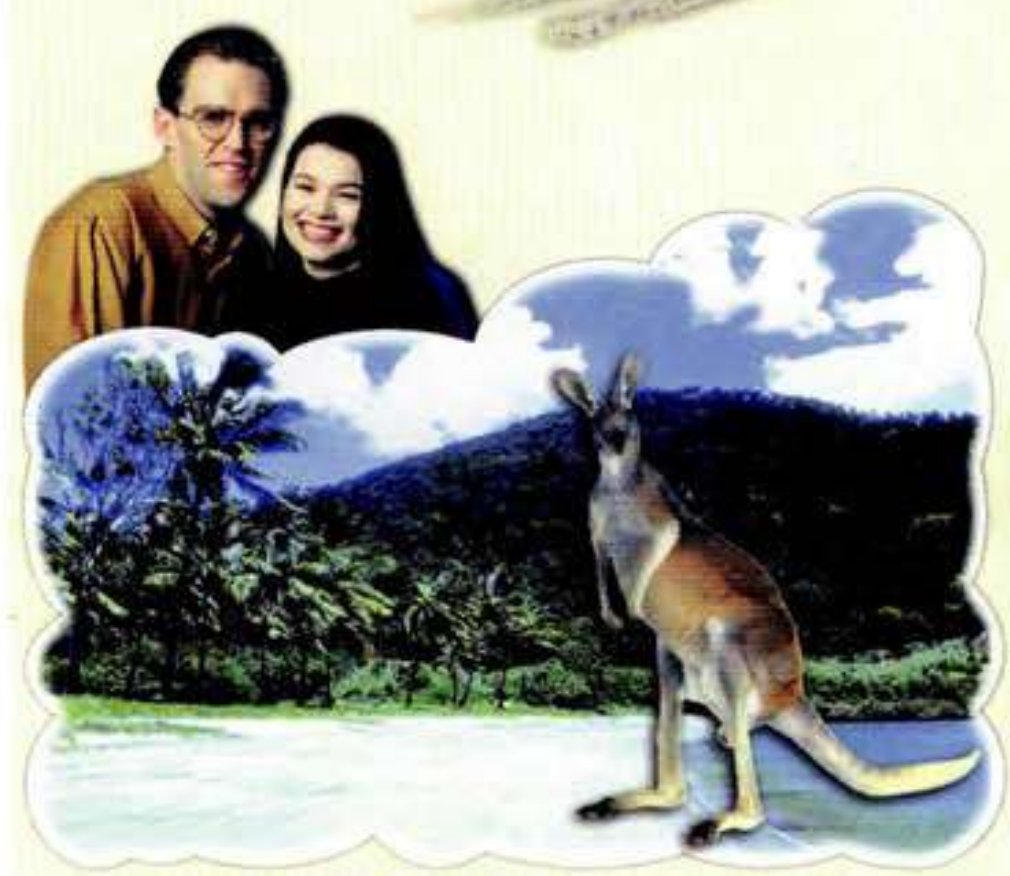
*want, open, wash, work, arrest, help, carry, visit, cook, clean, need, finish, load, live, watch, accept, laugh, stay, pass, type, persuade, arrange, rub*

| | |
|---|---|
| / ɪd / | *wanted* |
| / t / | |
| / d / | |

**4** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *past simple*.**

1 A: Sorry Mum, but I ...*dropped*... (drop) the glass on the floor.
B: Never mind. Just be careful next time.
2 A: ..... (you/watch) the horror film last night?
B: Yes, but I ..... (not/enjoy) it.
3 A: ..... (your neighbours/move) house yesterday?
B: Yes, we ..... (help) them move their boxes.
4 A: A train ..... (crash) last night.
B: I know. Luckily, all the passengers ..... ..... (survive).
5 A: Susan ..... (not/play) tennis yesterday.
B: I know. She's playing today instead.
6 A: ..... (you/see) Kate yesterday?
B: Yes. We ..... (have) lunch together.

## Past Simple (Irregular Verbs)



*Julie and Brian **went** swimming every day. They **saw** some kangaroos, but they **didn't see** any crocodiles. They **had** a lot of fun.*

**Irregular verbs do not form the past simple by adding -ed.**
*e.g. leave-left, cut-cut, swim-swam*
**(See list of irregular verbs on page 152.)**

**They form questions and negations with did/did not (didn't) and the root form (infinitive) of the verb.**
*e.g. They **left** - **Did** they **leave**? - They **didn't leave**.*

**Affirmative**

I / He/She/It / You/We/They } left.

**Interrogative**

Did — I / he/she/it / you/we/they } leave?

**Negative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I / He/She/It / You/We/They | did not | didn't | } leave. |

## Use

**We use the past simple:**

- **for actions which happened at a definite or stated time in the past; that is, we know when they happened.**

*They **graduated four years ago**. (When did they graduate? Four years ago. We know the time.)*

- **for actions which happened repeatedly in the past but don't happen any more. In this case we can use adverbs of frequency *(always, often, usually, etc.)*.**

*He **often played** football with his dad when he was five. (But he doesn't play football with his dad any more.)*

- **for actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.**

*They **cooked** the meal **first**.*

***Then** they **ate** with their friends.*

- **to talk about people who are no longer alive.**

*Princess Diana **visited** a lot of schools.*

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the past simple include: *yesterday, last night/week/month/year/Monday, etc., two days/weeks/months/years ago, then, when, in 1992, etc.***

**5** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *past simple*. What use of the past simple does each sentence show?**

1 Mother ...*cleaned*... (clean) the windows twice last week. (*definite/stated time*)
2 They ..... (not/go) on holiday to Spain last year.
3 Tina ..... (not/sing) in the school concert yesterday.
4 Paul often ..... (fight) with his brother when they were young.
5 Mother Teresa ..... (help) the poor people of India.
6 Her sister ..... (bake) this beautiful cake on Monday.
7 ..... (Sam/enjoy) his trip to Wales last weekend?
8 John ..... (fall) and ..... (hurt) his knee.

**6** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple*.**

**A** Lesley **1)** ...*bought*... (buy) her house two months ago. It is a beautiful cottage in the countryside. However, when Lesley **2)** ..... (decide) to buy it, it **3)** ..... (need) a lot of work. First, she **4)** ..... (decorate) all the rooms. Then, she **5)** ..... ..... (plant) lots of flowers in the garden. After that, she **6)** ..... (make) new curtains for all the windows. When it was ready, she **7)** ..... (move) in. That was last week. Now, Lesley is very happy.

**B** Claude Monet **1)** ...*was*... (be) a famous artist. He **2)** ..... (paint) lots of beautiful pictures in his lifetime. He often **3)** ..... (take) his paints and a canvas into the countryside. He **4)** ..... (love) to paint trees and rivers during the different seasons of the year. Monet **5)** ..... (create) a new kind of art called Impressionism. He **6)** ..... (die) in 1926, but many people still visit museums and galleries to look at his pictures.

## Short Answers

*e.g. Did you buy a gift for your mother? Yes, I did.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Did you ...? | Yes, I/we did. | No, I/we didn't. |
| Did he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it did. | No, he/she/it didn't. |
| Did they ...? | Yes, they did. | No, they didn't. |

**7** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple*.**

*Ferdinand Magellan 1) ...was... (be) a Portuguese sailor who 2) ..... (want) to sail around the world. Emperor Charles V of Spain 3) ..... (give) him five ships and two hundred and sixty-five Spanish sailors. They 4) ..... (leave) Spain on 20th September, 1519 and 5) ..... (begin) their long and dangerous journey.*

*On the journey, Magellan 6) ..... (discover) the Pacific Ocean. Unfortunately, he and many of the sailors 7) ..... (die) in a battle on 27th April, 1521. After that, a Spanish sailor 8) ..... (take) control of the ships and 9) ..... ..... (set off) to complete the voyage. Only one ship and sixteen men 10) ..... (survive) the journey. They 11) ..... (arrive) back in Spain on 6th September, 1522. They 12) ..... (be) the first men to sail around the world.*

**8** **Read the text in ex. 7 again and, in pairs, ask and answer questions as in the examples.**

1 Ferdinand Magellan / be / a Portuguese sailor?
   SA: *Was Ferdinand Magellan a Portuguese sailor?*
   SB: *Yes, he was.*
2 the Emperor of Spain / give him / fifteen ships?
   SA: *Did the Emperor of Spain give him fifteen ships?*
   SB: *No, he didn't. He gave him five ships.*
3 they / leave / Spain / 1619?
4 the journey / be / long and dangerous?
5 Magellan / discover / the Pacific Ocean?
6 Magellan / die / with soldiers / in battle?
7 a Spanish sailor / complete / voyage?
8 the remaining ship / reach / Spain / 1523

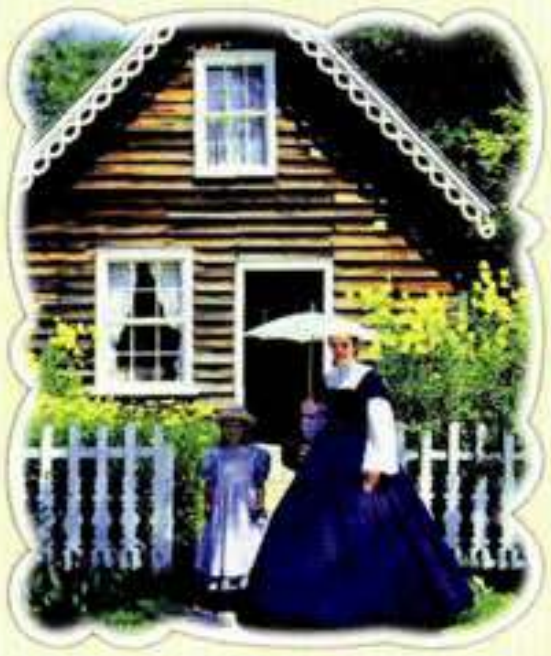
**9** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *past simple*.**

A: What **1)** ....*did you do*..... (you/do) last summer?
B: I **2)** ..... (work) in a fast food restaurant.
A: What kind of work **3)** ..... (you/do)?
B: I **4)** ..... (take) orders from customers.
A: **5)** ..... (you/earn) much money?
B: Yes, but I **6)** ..... (spend) most of it.
A: What **7)** ..... (you/spend) it on?
B: I **8)** ..... (go) on holiday to the Greek islands.
A: **9)** ..... (you/have) a good time?
B: Yes, it **10)** ..... (be) wonderful!

**10** ***You have just come back from a holiday. Your friend is asking you some questions.* Look at the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions giving your own answers.**

1 where / go?
   SA: *Where did you go?*
   SB: *I went to Spain.*
2 who / go with?
   .....
   .....
3 have / a good time?
   .....
   .....
4 stay / at a camp-site?
   .....
   .....
5 the weather / good?
   .....
   .....
6 what / do every day?
   .....
   .....
7 eat / at restaurants?
   .....
   .....
8 go / the beach?
   .....
   .....

## Used to



*People **used to dress** differently in the past.*
*Women **used to wear** long dresses.*
***Did** they **use to carry** parasols with them?*
*Yes, they did.*
*They **didn't use to go** out alone at night.*

- **Used to is used to talk about past habits or things that do not happen any more. It has the same form in all persons, singular and plural. It is followed by infinitive.**
  *e.g. Peter **used to eat** a lot of sweets. (=Peter doesn't eat many sweets any more.)*

  **We form questions and negations with the auxiliary verb did/did not (didn't), the subject and the verb "use" without -d.**
  *e.g. **Did** Peter **use to eat** many sweets?*
  *Mary **didn't use to stay** out late.*

- **We can use the past simple instead of "used to" with no difference in meaning.**
  *e.g. She **used to live** in the countryside.*
  *= She **lived** in the countryside.*

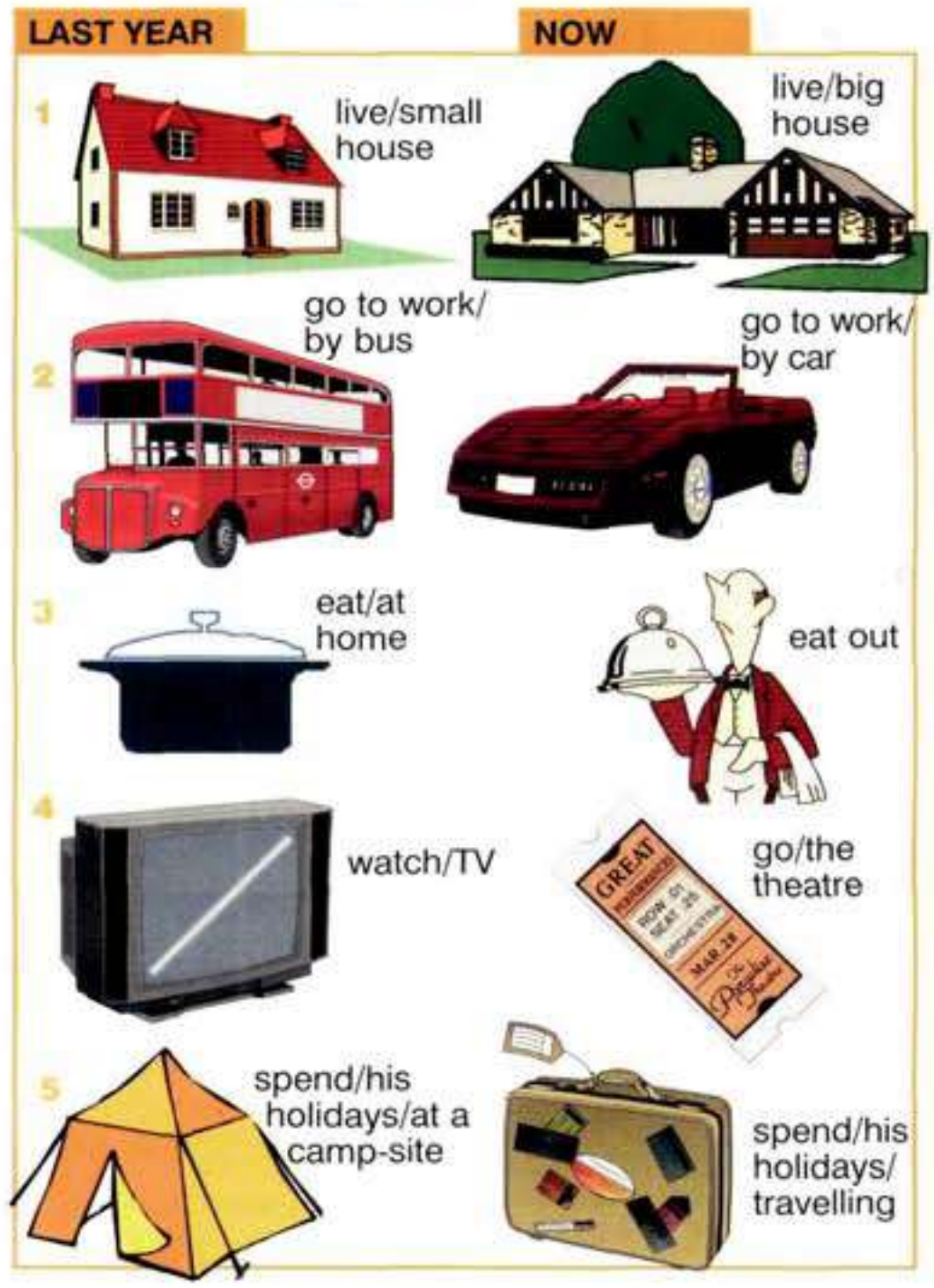
| Affirmative | | |
|---|---|---|
| I<br>He/She/It<br>You/We/They | } | used to travel. |

| Interrogative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Did | I<br>he/she/it<br>you/we/they | } | use to travel? |

| Negative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Long form | Short form | |
| I<br>He/She/It<br>You/We/They | did not | didn't | } use to travel. |

**11** ***Peter Gordon won a lot of money on the lottery last year.* Look at the pictures and say what Peter *used to do* and what he does now.**

e.g. *Peter used to live in a small house, but now he lives in a big house.*




**12** **Complete the sentences with the correct form of *used to* and the verb in brackets.**

1 I ...*didn't use to watch*... (not/watch) the news, but now I watch it every day.
2 My aunt ..... (drink) a lot of coffee, but now she prefers to drink tea.
3 We ..... (live) in a flat, but we live in a big house now.
4 ..... (you/go) to school on foot?
5 We ..... (not/like) each other, but now we're good friends.
6 I ..... (not/eat) vegetables. Now I eat them every day.
7 My sister ..... (play) the piano, but now she doesn't.
8 They..... (spend) their weekends in the countryside. They don't any more.

## Short Answers

*e.g. Did you use to go out often? Yes, I did./No, I didn't.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Did you ...? | Yes, I/we did. | No, I/we didn't. |
| Did he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it did. | No, he/she/it didn't. |
| Did they ...? | Yes, they did. | No, they didn't. |

**13** **In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts as in the example.**

SA: *Did you use to play with your friends when you were five?*
SB: *Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.*

1 play with your friends?
2 watch many cartoons?
3 go to bed late?
4 cry a lot?
5 make your bed?
6 listen to fairy tales?
7 have a bath every day?
8 drink milk?
9 dress yourself?
10 get pocket money?

## Revision Box

**14** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 Jacques Cousteau .....B..... the oceans.
**A** explores **B** explored **C** is exploring

2 Toby ..... a bicycle, but now he drives a car.
**A** is riding **B** used to ride **C** rides

3 I ..... an interesting book at the moment.
**A** don't read **B** read **C** am reading

4 He ..... home early yesterday because he felt ill.
**A** went **B** is going **C** used to go

5 Mr Jones ....., but he does now.
**A** used to travel **B** didn't use to travel **C** travelled

6 I ..... a noise, so I went to see what it was.
**A** heard **B** hear **C** am hearing

7 Bobby ..... how to use a computer at present.
**A** learnt **B** is learning **C** learns

8 My parents ..... to a party tonight.
**A** used to go **B** goes **C** are going

9 The ferry boat ..... every day at quarter past two.
**A** leaves **B** leave **C** is leaving

10 I ..... getting up early in the morning.
**A** likes **B** don't like **C** doesn't like

## ORAL Activity

**Look at the pictures below. Picture A shows what people used to do in their free time sixty years ago and Picture B what they do nowadays. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.**

*e.g. SA: Did people use to watch TV sixty years ago?*
*SB: No, they didn't.*

watch TV - dress differently - spend more time together - talk to each other a lot - go out at night much - read more

A

B

## WRITING Activity

**Now, using the pictures and the notes from the Oral Activity, complete the text below.**

Life was different sixty years ago. People **1)** ..... ..... (not/have) the things we have nowadays. First of all, they **2)** ..... (not/watch) TV and they **3)** ..... (talk) to each other a lot. Nowadays, people **4)** ..... (not/talk) to each other much because they **5)** ..... (spend) a lot of time watching TV. Sixty years ago, people **6)** ..... (dress) differently. For example, women **7)** ..... (wear) longer dresses and men usually **8)** ..... (wear) a suit and a tie on Sundays. .....
.....

# UNIT 3
# Past Continuous

***Were** Paul and Claire **working** at 8 o'clock last night?*
*No, they weren't.*
*They **were having** dinner at a restaurant.*

**We form the past continuous with was/were (past simple of the verb to be) and the main verb with the -ing suffix. We form questions by putting was/were before the subject. We form negations by putting the word not after was/were.**

| Affirmative | | |
|---|---|---|
| I | was | studying. |
| He/She/It | was | |
| You/We/They | were | |

| Interrogative | | |
|---|---|---|
| Was | I | studying? |
| Was | he/she/it | |
| Were | you/we/they | |

| Negative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Long form | Short form | |
| I | was not | wasn't | studying. |
| He/She/It | was not | wasn't | |
| You/We/They | were not | weren't | |

**1** ***A fire broke out yesterday at Crofton Electronics. What were the people doing when the fire broke out?* Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.**

SA: *What was Tim doing ?*
SB: *He was sitting at his desk.*

**2** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past continuous*.**

A: What **1)** *...was happening...* (happen) at the time of the robbery?
B: Well, I **2)** ..... (sit) in my office. I **3)** ..... (talk) to an employee. Some of the staff **4)** ..... (put) food onto the shelves. Several customers **5)** ..... (do) their shopping and a cashier **6)** ..... (stand) behind the till.
A: Can you tell me anything about the robbers?
B: Yes. They **7)** ..... (wear) black masks and they **8)** ..... (hold) guns. They **9)** ..... (shout).
A: How did they get away?
B: They drove off in a car which **10)** ..... (wait) outside.

## Use

**We use the past continuous:**

- **for an action which was in progress at a stated time in the past. We do not know when the action started or finished.**

*At three o'clock yesterday afternoon Mike and his son* ***were washing*** *the dog. (We do not know when they started or finished washing the dog.)*

- **for a past action which was in progress when another action interrupted it. We use the past continuous for the action in progress (longer action) and the past simple for the action which interrupted it (shorter action).**

*He* ***was reading*** *a newspaper* ***when*** *his wife* ***came****. (was reading = longer action; came = shorter action)*

- **for two or more actions which were happening at the same time in the past (simultaneous actions).**

*The people* ***were watching while*** *the cowboy* ***was riding*** *the bull.*

- **to give the background information in a story.**

*The sun* ***was shining*** *and the birds* ***were singing****. Tom* ***was driving*** *his old truck through the forest.*

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the past continuous include:**
***while, when, as, all day/night/morning,*** **etc.**

**when/while/as + past continuous (longer action)**
**when + past simple (shorter action)**

**3** **Match Column A with Column B.**

| Column A | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | While I was driving home, | .....e..... |
| 2 | We were watching the children | ..... |
| 3 | He cut his finger | ..... |
| 4 | At eight o'clock yesterday morning | ..... |
| 5 | As she was crossing the street, | ..... |
| 6 | While they were talking , | ..... |

| Column B | |
|---|---|
| a | as he was chopping wood. |
| b | he was sleeping in his bed. |
| c | while they were playing. |
| d | she slipped and fell. |
| e | I ran out of petrol. |
| f | the doorbell rang. |

**4** **Join the sentences using *as, when* or *while*, as in the example.**

1 Tina was cooking. She burnt herself.
...*As/When/While Tina was cooking, she burnt herself.* ...
...*Tina was cooking when she burnt herself.* ...
2 Laura was making some tea. She dropped the kettle.
3 Mrs Jason was sitting in the garden. It started raining.
4 Peter was driving his car. He got a flat tyre.
5 She was walking in the park. A dog attacked her.

**5** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple* or *past continuous*. Which is the longer action in each sentence?**

1 As I ...*was doing*... (do) the washing-up, I ...*broke*... (break) a glass. *"Doing the washing-up is the longer action."*
2 We ..... (walk) in the woods when the storm ..... (begin).

3 John ..... (repair) his motor bike when his mother ..... (arrive).
4 I ..... (eat) my lunch when the phone ..... (ring).
5 He ..... (ride) his bicycle to school when he ..... (drop) his bag.
6 We ..... (see) a bad accident as we ..... (drive) to the airport.
7 Tom ..... (watch) the match when the TV ..... (break down).
8 We ..... (talk) when she ..... ..... (come) into the room.

## Short Answers

*e.g. Were you sleeping at eleven o'clock last night?*
*Yes, I was.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Were you ...? | Yes, I was/we were.<br>No, I wasn't/we weren't. |
| Was he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it was.<br>No, he/she/it wasn't. |
| Were they ...? | Yes, they were.<br>No, they weren't. |

**6** ***Yesterday, the people in the picture had to wait two hours for their boat which was late. What were they doing while they were waiting?* Look at the picture and describe it using the past continuous.**

e.g. *The two girls were playing with a ball.*

**7** **Look at the picture in ex. 6 again and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

1 the two girls / play / tennis?
*SA: Were the two girls playing tennis?*
*SB: No, they weren't. They were playing volleyball.*
2 the young man / listen to / music?
.....
.....
3 the older man / read / a book?
.....
.....
4 the women / knit?
.....
.....
5 the Japanese tourists / take / pictures?
.....
.....

**8** **Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous.**

**A** Yesterday, I went for a walk in the park. While I was there, I saw lots of children who **1)** ...*were playing*... (play). There was a man who **2)** ..... (walk) his dogs. He **3)** ..... (throw) sticks and the dogs **4)** ..... (run) to catch them. A gardener **5)** ..... ..... (plant) some flowers and some old ladies **6)** ..... (sit) on a park bench enjoying the warm sunshine. It was lovely.

**B** Harriet and Liam got married last weekend. It was a beautiful wedding. The bridesmaids **1)** ..... (wear) pink dresses and they **2)** ..... (all/carry) small bouquets of pink and white flowers. The photographer **3)** ..... (take) photographs and the bride's mother **4)** ..... ..... (cry) because she was so happy. The sun **5)** ..... (shine) and the couple **6)** ..... (smile) at everyone.

**9** **In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

1 at six o'clock yesterday evening?
*SA: What were you doing at six o'clock yesterday evening?*
*SB: I was doing my English homework.*
2 at two o'clock this morning?
3 at half past nine last Sunday evening?
4 an hour ago?
5 at noon last Saturday?

# Past Continuous versus Past Simple

## Past Continuous

**We use the past continuous for:**

- **an action which was in progress (was happening) at a stated time in the past. We do not know when the action started or finished.**

*At nine o'clock yesterday morning, the plane* ***was flying*** *to Tahiti from New York. (We do not know when it left or reached its destination.)*

- **two actions which were happening at the same time in the past.**

*He* ***was listening*** *carefully while they* ***were explaining*** *the plan to him.*

## Past Simple

**We use the past simple for:**

- **a complete action at a stated time in the past.**

*The plane* ***landed*** *at the airport at eight o'clock yesterday morning. (The time is stated. The action is complete. The plane landed.)*

- **actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.**

*First she* ***read*** *the advertisement and then she* ***called*** *the company.*

**10** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past continuous* or the *past simple*.**

1 We ...*went*... (go) swimming every week when we were young.
2 Simon..... (dance) when he fell and hurt his leg.
3 Why ..... (you/laugh) all through your history lesson yesterday?
4 I ..... (drink) a glass of milk every day when I was a child.
5 Todd often ..... (ride) horses when he was a boy.
6 Bill ..... (write) a letter when his mother came home.
7 It ..... (rain) while I was waiting for the bus.
8 I .....(play) the guitar when I was young, but I don't any more.
9 Debbie .....(sing) in the school choir many years ago.
10 Liz ..... (clean) the windows when I saw her.

**11** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past continuous* or the *past simple*.**

**A** Steve **1)** ...*had*... (have) an accident yesterday. He **2)** ..... (drive) his car when a bird **3)** ..... (fly) into the windscreen. He **4)** ..... ..... (try) to stop quickly but he **5)** ..... (crash) into a wall. Luckily, he **6)** ..... (not/be) hurt.

**B** Last week, I **1)** ..... (go) to a talk by a famous writer. He **2)** ..... (talk) about his new book when I **3)** ..... (arrive). He **4)** ..... (give) such an interesting talk that I **5)** ..... (be) disappointed when it **6)** ..... (end).

**C** Julie **1)** ..... (tidy) her bedroom last weekend. While she **2)** ..... (tidy) it, she **3)** ..... (find) some of the toys she **4)** ..... (have) when she was a child. She **5)** ..... (not/want) to throw them away, so she **6)** ..... (put) them in a box and **7)** ..... (store) them in the attic.

**12** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past continuous* or the *past simple*. Then, put the pictures in the right order.**

It **1)** ...*was*... (be) a beautiful spring morning when Emma and her father **2)** ..... (decide) to visit Seaton Castle. The sun **3)** ..... (shine) and the birds **4)** ..... (sing). Emma **5)** ..... (feel) very excited. The castle **6)** ..... (be) very old and made of stone. They **7)** ..... (climb) the steps to the top of the tower. While they **8)** ..... (admire) the view, they **9)** ..... (hear) some noises. They **10)** ..... (look) around but they **11)** ..... ..... (not/see) anybody. 'That's funny,' said Emma. 'I **12)** ..... (think) I **13)** ..... (see) someone standing over there.' After a while they **14)** ..... (decide) to visit the cellar of the castle. Emma **15)** ..... (examine) an old barrel when she **16)** ..... (hear) the door of the cellar close behind them. 'Dad,' she **17)** ..... (say), 'don't close the door!' 'But, I **18)** ..... ..... (not/close) it, dear,' her father said. Emma **19)** ..... (turn) around and **20)** ..... (see) a shadow on the wall. She **21)** ..... (know) then that the ghost of Seaton Castle **22)** ..... (watch) them!

**13** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple* or the *past continuous*.**

*Dear Rick,*

*I'm writing to you from my hotel in Switzerland.*

*I'm having a lovely time here but you can't imagine what* **1)** ...*happened*... *(happen) to me yesterday. I* **2)** ..... *(be) on the mountain with my friends and we* **3)** ..... *(have) a lovely time because the snow* **4)** ..... *(be) perfect for skiing. Unfortunately the sun* **5)** ..... *(shine) on the snow, so it* **6)** ..... *(be) difficult to see. Suddenly, I* **7)** ..... *(hit) a rock and I* **8)** ..... *(fall) over. Luckily I* **9)** ..... *(not/be) seriously hurt — I just* **10)** ..... *(get) a few bruises. Now I'm trying to be more careful!*

*I'll see you when I get back.*

*Best wishes,*
*Kevin*

**14** **Correct the mistakes.**

1. Philip was washing the car while the fire started.
2. Neil was studying when his sister was listening to music.
3. Harriet was opening the door and walked into the house.
4. We were having lunch at a lovely restaurant every day when we were on holiday.
5. Brian drank tea at five o'clock yesterday afternoon.
6. Dad was repairing the TV while Mum cooked dinner.
7. I was going to the cinema last Saturday.
8. I was buying a new dress for my party yesterday.
9. While Jeff built the garden shed, he hurt himself.
10. While the teacher were speaking, the students were listening to him.

# Revision Box

**15** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present continuous, present simple, past simple or past continuous.***

1 I ...*was cleaning*... (clean) the windows when the telephone ..... (ring).
2 'What is that noise?' 'James ..... (repair) his bike at the moment.'
3 He ..... (read) a book when his mother ..... (call) him.
4 '..... (be) you busy?' 'No, what ..... ..... (you/want) me to do?'
5 They ..... (sing) while we ..... ..... (play) some music.
6 Susan is a nurse. She usually ..... (work) at night.

**16** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 The earth ...*B*... round the sun.
**A** moved **B** moves **C** is moving
2 Sarah ..... a new car last week.
**A** is buying **B** buy **C** bought
3 I ..... when suddenly the dog began to bark.
**A** study **B** studied **C** was studying
4 They ..... hard at the moment.
**A** are working **B** were working **C** worked
5 I ..... home from work when it began to snow.
**A** am walking **B** walk **C** was walking
6 Jane ..... the receiver and dialled the number.
**A** lifts **B** was lifting **C** lifted
7 Walt Disney ..... Mickey Mouse.
**A** was creating **B** creates **C** created
8 Helen ..... to the gym every day, but now she doesn't.
**A** used to go **B** didn't use to go **C** was going
9 We ..... for a new house at the moment.
**A** are looking **B** look **C** looked
10 Ted ..... his father in the garden every Sunday.
**A** was helping **B** helps **C** is helping
11 The ferry to Calais ..... at 3 o'clock every day.
**A** leave **B** leaves **C** was leaving
12 You ..... your music too loud! I can't stand it!
**A** were always playing **B** always play
**C** are always playing

## ORAL Activity

**Look at the picture. It shows what the people were doing/did when a bank robbery happened. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.**

*e.g. SA: What was the manager doing?*
*SB: He was talking on the phone.*
*SA: What did he do when he saw the robbers?*
*SB: He stood up.*

manager / talk on the phone / stand up
cashier / count some money / put his hands up
child / sit on a chair / start to cry
old lady / wait in the queue / faint

## WRITING Activity

**Imagine that one of the people who saw the robbery is writing a letter to a friend to tell him/her what was happening/ happened on that day. Using the picture and your notes from the Oral Activity, complete the letter.**

Dear ..... (friend's name),

I'm writing to tell you what happened to me yesterday while I was depositing some money in the bank.

I was standing in the queue when two bank robbers suddenly appeared at the door. .....
.....
.....

# UNIT 4
# Present Perfect Simple

*Bob and Mary* ***have been*** *on holiday for a week. They****'ve visited*** *a lot of tropical beaches and they****'ve swum*** *in the blue sea.* ***Have they bought*** *any souvenirs yet? No, they haven't.*

**We form the present perfect simple with the auxiliary verb have/has and the past participle. We form the past participle of regular verbs by adding -ed to the verb.**
*e.g. play - play****ed***

**We form the past participle of irregular verbs differently.**
*e.g. see -* ***seen*** **(See list of irregular verbs on page 152.)**

**We form questions by putting have/ has before the subject.** *e.g.* ***Have they read*** *the book?*

**We form negations by putting not between have/has and the past participle.**
*e.g. He* ***has not/hasn't repaired*** *the TV yet.*

**Affirmative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | have | 've | finished/ left. |
| He/She/It | has | 's | |
| You/We/They | have | 've | |

**Interrogative**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Have | I | finished/ left? |
| Has | he/she/it | |
| Have | you/we/they | |

**Negative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | have not | haven't | finished/ left. |
| He/She/It | has not | hasn't | |
| You/We/They | have not | haven't | |

**1** **Make sentences using the prompts below as in the example.**

1 read / a newspaper / yesterday
*...I haven't read a newspaper since yesterday....*
2 have / a break / this morning
3 travel / abroad / last summer
4 watch / TV / last night
5 buy / a present / December
6 write / a letter / Christmas
7 eat / dinner / at a restaurant / last month

## Short Answers

*e.g. Has she called her parents? Yes, she has.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Have you ...? | Yes, I/we have. |
| | No, I/we haven't. |
| Has he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it has. |
| | No, he/she/it hasn't. |
| Have they ...? | Yes, they have. |
| | No, they haven't. |

**2** ***Sam hasn't seen John for a long time. He wants to know what John has done since they last met.*** **In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.**

*SA: Have you found a new job?*
*SB: Yes, I have.*

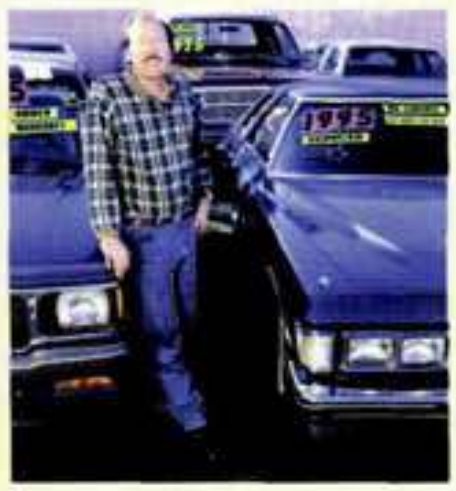
## Use

**We use the present perfect simple:**

- **for actions which happened at an unstated time in the past. The exact time is not mentioned because it is not important. We put more emphasis on the action.**

*Kim **has bought** a new mobile phone. (When did she buy it? We don't mention the exact time because it is not important. What is important is the fact that she's got a new mobile phone.)*

- **for actions which started in the past and are still continuing in the present.**

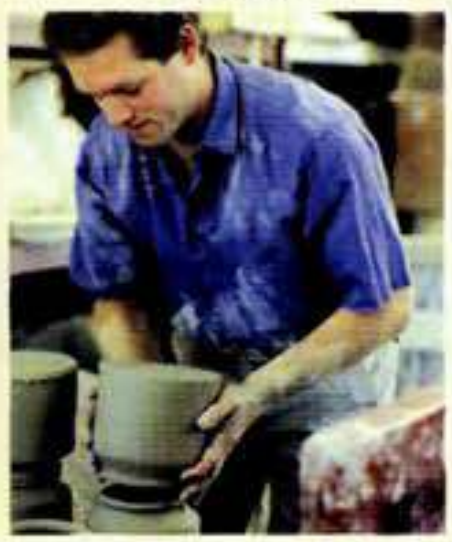


*He **has been** a car salesman since 1990. (He started working as a car salesman in 1990 and he still is a car salesman.)*

- **for actions which have recently finished and their results are visible in the present.**

*They **have done** their shopping. (We can see that they have finished their shopping because they're leaving the supermarket and there are bags in their trolley.)*

- **with today, this morning/afternoon, etc. when these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking.**



*He **has made** ten pots **this morning**. (It is still morning so this period of time is not finished.)*

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the present perfect simple include:**

***for, since, already, just, always, recently, ever, how long, yet, lately, never, so far, today, this morning/afternoon/week/month/year, etc.***

**Affirmative**

- **for** *e.g. I have known them **for** six years.*
- **since** *e.g. She has been ill **since** Monday.*
- **already** *e.g.We have **already** eaten our lunch.*
- **just** *e.g. I have **just** posted the letter.*
- **always** *e.g. She has **always** wanted to travel abroad.*
- **recently** *e.g. He has **recently** published a book.*

**Questions**

- **ever** *e.g. Have you **ever** met anybody famous?*
- **how long** *e.g. **How long** have you lived here?*
- **yet** *e.g. Has Paul left **yet**?*
- **lately** *e.g. Have you seen any good films **lately**?*

**Negations**

- **for** *e.g. I haven't talked to him **for** days.*
- **since** *e.g. They haven't been abroad **since** 1990.*
- **yet** *e.g.She hasn't answered my letter **yet**.*
- **lately** *e.g. I haven't seen John **lately**.*
- **never** *e.g.They have **never** worked abroad.*

**3** **Fill in *since* or *for*.**

1 .....*for*..... ten years
2 ..... I was five
3 ..... 8 o'clock
4 ..... two hours
5 ..... ages
6 ..... six months
7 ..... lunch-time
8 ..... we moved to this town
9 ..... three minutes

**4** **Match Column A with Column B.**

| Column A | Column B |
|---|---|
| 1 Jerry hasn't typed | a visited Japan? |
| 2 She has always | b talked to them. |
| 3 Have you ever | c the letter yet. |
| 4 We've already | d to New York twice this year. |
| 5 Tim has already been | e known them? |
| 6 How long have you | f wanted to be a singer. |

**5** **Fill in the gaps with *recently, how long, yet, always, ever, already, since* or *never*.**

1 A: ...*How long*... has she been an air hostess?
B: ..... she left school.
2 A: Jonathan has moved house ..... .
B: What's his new address?
3 A: I can't phone you. I haven't got a phone ..... .
B: Well, I'll come to your house instead.
4 A: Has she finished her homework .....?
B: Yes. She's ..... finished it.
5 A: He eats a lot of vegetables, doesn't he?
B: Yes. He's ..... liked vegetables.
6 A: Have you ..... been to China?
B: No, I have ..... been there.

**6** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *present perfect simple*.**

1 A: Have you ever given an interview?
B: No, I ...*have never done*... (never/do) that.
2 A: What time does the train leave?
B: It ..... (just/leave)!
3 A: Is the new restaurant good?
B: I ..... (not/eat) there yet.
4 A: Shall I do the shopping now?
B: No, I ..... (already/do) it.
5 A: Julia, are you ready?
B: No, I ..... (not/dry) my hair yet.
6 A: Would you like to have lunch with me?
B: No, thanks. I ..... (already/eat).

## Have gone (to) - Have been (to)

- **They have gone to the cinema. (This means that they haven't come back yet. They are still at the cinema.)**
- **She has been to London. (This means that she has visited London; she is not there now. She has come back.)**

**7** **Fill in the gaps with *have/has been (to)* or *have/has gone (to)*.**

1 'Where are Tom and Lucy?' 'They ...*have gone to*... the theatre.'
2 I don't live in London. I ..... only ..... there once.
3 I am alone in the house. My parents ..... ..... on holiday.
4 'Is Philip at home?' 'No, he ... ..... work.'
5 My friend wants us to go on holiday to Madrid this summer, but I ..... already ..... there.
6 Anita has just come home. She ..... ..... the theatre.
7 'Where are Julia and Dave?' 'They ..... ..... the sports centre with their friends.'

**8** **Fill in the gaps with *have/has been (to)* or *have/has gone (to)*.**

A: Hi, Roger! Where is everybody? The house is very quiet.
B: Well, Mum **1)** ...*has gone to*... the cinema with Mavis.
A: How about your sister?
B: She's having a shower right now because she **2)** ..... the gym.
A: I **3)** ..... the gym twice this week. It's really exhausting.
B: As for Dad, he **4)** ..... the library to get some books.
A: So, how about going to that new café that's just opened near the park?
B: Oh, I **5)** ..... there. It isn't that great. Why don't we call Steve and go to the basketball court?
A: Okay, let's do that instead.

# Past Simple versus Present Perfect Simple

## Past Simple

**We use the past simple for:**

- **an action which happened at a stated time in the past.**

*Ed Prior **won** his first gold medal in 1992. (When? In 1992. The time is mentioned.)*

- **an action which started and finished in the past.**

*Annette **had** a cold for two days. (She hasn't got a cold any more.)*

## Present Perfect Simple

**We use the present perfect simple for:**

- **an action which happened at an unstated time in the past.**

*Ed Prior **has won** a lot of medals. (When? We don't know. The time is not stated.)*

- **an action which started in the past and is still continuing in the present.**

*Lucy **has had** a cold for three days. (She has still got a cold.)*

**9** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple* or the *present perfect simple*.**

1 A: I ...*went*... (go) to the new gym yesterday.
B: It's good, isn't it? I ..... (go) there a few times.
2 A: ..... (you/write) to Simon lately?
B: Yes, I ..... (write) him a letter last week.
3 A: How long ..... (you/be) married?
B: Only for six months. I ..... (get) married last December.
4 A: I ..... (not/see) Sam for a long time.
B: Really? I ..... (see) him yesterday at the swimming pool.
5 A: ..... (you/type) the report yet?
B: Yes, I ..... (finish) it half an hour ago.
6 A: Mary ..... (know) Steven for six years.
B: When ..... (they/meet)?
A: When they ..... (be) at university together.
7 A: ..... (you/ever/play) rugby?
B: Yes, I have. I ..... (play) for the first time last week.
8 A: James ..... (write) a new book last year.
B: I know. I ..... (read) some great reviews about it in the newspaper.

**10** **In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below as in the example.**

*SA: Have you ever been to the USA?*
*SB: Yes, I have.*
*SA: When did you go?*
*SB: I went in 1996.*

go/the USA (When)

plant/a tree (Where)

sing/in a choir (When)

save/your money (Why)

meet/a politician (Who)

travel/by boat (When)

## 11 Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple* or the *present perfect simple*.

Dear Margaret,

Thank you very much for your letter which I 1) ...*received*... (receive) last week. I 2) ..... (be) really happy to hear from you after all this time.

I've got a lot of news to tell you about myself. I 3) ..... (get) a new job nine months ago. I work as a reporter for our local TV station now. I 4) ..... (have) many interesting experiences so far. When I first 5) ..... (start) work, the manager 6) ..... (ask) me to interview our old school headmaster. He 7) ..... (be) so surprised to see me with a microphone in my hand!

Last month, a fire 8) ..... (break out) in a big factory in the area. I 9) ..... (be) the only reporter who 10) ..... (manage) to talk to the owner! That 11) ..... (make) me feel very proud.

As you can see, I enjoy my job very much. I 12) ..... ..... (meet) a lot of important people and I 13) ..... (have) the opportunity to see lots of new places. I 14) ..... (buy) a new car because my old one 15) ..... (break down) a couple of weeks ago.

I have to go now because they 16) ..... (just/inform) me that I have to fly by helicopter to Middleford. I have to talk to people whose homes were damaged by the storm which 17) ..... (hit) the area last night. You see, I don't have a moment's rest!

Keep in touch.

Love,
Rosie

## 12 Put the verbs in brackets into the *present perfect simple* or the *past simple*.

A: Hello, Billy. I **1)** *haven't seen* (not/see) you for a long time.
B: Yes, I **2)** ..... (be) very busy recently.
A: Really? Tell me what you **3)** ..... (do) since we last **4)** ..... (see) each other.
B: Well, I **5)** ..... (get) my degree last month and then I **6)** ..... (move) house.
A: When **7)** ..... (you/move)?
B: Last week, but I **8)** ..... (not/unpack) everything yet.
A: I **9)** ..... (phone) you on Tuesday but there **10)** ..... (be) no answer.
B: I **11)** ..... (be) busy at my new house then.
A: Never mind, I only **12)** ..... (want) to invite you to a party next week at my house.
B: Great! Thank you.

## 13 Put the verbs in brackets into the *present perfect simple* or the *past simple*.

1 Mr and Mrs Patel ...*won*... (win) two free tickets to Paris in a TV show last week.
2 First, Robert ..... (brush) his teeth, then he ..... (go) to bed.
3 '..... (you/ever/see) a lion?' 'Yes, I saw one when I ..... (go) to Kenya in 1996.'
4 I ..... (not/see) my family for two years.
5 'Where's John?' 'He ..... (go) fishing for the day with his father.'
6 My sister ..... (not/play) the violin since she was twelve.
7 I ..... (already/see) this film. Let's watch something else.
8 Last week, Fred ..... (fall) off a ladder and ..... (break) his arm.
9 I ..... (never/hear) such a moving song before.
10 Jennifer ..... (always/want) to get Harrison Ford's autograph.

### IN OTHER WORDS

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 He has never travelled by boat before.
**time** It's the ***first time he has travelled*** by boat.
2 Sharon hasn't been to a party for two months.
**went** The last time ***Sharon went to a party*** was two months ago.
3 It's a long time since Mary visited Helen.
**for** Mary ***has not visited Helen for*** a long time.

## 14 Complete each sentence with two to five words, including the word in bold.

1 Kate hasn't phoned her mother for a week.
**phoned** The last time ...*Kate phoned her mother was*... a week ago.
2 They have never visited Vienna before.
**time** It's the ..... Vienna.
3 It's a long time since I ate out.
**for** I ..... a long time.
4 Roger hasn't played tennis for six weeks.
**played** The last time ..... tennis was six weeks ago.
5 It's years since Mr Smith went on holiday.
**has** Mr Smith ..... for years.
6 John hasn't been to his country house since Easter.
**went** The last time John ..... was at Easter.

**15** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 We have bought a new sofa last month.
2 Jim lives in Germany for three years.
3 My father has went fishing.
4 She is just moved house.
5 We have eaten lunch at one o'clock.
6 Sophie has do her homework.
7 Ann and Tim have got married ten years ago.
8 I am at school since nine o'clock.

## Revision Box

**16** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

Dear Bert,

I 1) ...'m writing... (write) to tell you what a great time we 2) ..... (have) at the Sour Grapes concert last weekend. It's a pity you 3) ..... (not/come).

The concert 4) ..... (take) place in the football stadium near the university. There 5) ..... (be) about 80,000 people there. While we 6) ..... (wait) to get in, we 7) ..... (see) the members of the group arrive in a big black limo. They 8) ..... ..... (have) bodyguards with them. Anyway, we 9) ..... (find) our seats and 10) ..... (wait) impatiently for the concert to begin. The Sour Grapes 11) ..... ..... (recently/record) an album which 12) ..... (become) very successful.

The concert 13) ..... (last) for two and a half hours. I 14) ..... (send) you some photos that Alex 15) ..... ..... (take) when we 16) ..... (be) there. We 17) ..... (hear) that the Sour Grapes 18) ..... (give) a big concert in London next month. Perhaps you can see them there.

Best Wishes,
Roger

## ORAL Activity

**Read the notes about Paul Vern who is a famous runner. Make sentences using the prompts given as in the example.**

*e.g. Paul Vern* ***was born*** *in Sussex.*

- be born / in Sussex
- always want / be a runner
- start running / at the age of seven
- win / the school championship / when / be /15 years old
- join / the national team / four years ago
- win / several medals / so far
- recently receive / the *"Athlete of the Year"* award
- get married / last month
- already take part / in two international championships

## WRITING Activity

**Imagine you want to write an article about Paul Vern for your school newspaper. Use your notes from the Oral Activity to write a short text. You can begin like this:**

*Paul Vern is a famous runner who competes internationally. He was born in Sussex.*.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

# UNIT 5
# The Future

## Future Simple

*A: I'm sure we'**ll have** a great time at Joan's party tomorrow night.*
*B: Yes, I agree. All our friends **will be** there.*
*A: **Will** your father **let** you take the car?*
*B: No, I'm afraid he **won't**.*

**We form the future simple with will and the bare infinitive. Will is used for all persons.**
*e.g. Susan **will post** the letters tomorrow morning.*

**We form questions by putting will before the subject.**
*e.g. **Will Kate** lend you her book?*
**We form negations by putting not after will. The short form of will not is won't.**
*e.g. He **will not/won't pay** the bill.*

**Affirmative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | will | 'll | phone. |
| He/She/It | will | 'll | |
| You/We/They | will | 'll | |

**Interrogative**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Will | I | phone? |
| Will | he/she/it | |
| Will | you/we/they | |

**Negative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | will not | won't | phone. |
| He/She/It | will not | won't | |
| You/We/They | will not | won't | |

## Use

**We use the future simple:**

- **for future actions which may or may not happen.**

*We'**ll visit** Disney World one day.*

- **for predictions about the future.**
  *Life **will be** better fifty years from now.*

- **for threats or warnings.**

*Stop or I'**ll shoot**.*

- **for promises or on-the-spot decisions.**

*I'**ll help** you with your homework.*

- **with the verbs hope, think, believe, expect, etc., the expressions I'm sure, I'm afraid, etc. and the adverbs probably, perhaps, etc.**
  *I **think** he **will** support me.*
  *He **will probably** go to work.*

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the future simple include:**

***tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week/month/year, tonight, soon, in a week/month/year, etc.***

**1** ***What will life be like in the 21st century?* Look at the prompts and make sentences using *will* or *won't*, as in the example.**

1 People / live longer ✓
*People will live longer.*
2 Robots / do most of the work ✓
3 People / use electric cars ✗
4 Pollution / disappear ✓
5 People / die of serious diseases ✗
6 Children / stop going to school ✗
7 People / go on holiday to the moon ✓

## Will/Shall

**We use:**

- **Will you ...? to ask someone to do something for us (request).**
  e.g. ***Will you*** *post these letters for me, please?*
  *(= Can you post these letters for me, please?)*
- **Shall I ...? when we offer to do something for someone else.**
  e.g. ***Shall I*** *help you clean your room?*
  *(= Do you want me to help you clean your room?)*
- **Shall we ...? to make a suggestion.**
  e.g. ***Shall we*** *go to the theatre tonight?*
  *(=Why don't we go to the theatre tonight?)*

**2** **Ask questions using the prompts, as in the example.**

1 The garden is very untidy. (I / cut / the grass)
*Shall I cut the grass?*
2 It's a lovely evening. (we / go for / a walk)
.....
3 I need a hot drink. (I / make / some tea)
.....
4 It's very quiet in here. (I / turn on / the radio)
.....
5 The Smiths are back. (we / visit / them)
.....
6 I've cut my finger. (I / get / a plaster)
.....

**3** **What does *will/shall* express in each sentence? Underline the correct meaning.**

1 Tidy your room or I won't let you go to the party. (threat/request)
2 Your daughter will have a very successful career. (warning/prediction)
3 Shall I carry your shopping bags for you? (offer/suggestion)
4 I'll buy a present for my mother. (on-the-spot decision/prediction)
5 Will you take out the rubbish, please? (suggestion/request)

**4** **Replace the words in italics with *Will you, Shall I* or *Shall we*, as in the example.**

1 *Why don't we* spend our holidays in Spain this summer?
*Shall we spend our holidays in Spain this summer?*
2 *Do you want me to* go to the supermarket for you?
.....
3 *Can you* pick up the children from school for me, please?
.....
4 *Why don't we* listen to that new CD?
.....
5 *Do you want me to* book the tickets for you?
.....
6 *Can you* take my jacket to the dry-cleaner's for me, please?
.....

## Short Answers

e.g. *Will you pay the bills? Yes, I will.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Will you ...? | Yes, I/we will.<br>No, I/we won't. |
| Will he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it will.<br>No, he/she/it won't. |
| Will they ...? | Yes, they will.<br>No, they won't. |

**5** **In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.**

SA: *Will you have a party on your birthday this year?*
SB: *Yes, I will. / No, I won't.*

1 have a party on your birthday this year?
2 go to university when you finish school?
3 travel abroad if you have enough money?
4 go out with your friends at the weekend?
5 watch TV this evening?
6 study hard for next term's exams?
7 learn how to drive next summer?

**6** **Answer the following questions about yourself using *I think/I hope/I expect I'll ...* or *I'm sure/I'm afraid I'll ...*, as in the example.**

1 Where will you be at 5 o'clock tomorrow afternoon?
*I expect I'll be at home.*
2 Where will you go at the weekend?
3 Where will you spend your holidays?
4 What will you do if you fail your exams?
5 When will you buy your own car?
6 Who will you ask for help if you are in trouble?

**NOTE:**

**We do not use the future simple after: while, before, until, as soon as, after, if and when. We use the present simple instead.**
*e.g. I'll make a phone call **while** I **wait** for you.*
*(NOT: ... ~~while I will wait for you~~.)*

**"When" can be followed by the future simple if it is used as a question word.**
*e.g. **When will** you return?*
*I don't know **when** Helen **will** be back.*

**"When" is followed by the present simple if it is used as a time word.**
*e.g. Please phone me **when** you **finish** work.*

**7** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present simple* or the *future simple*.**

1 They ...*will/'ll go*... (go) to school when they ..... ..... (be) five years old.
2 I ..... (call) you before I ..... ..... (leave) for Paris.
3 He ..... (write) a letter to her every day while he ..... (be) at college.
4 We ..... (do) our homework when we ..... (get) home.
5 John ..... (fix) the tap as soon as he ..... (come) back from work.
6 When ..... (you/pack) your suitcase?
7 I ..... (not/do) anything until you ..... (be) ready.
8 When ..... (you/phone) me?
9 I promise I ..... (buy) you a present when I ..... (return) from my holiday.
10 When she ..... (pass) her driving test, she ..... (buy) a car.

# Be Going To

*He **is going to throw** the ball.*

**We use be going to:**

- **for plans and intentions we have about the near future.**
  *e.g. Bob **is going to drive** to Manchester tomorrow morning.*
- **when there is evidence that something is going to happen in the near future.**
  *e.g Look at that tree. It **is going to fall down**.*

**Affirmative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | am | 'm | going to leave. |
| He/She/It | is | 's | |
| You/We/They | are | 're | |

**Interrogative**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Am | I | going to leave? |
| Is | he/she/it | |
| Are | you/we/they | |

**Negative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | am not | 'm not | going to leave. |
| He/She/It | is not | isn't | |
| You/We/They | are not | aren't | |

**8** **Fill in each gap with *be going to* and one of the verbs from the list.**

*rescue, explode, jump, fall*

1 She ...*is going to jump*... out of the plane.

2 The car ..... ..... into the river.

3 The aeroplane ..... ..... .....

4 He ..... ..... the boy.

## Short Answers

*e.g. Are you going to call him? Yes, I am.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Are you ...? | Yes, I am/we are.<br>No, I'm not/we aren't. |
| Is he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it is.<br>No, he/she/it isn't. |
| Are they ...? | Yes, they are.<br>No, they aren't. |

**9** ***Jennifer and Mark are going to spend their holidays in different places this summer.* Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.**

SA: *Is Jennifer going to take her passport?*
SB: *Yes, she is.*

| | JENNIFER | MARK |
|---|---|---|
| take/passport | ✓ | ✓ |
| travel/by train | ✗ | ✓ |
| buy/souvenirs | ✓ | ✓ |
| spend/much money | ✓ | ✗ |
| hire/a car | ✓ | ✗ |

**10** **Fill in the gaps with *will/shall* or the correct form of *be going to* and the verb in brackets.**

A: **(1)** ...*Shall we go*... (we/go) to the football match on Saturday?
B: I can't. I **(2)** ..... (help) my sister.
A: Oh yes. She is moving house, isn't she?
B: That's right. **(3)** ..... (you/help) us?
A: Yes, I'd like to. What time **(4)** ..... (I/come) to your house?
B: I'm not sure yet. I **(5)** ..... (probably/phone) you on Friday to tell you. Is that alright?
A: Yes. I think I **(6)** ..... (be) in then.
B: Okay. **(7)** ..... (we/go) for a walk now?
A: I'd rather not. Look at those black clouds. It **(8)** ..... (rain). Let's stay in and watch a video.
B: Great idea.

**11** **Fill in the gaps with *shall, will* or the correct form of *be going to*.**

1 A: The shops are closed tomorrow.
B: I ...*will*... buy bread and milk today then.
2 A: ..... we tell Mr Peck about the accident?
B: That's a good idea. Maybe he can help.
3 A: It's too dark in here to read.
B: Is it? I ..... turn on the light.
4 A: Please come and see us.
B: We ..... visit you soon, that's a promise.
5 A: ..... I wear a jumper or a coat?
B: It's very cold. Take your coat.
6 A: Can we go out to play, Mum?
B: No, we ..... have dinner now.

## Compare the following examples

**We can use the future simple, be going to, present continuous or present simple to talk about future actions.**

a) *He'**ll sell** his car.*
*(will: the future action may or may not happen)*

b) *She'**s going to study** abroad next year.*
*(be going to: to express intention)*

c) *They'**re leaving** for Mexico tomorrow.*
*(present continuous: for an arranged action)*

d) *The bus **leaves** at nine o'clock.*
*(present simple: for timetables)*

**12** **A** ***Jonathan is not satisfied with his life as it is. He has already decided to change a number of things.* Look at the prompts and say what he intends to do, as in the example.**

- move to the city centre
  *He is going to move to the city centre.*

- sell his car

- buy a bigger house

- marry Susan

- apply for a job with a law firm

**B** ***Now look at Jonathan's diary. What has he already arranged to do?* Make sentences, as in the example.**

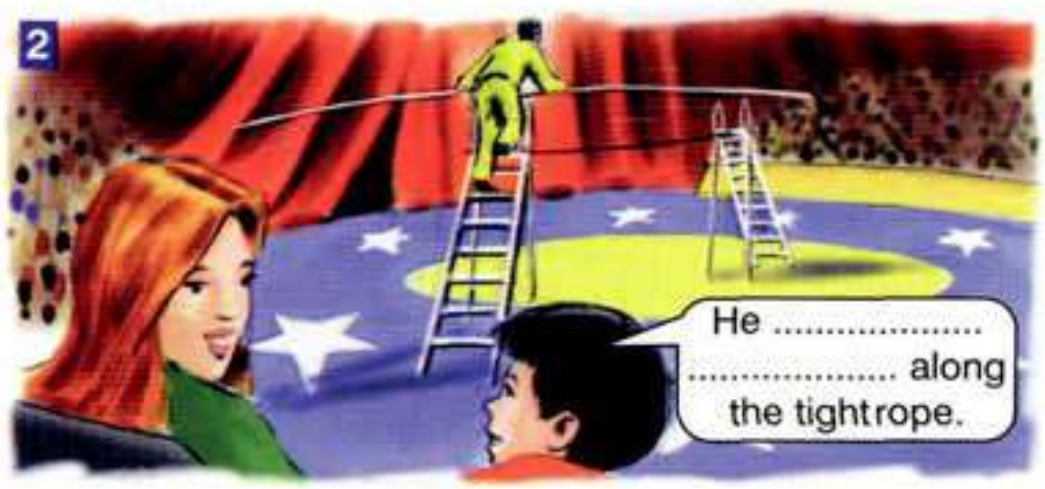
- Monday, 8th April – move to/the city centre
  *He's moving to the city centre on Monday, 8th April.*
- Tuesday, 9th April – Mr Brown come/collect/the car
- Wednesday, 10th April – sign the contract/for a new house
- Friday, 12th April – have an interview with Mr Ford at 10 o'clock
- Sunday, 20th June – get married

**13** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present continuous* or the *present simple*.**

1 "...*Is Gordon coming*... (Gordon/come) with us tonight?" "No, he ...*isn't*... (be/not)"
2 My sister ..... (go) to university in September.
3 What time ..... (the play/start) tomorrow?
4 Natalie ..... (have) a birthday party on Saturday.
5 Megan ..... (sing) in the school concert tomorrow night.
6 The flight to Berlin ..... (leave) at six o'clock.
7 The Browns ..... (move) to their new house this weekend.
8 What time ..... (the ferry/reach) Calais tomorrow afternoon?

**14** **Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct tense.**

*walk, come, post*



**15** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 Will I take the children to the playground for you?
2 I'll call you when I will finish work.
3 Will you to clean the carpet, please?
4 The film is starting at 8 o'clock.
5 Wait here until he will come.
6 The Queen won't not attend the parade tomorrow.

# Revision Box

**16** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

Dear Martha,

I 1) ...'m writing... (write) to tell you my good news.

I 2) ..... (save) enough money from my part-time job and, at last, I 3) ..... ..... (open) a flower shop. My father 4) ..... (own) a shop years ago and he 5) ..... (give) me some advice and suggestions. He 6) ..... (think) that my shop 7) ..... (be) a success, because there isn't another flower shop in the area.

The shop isn't ready yet. My brother 8) ..... ..... (already/paint) the inside of the shop and tomorrow he 9) ..... (paint) the outside. I 10) ..... (need) to buy a new sign. My mother 11) ..... (want) me to call the shop "Rose", but I 12) ..... ..... (still/think) about it. Anyway, I just hope the local people 13) ..... (like) it.

I 14) ..... (start) work next Monday. I 15) ..... (probably/phone) you some time next week if I 16) ..... (have) time. Wish me luck.

Best wishes,
Nicky

## ORAL Activity

**Rob Brown and Molly Gould are opera singers. A reporter has interviewed them about their summer plans. Look at the table and, in pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts, as in the example.**

*e.g. SA: Is Rob going to give any concerts in the summer?*
*SB: Yes, he is. Is Molly going to give any concerts in the summer?*
*SA: Yes, she is.*

Rob Brown Molly Gould

| | Rob Brown | Molly Gould |
|---|---|---|
| • give / concerts | ✓ | ✓ |
| • go / to India | ✓ | ✗ |
| • appear / in a TV show | ✗ | ✓ |
| • go on / holiday in August | ✓ | ✓ |
| • take part / in charity events | ✓ | ✓ |
| • sing / at the Queen Mother's birthday celebrations | ✗ | ✗ |
| • make / a record | ✓ | ✗ |
| • sing / in a rock opera | ✗ | ✓ |

## WRITING Activity

**Look at your notes from the Oral Activity above and complete the newspaper article about Rob Brown and Molly Gould.**

*Rob Brown and Molly Gould, up-and-coming opera singers, talked to our reporter, Emma Smith, yesterday. She asked them about their future plans, and this is what she found out:*

*Rob and Molly are going to give concerts in the summer. Rob* .....
.....
.....
.....

# Revision 1 (Units 1 - 5)

## 1 Rewrite the sentences putting the adverb in brackets in the correct place.

1 I go to bed after midnight. (seldom)
*I seldom go to bed after midnight.*
2 I don't drink tea in the morning. (often)
.....
3 She washes the dishes after dinner. (usually)
.....
4 I eat in restaurants. (rarely)
.....
5 Do they go for a walk on Sunday afternoons? (often)
.....
6 Do you visit your grandparents on Saturdays? (usually)
.....
7 Mary is late for meetings. (never)
.....
8 They don't go abroad on holiday. (usually)
.....

## 2 Put the verbs in brackets into the *present simple* or the *present continuous*.

A: Excuse me. What time **1)** ...*does the bus for Plymouth leave*...? (the bus for Plymouth/leave)
B: It **2)** ..... (leave) in half an hour. **3)** ..... ..... (you/go) to Plymouth too?
A: Yes. I **4)** ..... (visit) my granddaughter. She **5)** ..... (live) there. And you?
B: I **6)** ..... (live) there too. I **7)** ..... ..... (do) a course at the college.
A: What subject **8)** ..... (you/study)?
B: Tourism.
A: That's interesting.
B: I **9)** ..... (come) here twice a week because I **10)** ..... (work) in a hotel at the moment. It's work experience.
A: Yes, I **11)** ..... (think) that is very important. **12)** ..... (you/like) the work?
B: Yes, I **13)** ..... (love) it. Ah, look! Here comes the bus!

## 3 Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple* or the *past continuous*.

1 He ...*was watching*... (watch) TV when the telephone ...*rang*... (ring).
2 I ..... (clean) the house while he ..... (work) in the garden.
3 When we ..... (find) the cat it ..... (play) under the bed.
4 Joan ..... (have) a shower when the window cleaner ..... (come).
5 Grandma ..... (knit) while Grandad ..... (smoke) his pipe.
6 When I ..... (arrive) home, Father ..... (paint) the front door.
7 Bob and Sally ..... (walk) when it ..... (start) to rain.
8 What ..... (you/talk) about when I ..... (come) in?
9 I ..... (read) my newspaper when they ..... (knock) on the door.
10 As Fiona ..... (wash) the glass, she ..... (cut) her finger.
11 Mother ..... (break) the vase while she ..... (dust) it.
12 My brother ..... (build) a sandcastle while I ..... (swim) in the sea.

## 4 Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple* or the *present perfect simple*.

Well-known pop singer Zippy Spring **1)** ...*has recently signed*.... (recently/sign) a new record deal with Star Records in London.

Zippy's success **2)** ..... (begin) five years ago when he **3)** ..... (record) a song which **4)** ..... (go) to the top of the charts. However, he **5)** ..... (have) a car accident six months ago and **6)** ..... (stay) in hospital for a long time.

He **7)** ..... (make) his first public appearance three weeks ago and **8)** ..... (thank) his fans for all their love and support.

The music he plays **9)** ..... (be) popular with older people since the beginning of his career, but recently younger people **10)** ..... (start) to take an interest too.

Zippy only **11)** ..... (sign) the deal last week but he **12)** ..... (already/write) a number of songs for his new record. He **13)** ..... (just/announce) that he **14)** ..... (start) to plan his next European tour.

## 5 Fill in the gaps with *has/have been (to)* or *has/have gone (to)*.

1 A: I ...*have*... never ...*been to*... Austria, but I would love to go.
B: I ..... there three times. It's a beautiful country.

2 A: ..... you ..... the Italian restaurant in town?
B: No, but Pauline ..... there twice. She said it was lovely.

3 A: Are Mandy and Kate coming to the cinema?
B: No, they ..... out with their cousins.

4 A: Where is Dad?
B: He ..... work.
A: But it's Sunday. He doesn't work on Sunday!

## 6 Fill in the gaps with *already, yet, ever, never, just, so far, since, how long, always* or *for*. Some of them can be used more than once.

A: **1)** ...*How long*... have you been in Rome?
B: I've been here **2)** ..... last week. What about you?
A: I've been here **3)** ..... only three days. Which places have you visited **4)** ..... ?
B: Well, I've **5)** ..... visited the Vatican museum twice and I've spent a whole morning in the Piazza di Spagna.
A: I haven't been to the Vatican **6)** ....., but I intend to. Have you eaten at a traditional restaurant **7)** ..... ?
B: No, I haven't. But I've **8)** ..... visited Fontana di Trevi.
A: Oh, yes. I've **9)** ..... wanted to go there and throw a coin in the water! Have you **10)** ..... been to Venice?
B: No, I have **11)** ..... been there, but I've **12)** ..... arranged to spend two days there before I return home.

## 7 Put the verbs in brackets into the *present simple* or *future simple*.

1 I ...*will/'ll help*... (help) you with the shopping before I ..... (go) to the gym.
2 I ..... (not/be) at home when my parents ..... (have) the dinner party.
3 Karen ..... (go) to the airport after she ..... (finish) work on Friday night.
4 When we ..... (arrive) on the island, we ..... (go) straight to the beach.
5 They ..... (buy) a new car when they ..... (sell) their old one.
6 When Bob and Marie ..... (get) married next month, they ..... (move) into their new house.

## 8 Choose the correct item.

1 We ...*B*... on holiday next weekend.
**A** go **B** are going **C** goes

2 James is a good student. He ..... his homework every evening.
**A** do **B** is doing **C** does

3 I ..... this film. Let's watch something else.
**A** have seen **B** saw **C** am seeing

4 Fred fell off the ladder while he ..... the ceiling.
**A** *used to paint* **B** *was painting* **C** *painted*

5 Ted ..... his car last month.
**A** sold **B** has sold **C** is selling

6 The sun ..... every morning.
**A** is rising **B** rises **C** was rising

7 I ..... my first cassette player when I was eighteen.
**A** have bought **B** am buying **C** bought

8 Donna ..... her hair. It is still wet.
**A** has just washed **B** is washing **C** washes

9 Jennifer ..... eat vegetables, but now she does.
**A** used to **B** didn't use to **C** doesn't

## 9 Correct the mistakes.

1 Peter plays football at the moment.
2 My parents have bought a new fridge yesterday.
3 Sarah was writing three letters so far today.
4 I am going to the gym every Tuesday.
5 I expect I go shopping on Saturday.
6 Do you come with us tomorrow morning?
7 Did you see my dog? He's run away.
8 Mandy will buy a car as soon as she will pass her driving test.

# UNIT 6
# Relatives

*A doctor is a person* ***who/that*** *treats sick people.*

*Dogs are animals* ***which/that*** *we can keep as pets.*

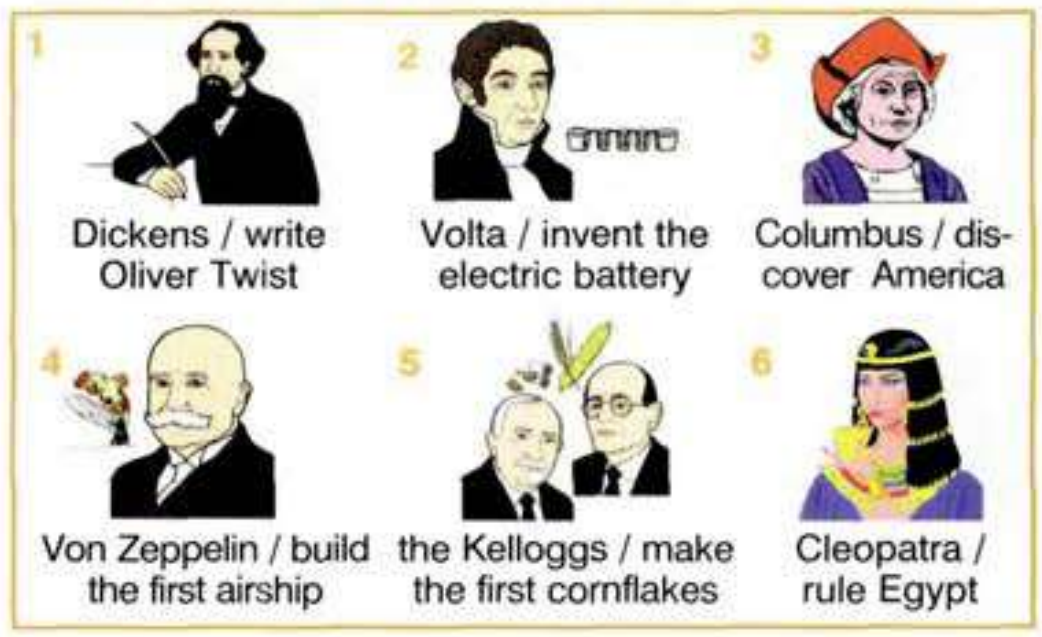
*This is a couple* ***whose*** *favourite winter sport is skiing.*

- **Relative pronouns (who, which, whose, that) introduce relative clauses. We use relative clauses to identify the noun in the main clause.**
  *e.g. The man* ***who owns the shop*** *is French.*
  **relative clause**
  *(The relative clause identifies which man we are talking about.)*
- **We use who/that instead of subject pronouns (I, you, he, etc.) to refer to people.**
  *e.g. The girl – she lives next door – is from India.*
  *The girl* ***who/that*** *lives next door is from India.*
- **We use which/that to refer to objects or animals.**
  *e.g. The horse – it won the race – is black.*
  *The horse* ***which/that*** *won the race is black.*
- **We use whose instead of possessive adjectives (my, your, his, etc.) with people, objects and animals in order to show possession.**
  *e.g. That's the man – his car was stolen.*
  *That's the man* ***whose*** *car was stolen.*
  *That's the bag – its strap is broken.*
  *That's the bag* ***whose*** *strap is broken.*

| | |
|---|---|
| **people** | **who/that** |
| **things/animals** | **which/that** |
| **possession** | **whose** |

**1** **Look at the pictures and the prompts below and ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

SA: *Who was Dickens?*
SB: *He was the man who/that wrote Oliver Twist.*




**2** **Look at the pictures and make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. A dishwasher is a machine which/that you use to wash dishes. A flamingo is a bird which/that lives in a warm climate.*

**3** **Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.**

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 The girl | a which you bought from the pet shop? |
| 2 Is this the puppy | b whose wife had an accident lives next door. |
| 3 The doctors | c whose husband is a banker? |
| 4 The man | d who lives next door is called Helen. |
| 5 The country | e which I like most is Austria. |
| 6 The bicycle | f who work in this hospital are very good. |
| 7 Is this the woman | g which I was riding belongs to my brother. |

## Relative Pronouns as Subject or Object

- **We do not omit the relative pronoun when it is the subject of the relative clause, that is, when there is not a noun or subject pronoun between the relative pronoun and the verb.**

  *e.g. I met a girl. She is from Japan.*

  *I met a girl **who/that** is from Japan. (The relative pronoun is the subject, there is not another pronoun or noun between **who** and the verb **is**.)*

- **We can omit the relative pronoun when it is the object of the relative clause, that is, when there is a noun or a subject pronoun between the relative pronoun and the verb.**

  *e.g. That's the hat. I bought it last week.*

  *That's the hat (**which/that**) I bought last week. (The relative pronoun is the object, there is the subject pronoun **I** between **which/that** and the verb **bought**.)*

**4** **Fill in the correct *relative pronoun*. Then, write S for subject or O for object. Finally, state if the relatives can be omitted or not, in the boxes provided.**

1 The cup ...*which/that*... I bought is broken.
2 How old is the boy ..... hit you?
3 Have you used the gloves ..... ..... I bought you yet?
4 Laura is talking to the man ..... ..... repaired her car.
5 Did you return the books ..... you borrowed from the library?
6 They live in a big house ..... ..... is in the countryside.
7 I'm writing a letter to my aunt ..... ..... lives in Australia.
8 Is he the man ..... lives on the farm?
9 Is that the film ..... we saw last week?
10 Is that the man ..... stole your bag?
11 Where did you buy the dress ..... ..... you were wearing yesterday?
12 Have you replied to all the letters ..... you received?

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | O | omitted |
| 2 | | |
| 3 | | |
| 4 | | |
| 5 | | |
| 6 | | |
| 7 | | |
| 8 | | |
| 9 | | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 | | |

**who's = who is or who has**
*e.g. "**Who's (Who is)** there?" "It's Julie."*
*__Who's (Who has)__ got the dictionary?*
**whose = possessive**
*e.g. Jenny is the girl **whose** mother is a lawyer.*

**5** **Fill in *who's* or *whose*.**

1 That's the boy ...*who's*... going to sell me his bike.
2 Her brother, ..... name is Jack, is a fireman.
3 She's the girl ..... run four marathons this year.
4 That's the man ..... house was on fire yesterday.
5 Sheila is the girl ..... mother works in the flower shop.
6 She is the woman ..... having a party tomorrow.
7 He's the man ..... just been promoted at work.
8 Mike is the man ..... wife is in hospital.
9 I am the person ..... sister got married last week.
10 Rob is the one ..... eaten all the biscuits.

- **We usually avoid using prepositions before relative pronouns.**
  a) *The reception* ***to which*** *we went was held at a hotel. (formal English - unusual structure)*
  b) *The café* ***which/that*** *we usually go* ***to*** *is near our house. (usual structure)*
  c) *The café we usually go* ***to*** *is near our house. (everyday English)*
- **In relative clauses we do not use object pronouns after prepositions.**

**Study the example:**

*We spent our holidays with some friends. They are from Belgium. The friends we spent our holidays with are from Belgium. (NOT: The friends we spent our holidays with ~~them~~ are from Belgium.)*

**6** **Rewrite the pairs of sentences, as in the example.**

1 Larry went to the cinema with a girl. The girl is his sister.
  a) The girl *who/that Larry went to the cinema with is his sister.*
  b) The girl *Larry went to the cinema with is his sister.*
2 Max talked to a man. The man was from Canada.
  a) The man .....
  b) The man .....
3 Debbie is looking at a photo album. The photo album is mine.
  a) The photo album .....
  b) The photo album .....
4 Anna is looking for her ring. The ring belonged to her grandmother.
  a) The ring .....
  b) The ring .....
5 Bob has gone to a bank. The bank is near the Town Hall.
  a) The bank .....
  b) The bank .....
6 Sharon had dinner with a man. He was her lawyer.
  a) The man .....
  b) The man .....
7 They invited me to a party. It wasn't very exciting.
  a) The party .....
  b) The party .....
8 I was talking to a boy. He lives next door.
  a) The boy .....
  b) The boy .....

## Relative Adverbs (where/when/why)

- **When is used to refer to time.**

*1996 was the year* ***when*** *they went on a cruise.*

- **Where is used to refer to place.**

*A tennis court is a place* ***where*** *we play tennis.*

- **Why is used to give reason.**

*He had a fight with his best friend, that's* ***why*** *he is sad.*

**7** **Fill in the gaps with *who, why, where, when, which* or *whose*.**

Dear Aunt Joan,

How are you? My new address, 1) ...which... I was supposed to give you a long time ago, is at the top of this page. Sorry!

The village 2) ..... I live now is very quiet and peaceful. In fact, that is the reason 3) ..... I decided to rent a house here. The people 4) ..... live next door to me are very friendly. The day 5) ..... I moved in, they invited me for tea. The woman 6) ..... house I've rented lives in the same street as you. Her name is Mrs Fitzgerald. Do you know her? I must go now, the telephone is ringing.

Write to me soon.

Love,
Rachel

## 8 Fill in the gaps with *who, which, whose, why* or *where*.

A: Hi Helen! Where are you going?
B: I'm going round to Jane's house, the woman **1)** ...*whose*... children I often look after. She has to go to the dentist this morning, that's **2)** ..... she's asked me to go to her house.
A: Is she the woman **3)** ..... works in the post office?
B: Yes.
A: Where does she live?
B: She lives in the big house **4)** ..... is next to the field.
A: Which field?
B: The one **5)** ..... Mr McGregor keeps his sheep.

## 9 Fill in the gaps with *where, when, why, who* or *which*.

Martin Foster, **(1)** ...*who*... is 50, is a gardener. 1964 was the year **(2)** ..... he got his first job. He looked after the gardens of a huge house **(3)** ..... a very rich family lived. He loves his job and that's the reason **(4)** ..... he doesn't mind getting up very early in the morning to water the plants and flowers. His favourite time of year is spring **(5)** ..... all the flowers begin to open and leaves grow on the trees. The part of the garden he likes most is the kitchen garden **(6)** ..... the vegetables grow, because it has flowers blooming all year round. Martin says flowers and plants make our world beautiful. "That's **(7)** ..... you must protect the environment around you – it's something **(8)** ..... can't be replaced."

### IN OTHER WORDS

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 This is Sara. She teaches us ballet.
**who** This is **Sara who teaches us** ballet.
2 That's Simon. His father is a lawyer.
**whose** That's Simon **whose father is** a lawyer.
3 That's the hotel. I spent my holidays there.
**where** That's the **hotel where I spent** my holidays.
4 This is the story. It won first prize in the competition.
**which** This is the **story which won first** prize in the competition.
**that** This is **the story that won first** prize in the competition.

## 10 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

1 That's the jumper. I knitted it myself.
**which** That's the ...*jumper which I knitted*... myself.
2 He's the man. His dog often chases my cat.
**whose** He's the ..... chases my cat.
3 That's the church. We got married there.
**where** That's the ..... married.
4 That's the shop. I bought my new dress there.
**where** That's the ..... my new dress.
5 Philip is the man. He lives in a castle.
**who** Philip is the ..... a castle.
6 These are the people. Their daughter is a rock singer.
**whose** These are ..... is a rock singer.
7 That is the dog. His owner is a famous actor.
**whose** That is the ..... is a famous actor.
8 Jess is the girl. She speaks eight languages.
**who** Jess is the ..... eight languages.
9 This is the magazine. I bought it yesterday.
**that** This is the ..... yesterday.
10 Sam is the boy. He ran away from home.
**who** Sam is the ..... from home.
11 That's the hospital. I was born there.
**where** That's the ..... born.
12 That's the ring. Sophie found it yesterday.
**that** That's the ring ..... yesterday.

# Identifying/Non-identifying Clauses

**There are two types of relative clauses: identifying relative clauses and non-identifying relative clauses.**

- **An identifying relative clause gives necessary information and is essential to the meaning of the main sentence. The clause is not put in commas. Who, which and that can be omitted when they are the object of the relative clause.**

  *e.g. People risk their lives. (Which people? We don't know. The meaning of the sentence is not clear.)*
  *People **who/that drive dangerously** risk their lives. (Which people? Those who drive dangerously.)*
  *The book was exciting. (Which book? We do not know. The meaning of the sentence is not clear.)*
  *The book **which/that/ – you lent me** was exciting. (Which book? The one you lent me.)*

- **A non-identifying relative clause gives extra information and is not essential to the meaning of the main sentence. In non-identifying relative clauses the relative pronouns cannot be omitted. That cannot replace who or which. The clause is put in commas.**

  *e.g. Mr Stevenson is my neighbour. (The meaning of the sentence is clear.)*
  *Mr Stevenson, **who used to work in a bank**, is my neighbour. (The relative clause gives extra information.)*
  *My car is a Fiat Uno. (The meaning of the sentence is clear.)*
  *My car, **which I bought five years ago**, is a Fiat Uno. (The relative clause gives extra information.)*

## 11 Fill in the *relative pronoun*. Put commas where necessary. Write I for identifying, NI for non-identifying and if the relative can be omitted or not.

1 Mr Cross, *who* lives next door, broke his leg last week.
2 That's the woman ..... drives the school bus.
3 My sister ..... is called Sarah is younger than I am.
4 The cake ..... was covered in chocolate was delicious.
5 I know a boy ..... mother is a builder.
6 This is the pen ..... he gave me for my birthday.
7 Stuart ..... is older than me loves riding his bicycle.
8 This book ..... is very old belongs to my father.
9 Have you seen the cat ..... has only got three legs?
10 Fred ..... is thirty years old got married last week.
11 The girl ..... is sitting on the floor is called Emily.
12 That car ..... is very expensive belongs to my Uncle George.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 NI | not omitted |
| 2 | |
| 3 | |
| 4 | |
| 5 | |
| 6 | |
| 7 | |
| 8 | |
| 9 | |
| 10 | |
| 11 | |
| 12 | |

## 12 Choose the correct answer.

1 An airship is an aircraft ...*B*... looks like a big balloon.
**A** who **B** which **C** why

2 The Titanic hit an iceberg. That's ..... it sank.
**A** where **B** why **C** which

3 Guy Fawkes was a man ..... tried to blow up the English Houses of Parliament in 1605.
**A** who **B** which **C** whose

4 The rabbit is an animal ..... only eats plants and vegetables.
**A** who **B** whose **C** that

5 Athens is the city ..... the first modern Olympic Games took place.
**A** that **B** which **C** where

6 Edison was the man ..... invented the light bulb.
**A** when **B** which **C** who

7 1966 was the year ..... England won the football World Cup.
**A** when **B** which **C** who

8 1492 was the year ..... Columbus discovered America.
**A** which **B** where **C** when

9 Whales are mammals ..... can stay under water for 20 minutes without having to come up for air.
**A** who **B** that **C** whose

**13** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 He's the man which writes songs for a lot of famous singers.
2 Where's the book I bought it last week?
3 That's the woman who's house is made of glass.
4 My sister, who she is 10 years old, is called Betty.
5 The reason when I was late was that I overslept.
6 The man I was talking to him is my uncle.
7 That's the hotel which I spent my holidays last year.
8 London, that is a big city, is the capital of England.

## Revision Box

**14** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple* or the *past continuous*.**

**HIJACKERS ESCAPE**

Yesterday, a plane which **(1)** ...*was flying*... (fly) from London to New York was hijacked. The two hijackers **(2)** ..... (order) the pilot to fly the plane to Canada. At the time of the hijack most of the passengers **(3)** ..... (watch) the in-flight film while others **(4)** ..... (sleep). The flight attendants **(5)** ..... (get) ready to serve dinner when the two hijackers **(6)** ..... (appear). They **(7)** ..... ..... (carry) guns and they **(8)** ..... (threaten) the passengers. When the plane finally **(9)** ..... ..... (land) at the airport, the hijackers **(10)** ..... ..... (manage) to escape. Luckily, nobody was hurt.

**15** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 How long ...*B*... each other?
**A** do they know **B** have they known
**C** did they know

2 She ..... with her parents at the moment.
**A** is staying **B** stays **C** stayed

3 John ..... in the town centre and walks to work.
**A** has lived **B** lived **C** lives

4 When they ..... young, they travelled a lot.
**A** was **B** were **C** have been

5 I ..... that song before.
**A** have never heard **B** never hear
**C** have always heard

## ORAL Activity

***Erica spent a weekend at a chalet in the Swiss Alps. Who did she meet there?* Look at the notes and make sentences using *who* or *whose*, as in the example.**

1 Ron is a ski-instructor.
*Erica met Ron who is a ski-instructor.*
2 Claire's husband owns the chalet.
.....
3 Jack's son is only three but he can already ski.
.....
4 Jessie works for a sports magazine.
.....
5 Peter is a famous writer from New York.
.....

## WRITING Activity

**Erica is writing a letter to her friend Monica. Fill in the gaps with the correct relative clause and then continue the letter using the notes from the Oral Activity.**

*Dear Monica,*

*I'm writing to tell you my latest news. I've just been to the Alps! The reason* **(1)** ..... *I decided to spend a weekend in the Swiss Alps was that I wanted to improve my skiing. The day* **(2)** ..... *I arrived at the village it was snowing heavily, but it looked beautiful. The chalet* **(3)** ..... *I stayed was small and cosy.*

*I met some interesting people there. I met Ron who* .....
.....

# UNIT 7
# Present Perfect Continuous

*How long **has Karen been reading** the book?*
*She **has been reading** the book for three hours.*

*She is tired. **Has she been playing**?*
*No, she hasn't.*
*She **has been studying** for two hours.*

**We form the present perfect continuous with the auxiliary verb have/has, the past participle of the verb to be (been) and the main verb with the -ing suffix.**
*e.g. He **has been reading** his newspaper for an hour.*

**We form questions by putting have/has before the subject.**
*e.g. **Have you been living** here long?*

**We form negations by putting not between have/ has and been.**
*e.g. They **have not/haven't been waiting** for a long time.*
*She **has not/hasn't been working** here long.*

**Affirmative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | have | 've | been studying. |
| He/She/It | has | 's | |
| You/We/They | have | 've | |

**Interrogative**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Have | I | been studying? |
| Has | he/she/it | |
| Have | you/we/they | |

**Negative**

| | Long form | Short form | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | have not | haven't | been studying. |
| He/She/It | has not | hasn't | |
| You/We/They | have not | haven't | |

**1** **In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.**

SA: *How long has Sam been working for this company?*
SB: *He has been working for this company for two years.*

1 Sam / work / for this company / two years
2 Mary / teach / French / 1990
3 the robbers / hide / in a farmhouse / a week
4 Peter / make / model planes / 1992
5 Julie / play / the guitar / four years
6 the children / watch / TV / two hours

**2** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *present perfect continuous*.**

1 What ...*have you been doing*... all week? (you/ do)
2 ..... his car all day? (Jim/repair)
3 I ..... this book for weeks. (read)
4 ..... a lot this year? (Ben/swim)
5 Mr Bell is busy. He ..... on the phone for an hour. (talk)
6 I've got a penfriend. I ..... to her for five years. (write)
7 John won't pass his exams. He ..... ..... any homework lately. (not/do)
8 Molly ..... with me since last month. (stay)
9 We ..... on this project since December. (work)
10 Sam ..... how to ride a horse for three months. (learn)

## Use

**We use the present perfect continuous for:**

- **an action which started in the past and continues up to the present.**

*He **has been painting** the house for three days. (He began painting the house three days ago and he is still painting it.)*

- **an action which has recently finished and its result is evident now.**

*They're tired. They **have been painting** the garage door all morning. (They have just finished painting and the result is evident now. The paint on the door is still wet and the two people look tired.)*

**Note: 1) We use the present perfect simple instead of the present perfect continuous with non-continuous verbs (know, believe, like, etc.).**
*e.g. I've **known** Sharon since we were at school together. (NOT: ~~I've been knowing Sharon since we were at school together.~~)*

**2) With the verbs live, feel and work we can use the present perfect continuous or the present perfect simple with no difference in meaning.**
*e.g. He **has been living/has lived** here since 1994.*

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the present perfect continuous include:**

***for, since, all morning/afternoon/week/day, etc., how long* (in questions)**

**3** **Match Column A with Column B to make correct sentences.**

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 How long have you been waiting? | a He's been planting trees all day. |
| 2 Bill is in the garden. | b That's why she's lost weight. |
| 3 You've been studying all morning. | c It's been snowing all day. |
| 4 Anne's been exercising a lot recently. | d She's been working hard all week. |
| 5 It's cold outside. | e I think it's time to stop now. |
| 6 Jenny's tired. | f For ten minutes. |
| 7 We've been practising all afternoon. | g Lots of things. I've been busy. |
| 8 What have you been doing since I last saw you? | h Why don't you take a break? |

**4** ***What have these people been doing?* Make sentences using an appropriate verb in the *present perfect continuous*.**

1 Catherine went to the supermarket an hour ago. She's still there.
*Catherine has been shopping for an hour.*
2 My mum began cooking three hours ago. She hasn't finished yet.
3 The teams started playing football twenty minutes ago. They haven't finished yet.
4 The headmaster started speaking two hours ago. He hasn't stopped yet.
5 Bill began building his house six months ago. He hasn't finished it yet.
6 I started doing my homework three hours ago. I haven't finished it yet.

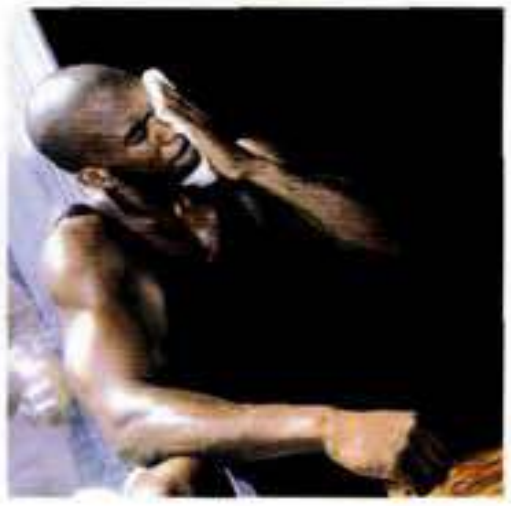
**5** **In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts given, as in the example.**

*SA: What's your favourite hobby?*
*SB: Painting.*
*SA: How long have you been painting?*
*SB: I've been painting since I was fourteen years old.*

1 favourite hobby
2 best friend / know
3 favourite TV programme / watch
4 your address / live
5 favourite magazine / read

**6** **Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the *present perfect continuous*.**

*work, snow, exercise, play*



1 Everything is white outside. It ...*has/'s been snowing*... all night.

2 He is hot. He ..... ..... for two hours.

3 They are tired. They ..... volleyball all afternoon.

4 He has got a headache. He ..... hard all morning.

**7** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present perfect continuous*.**

A: Hi Liz. You look exhausted. **1)** ...*Have you been working*... (you/work) overtime again?
B: Yes, I have. I **2)** ..... (help) my boss to update the files in the office all week. He **3)** ..... (read) the files and I **4)** ..... (write) down names, addresses, phone numbers and so on. What about you?
A: Well, I **5)** ..... (train) hard for the championship next week.
B: I see! **6)** ..... (you/lift) weights all day long?
A: Yes, for two weeks. How's Sue? **7)** ..... ..... (she/study) for her exams?
B: No, she hasn't. She **8)** ..... (go) out every evening. I won't be surprised if she fails again!

## Short Answers

*e.g. Have you been working hard? Yes, I have.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Have you ...? | Yes, I/we have. | No, I/we haven't. |
| Has he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it has. | No, he/she/it hasn't. |
| Have they ...? | Yes, they have. | No, they haven't. |

**8** **Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.**

SA: *Have people been taking photos since 1751?*
SB: *No, they haven't. They've been taking photos since 1851.*

**1851**

1 take photos/1751

**1894**

2 listen to the radio/1824

**1791**

3 ride bicycles/1771

**1903**

4 travel by plane/1903

**1450**

5 print books/1450

**1856**

6 use fridges/1836

**1878**

7 use light bulbs/1868

**1809**

8 store food in tins/1709

# Present Perfect Continuous versus Present Perfect Simple

## Present Perfect Continuous

**We use the present perfect continuous:**

- **for an action which started in the past and continues up to the present.**

*Mr Davis* ***has been teaching*** *for six years. (He began working as a teacher six years ago and he still is.)*

- **to put emphasis on the duration of an action.**

*She* ***has been painting*** *this picture* ***for two hours****. (She started two hours ago and she is still painting it.)*

## Present Perfect Simple

**We use the present perfect simple:**

- **for an action which has just finished.**

*They* ***have just made*** *a deal.*

- **to put emphasis on number.**

*He* ***has painted twenty*** *pictures.*

**9** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present perfect continuous* or the *present perfect simple*.**

1 A: Amanda ...*has opened*... (open) a shop which sells newspapers and magazines.
B: Really? Where is it?
2 A: Where's Dan?
B: He ..... (just/go) to the post office. He'll be back soon.
3 A: Dave ..... (learn) to drive for six months.
B: I know. He hasn't passed his test yet, though.
4 A: I ..... (know) Alison for ten years.
B: Well, I only met her last week.
5 A: My uncle is painting his house again.
B: Again? He ..... (paint) it three times this year already.
6 A: Is Paul sleeping?
B: Yes, he ..... (sleep) since 10 o'clock last night.

**10** *Mary is reading some letters.* **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present perfect continuous* or the *present perfect simple*.**

**A** ... I'm planning to buy a new house. I **1)** ...*'ve been looking*... (look) for one for two months now. So far I **2)** ..... (look) at ten houses, but I **3)** ..... (not/find) one I like.

**B** ... My Spanish lessons are going very well. I **1)** ..... (learn) Spanish for five months now and I love it. I **2)** ..... (already/learn) a lot.

**C** ... John **1)** ..... (be) very busy recently. He **2)** ..... (paint) the living-room and the bedrooms, but he **3)** ..... (not/ start) painting the kitchen yet.

**11** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present perfect continuous* or the *present perfect simple*.**

A: Good evening and welcome to our show. Tonight we have Steve Connolly, the well-known director. We're glad to have you here Steve. What **1)** ...*have you been doing*... (do) lately?
B: Well, I **2)** ..... (finish) my latest film, "Double Crossing".
A: That **3)** ..... (just/come out) at the cinemas, hasn't it?
B: Yes. The papers **4)** ..... (give) it good reviews. I hope they'll like my next film too.
A: **5)** ..... (you/decide) what it'll be about?
B: Yes, I **6)** ..... (read) an exciting book over the last few weeks and I want to make it into a film. I **7)** ..... (not/decide) where to film it yet, perhaps Moscow.
A: Aha! Is it true that you **8)** ..... (recently/start) learning Russian?
B: Yes, I **9)** ..... (study) it for three years now and I **10)** ..... (visit) the country twice.
A: Steve, thank you very much for being with us, and good luck with your new film.

**12** **Fill in the blanks with time expressions from the list below.**

*since, all morning, already, how long, for, ever, yet, so far, just, always*

1 The baby has been crying ...*all morning*...
2 Simon hasn't started school ..... .
3 She has ..... washed the clothes, so they are still wet.
4 Martha has ..... wanted to go to Mexico.
5 She has been ill ..... a week.
6 ..... has he been at home?
7 It's very early, but Richard has ..... gone to work.
8 I've sent ten party invitations ..... .
9 I haven't spoken French ..... 1990.
10 Have you ..... appeared on television?

**IN OTHER WORDS**

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 Helen started learning French four months ago.
**has** Helen ***has been learning French for*** four months.
2 They haven't paid the bills yet.
**still** They ***still haven't paid*** the bills.
3 When did you buy your car?
**since** How long is it ***since you bought*** your car?

**13** **Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.**

1 When did Paul sell his house?
**since** How long is it ...*since Paul sold his*... house?
2 Mark started playing the guitar three years ago.
**has** Mark ..... playing the guitar for three years.
3 The children haven't finished their homework yet.
**still** The children ..... their homework.
4 When did you last decorate your living-room?
**since** How long is it ..... your living-room?
5 We haven't called the plumber yet.
**still** We ..... the plumber.

**14** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 I have looked for him all day. I can't find him.
2 He has trying to fix the car all morning.
3 I have buying lots of food this week.
4 I not have brought any shampoo.
5 It has been snowed, but it's stopped now.
6 How long they have been cleaning the house?
7 I've been knowing Lillian for two years.
8 Have you cried? Your eyes are red.

# Revision Box

**15** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *present perfect continuous*, the *present continuous* or the *present simple*.**

SUNDAY JUNE 13

Sunday 13/6/98

Dear Diary,

It's Sunday again. I 1) ...am... (be) so bored. I 2) ..... (not/know) what to do. Mum is in the kitchen. She 3) ..... (cook). She 4) ..... (cook) since eight o'clock this morning. Dad's in the garden. He 5) ..... (mow) the lawn for two hours. He 6) ..... (always/work) in the garden on Sunday mornings. Jimmy is in his room. He 7) ..... (do) his homework. He 8) ..... (study) for his history test for an hour. He 9) ..... (never/play) with me. Grandpa 10) ..... (read) his newspaper and Grandma 11) ..... (knit). She 12) ..... (knit) a jumper for me for two weeks. The jumper is yellow and I 13) ..... (hate) yellow. I 14) ..... (sit) alone in my bedroom all morning. You're my only companion...

**16** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

**A** Today **1)** ...is... (be) my father's birthday. We **2)** ..... (have) a party tonight, but he **3)** ..... (not/know) anything about it. I **4)** ..... (phone) all of his friends yesterday and **5)** ..... (ask) them to come to our house at 7 o'clock. It **6)** ..... (be) a big surprise!

**B** Samuel is a writer. He **1)** ..... (write) children's books. At the moment he **2)** ..... (write) a story about animals. He **3)** ..... (write) another book when this one is finished.

**C** My dog is called Ralph. I **1)** ..... (have) him since he **2)** ..... (be) a puppy. Ralph **3)** ..... (escape) from our garden once when he was young, but luckily we **4)** ..... (find) him. He **5)** ..... (be) very frightened. I think that's why he **6)** ..... (not/do) it again.

## ORAL Activity

**The people below like doing different things. Look at the table. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

*e.g.* *SA: How long have you been playing football?*
*SB: I've been playing football for two years.*
*SA: How many matches have you played so far?*
*SB: I've played 60 matches.*

| Name | How long | How many |
|---|---|---|
| 1 Oliver Jones | play football two years | play 60 matches |
| 2 Jessica Hill | paint pictures 1993 | paint 10 pictures |
| 3 Amanda Price | take photos nine months | take 300 photos |
| 4 Darren Mason | climb mountains 1992 | climb 4 mountains |
| 5 Jim Brown | make pots six months | make 40 pots |
| 6 Fiona Carson | write books 1985 | write 4 books |

## WRITING Activity

**Look at your notes from the Oral Activity above and write about the people and their hobbies. Begin like this:**

*Oliver Jones' hobby is playing football. He has been playing football for two years. He has played sixty matches so far. Jessica Hill's hobby is* .....
.....

# UNIT 8
# Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

## Reflexive Pronouns

*He has hurt* ***himself****.*

*They made their costumes* ***themselves****.*

| Subject Pronouns | Reflexive Pronouns |
|---|---|
| I | myself |
| you | yourself |
| he | himself |
| she | herself |
| it | itself |
| we | ourselves |
| you | yourselves |
| they | themselves |

**We use reflexive pronouns:**

- **with verbs such as behave, burn, cut, enjoy, hurt, introduce, kill, look at, teach, etc. when the subject and the object of the verb are the same person.**

  **Subject Object**
  e.g. ***Andrew*** *has hurt* ***himself****.*

- **with the preposition by when we mean "alone, without company" or "without help".**

  e.g. *Tim painted the kitchen* ***by himself****. (Nobody helped Tim paint the kitchen.)*
  *I like being* ***by myself*** *sometimes. (alone, without company – on my own)*

- **with the following expressions: enjoy yourself (have a good time), behave yourself (be good), help yourself (you're welcome to take something if you want).**

- **to emphasise the noun or the pronoun of a sentence. They usually come after the noun or pronoun they emphasise or at the end of the sentence.**

  e.g. ***I myself*** *made this cake. (****I*** *made the cake, not somebody else.)*
  *Peter met the* ***Queen herself****. (He met the* ***Queen****, not somebody else.)*

**Note: We do not normally use reflexive pronouns with verbs such as dress, wash and shave. However, we can use a reflexive pronoun with these verbs when we want to show that someone did something with a lot of effort.**

e.g. *Sarah got up and* ***dressed*** *in a hurry.*
*Although Mrs Wood was ill, she managed to* ***dress herself****.*
*Lucy is only two years old, but she can* ***wash herself****.*

**1** **Fill in the gaps with the correct *reflexive pronoun*.**

1 He has hurt ...*himself*... .
2 They are enjoying ..... .
3 She made the cake ..... .
4 He may burn ..... .
5 You must behave ..... .
6 He went fishing by ..... .
7 She can't dress ..... .

**2** **Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.**

| COLUMN A | COLUMN B |
|---|---|
| 1 Leo burnt | a myself at parties. |
| 2 Babies can't | b by herself. |
| 3 I always enjoy | c herself to knit. |
| 4 Did you do your homework | d by himself? |
| 5 Sandra taught | e himself on the oven. |
| 6 My mother painted the house | f the manager himself. |
| 7 Did William draw that picture | g by yourself? |
| 8 We spoke to | h didn't hurt himself. |
| 9 Billy fell off his bike but he | i by myself. |
| 10 I don't need help. I can do it | j wash themselves. |

## -selves/each other

*Julie and Karen are looking at **themselves** in the mirror. (Julie is looking at herself in the mirror and Karen is looking at herself in the mirror, too.)*

*They are looking at **each other**.*
*(The woman is looking at the girl and the girl is looking at the woman.)*

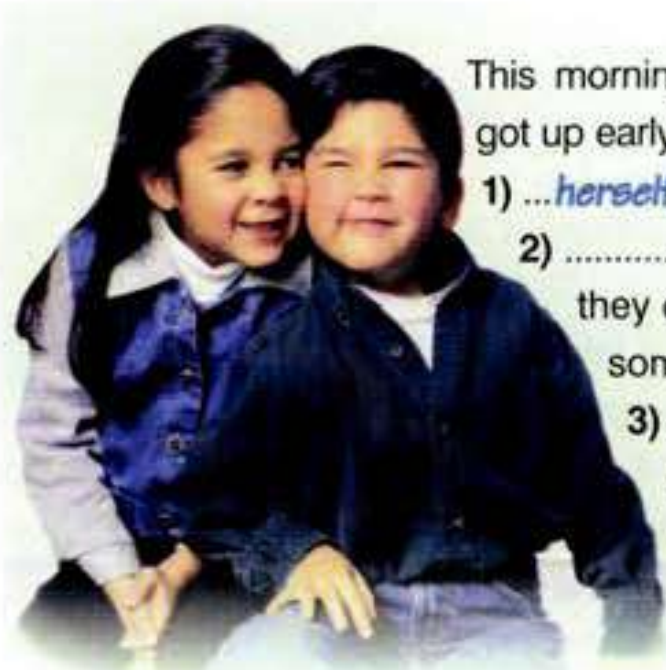
**3** **Fill in the gaps with an appropriate *reflexive pronoun or each other.***

1 I look at ...*myself*... in the mirror every morning.
2 Tim's line is busy and Brian's line is busy too. I think they're talking to ..... .
3 Fred and Jenny help ..... with their homework.
4 The boys are having fun. They are enjoying ..... .
5 "Help ..... to more coffee and biscuits."

**4** **Fill in *myself, yourself, herself, ourselves* or *themselves*.**

**A:** I like your dress, Kate. Did you make it **1)** ...*yourself*...?
**B:** Well, I did most of it by **2)** ....., but my mother helped with some of it.
**A:** My sister makes all of her clothes **3)** ..... and she makes other things, too.
**B:** Things would be so much cheaper if we made everything **4)** ..... . My parents used to make a lot of things **5)** ..... but they don't have the time any more.

**5** **Fill in the appropriate reflexive pronouns.**



This morning, John and Helen got up early. Helen dressed **1)** ...*herself*... and John washed **2)** ..... . Then, they decided to make some breakfast by **3)** ..... . While they were in the kitchen, John hurt **4)** ..... when he tried to cut some bread with a sharp knife, and Helen burnt **5)** ..... while she was making some hot tea. After that, they decided never to make breakfast by **6)** ..... again!

**6** **Fill in the appropriate *reflexive pronouns*.**

1 Help ...*yourself*... to tea and cake!
2 I made ..... a sandwich for lunch.
3 Tommy bought ..... a present.
4 Joe doesn't need help; he can fix his bicycle by ..... .
5 Sandra painted her bedroom ..... .
6 They taught ..... to drive.
7 "Shall I help you?" "No, I can do it by ..... ."
8 "We are going to a party." "Enjoy .....!"
9 We built our house ..... .
10 Terry and Annie put up the tent ..... .
11 Grace is singing to ..... in the bath.
12 Jack, I want you to behave ..... at school today.

# Both/Neither - All/None

***Both girls are wearing*** *sunglasses.*
***Neither girl is wearing*** *a hat.*

***All of them are*** *young men.*
***None of them is*** *a woman/**are** women.*

- **We use both or neither to refer to two people or things.**

**Both has a positive meaning and is followed by a plural verb.**
*e.g.* ***Both girls/Both the girls/Both of the girls/Both of them are*** *very good students.*

**Neither has a negative meaning and is followed by either a singular or plural verb in the affirmative.**
*e.g.* ***Neither book is*** *interesting. (NOT: ~~Neither book isn't interesting.~~)* ***Neither of the books/Neither of them is/are*** *interesting.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **BOTH +** | (the +) plural noun | of the/these/my/your, etc. + plural noun | of us/them, etc. + **are** |
| **NEITHER +** | singular noun + **is** | of the/these/my/your, etc. + plural noun | of us/them, etc. + **is/are** |

- **We use all or none to refer to more than two people or things.**

**All has a positive meaning and is followed by a plural verb.**
*e.g.* ***All the students/All of the students/All of them have studied*** *for the test.*

**None has a negative meaning and is followed by either a singular or plural verb in the affirmative.**
*e.g.* ***None of these cars is/are*** *cheap. (NOT: ~~None of these cars isn't/aren't cheap.~~)*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **ALL +** | (the +) plural noun | of the/these/my/your, etc. + plural noun | of us/them, etc. + **are** |
| **NONE +** | of the/these/my/your, etc. + plural noun | | of us/them, etc. + **is/are** |

**Both/All can go:**

a) **after the verb to be.** *e.g. They* ***were both*** *tired. They* ***are all*** *here.*
b) **after the auxiliary verb but before the main verb.** *e.g. They* ***have both finished*** *dinner. They* ***will all come*** *to the party.*
c) **at the beginning of the sentence.** *e.g.* ***Both*** *women are tall.* ***All*** *of the students passed the test.*

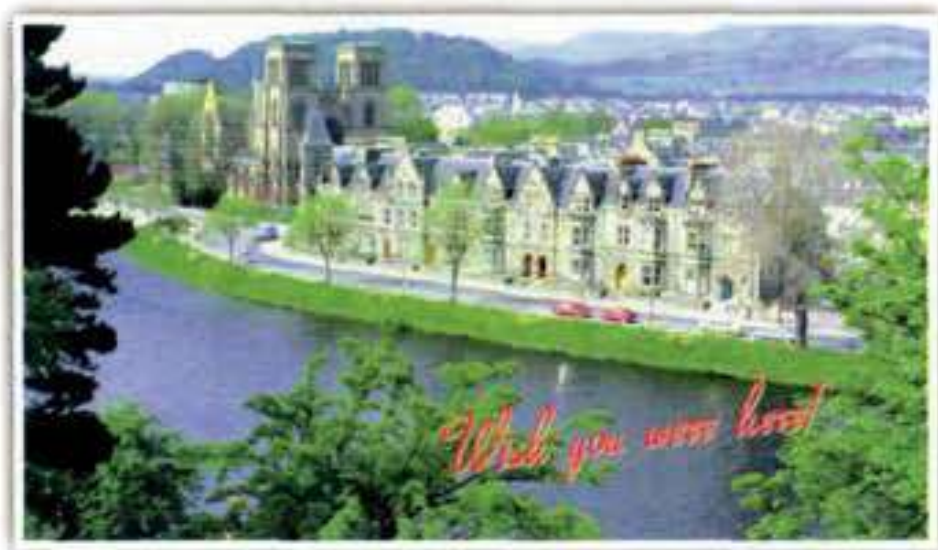
**7** **Look at the pictures and describe them using *all* or *both* in as many ways as possible, as in the example.**

e.g. *These are all strawberries. All of them are strawberries. They are all strawberries.*

**8** **Fill in the gaps using *both/neither of us/them*.**

1 George and Peter went to the cinema to see a film. ...*Neither of them*... enjoyed it, though, because it was quite boring.
2 My sister and I are twins. ..... have the same colour hair.
3 I tried to open the cupboard, then James tried to open it, but ..... could do it because it was stuck.
4 I made a chocolate cake and a cherry cake, but ..... tasted good because I forgot to add the sugar!
5 Samantha and Kate were bridesmaids at a wedding last week. ..... looked lovely in their beautiful dresses.
6 I phoned Bill and Tom yesterday. I think ..... ..... were out because no one answered the telephone.

**9** **Fill in the gaps with *both, all, neither* or *none*.**




**A:** Have you seen Beth and Angela recently?
**B:** No. I haven't seen them since last week.
**A:** **1)** ...*Neither*... of them has phoned me since Wednesday.
**B:** I tried to phone them yesterday, but no one was at home.
**A:** I think they have **2)** ..... gone away on holiday, but I'm not sure.
**B:** Did you phone any of their friends?
**A:** Yes, I phoned **3)** ..... of them, but **4)** ..... of them knows where Beth and Angela are.
**B:** Here's the postman. Look! There's a postcard here. It's from Beth and Angela. They are **5)** ..... in Scotland. **6)** ..... of them is having a good time, though, because it's raining there.
**A:** When are they coming back?
**B:** They are coming back next Sunday.

**10** **Fill in the gaps with *both, all, neither* or *none*.**

1 A: Would you like an apple or an orange?
B: *Neither*. I'd like a pear, please.
2 A: I looked for Helen and Jane, but ..... of them were there.
B: They have ..... gone shopping.
3 A: I've got lots of skirts but ..... of them fit me.
B: Well, buy some new ones.
4 A: I'm waiting for three friends. ..... of them are late!
B: I'm sure they will be here soon.
5 A: My sisters, Ann and Julie, are ..... teachers.
B: Really? I'm a teacher, too.
6 A: There were lots of birds in the garden this morning.
B: Really? They have ..... gone now.
7 A: Steve and Dave had an accident yesterday.
B: Are they ..... in hospital?
A: No. Luckily, ..... of them were hurt.

## Both ... and / Neither ... nor

***Both** the lion **and** the tiger **are** wild animals.*
*The lion doesn't eat grass.*
*The tiger doesn't eat grass, either.*
***Neither** the lion **nor** the tiger **eats** grass.*

- **We use both ... and to join the subjects of two different sentences in one sentence which has a positive meaning. The verb of the sentence is always in the plural.**

  *e.g.* ***Both** Bob **and** Paul **are** from Scotland.*

- **We use neither ... nor to join the subjects of two different sentences in one sentence which has a negative meaning. The verb of the sentence is always in the affirmative and agrees in number with the second subject.**

  *e.g.* ***Neither** Sheila **nor** Mary **wants** to travel abroad.*
  *(NOT: ~~Neither Sheila nor Mary don't want to travel abroad.~~)*

**11** **Rewrite the sentences using *both...and* or *neither...nor*.**

1 Barry works at the bank. Mark works at the bank, too.
*Both Barry and Mark work at the bank.*
2 Jenny is from Ireland. Mark is from Ireland, too.
.....
3 I don't like bananas and Marie doesn't like bananas, either.
.....
4 Jane doesn't go to school any more and her sister doesn't, either.
.....
5 My mother enjoys skiing. I enjoy skiing, too.
.....
6 Lucy didn't spend her holidays at home. Bob didn't, either.
.....
7 Susan went on holiday to Spain last year. Emily went there, too.
.....
8 Fred hasn't got long hair and Stuart hasn't got long hair, either.
.....

**12** **Look at the pictures and the prompts given and compare the two jobs (businessman/pilot) using *both...and* or *neither...nor*.**

*e.g.* *Both businessmen and pilots work hard.*

- work hard
- spend much time with their families
- earn a lot of money
- have much free time
- meet a lot of people
- make important decisions
- have stressful jobs

**13** **Complete the article below using your notes from ex. 12.**

### Your choice: PILOT or BUSINESSMAN?

*This week, we are looking at two different jobs which have very similar advantages and disadvantages: that of a pilot and a businessman.*
*Both businessmen and pilots work very hard.* .....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

## Possessives

*Helen is* ***Peter and Jane's*** *mother. She is* ***their*** *mother.* ***Jane's*** *bicycle is red. The bicycle is* ***hers.***

*Bob and Ted have got briefcases. These are* ***Bob's and Ted's*** *briefcases.*

**We use a) the possessive case, b) possessive adjectives and c) possessive pronouns to show possession or relationship.**

- **The possessive case is formed as follows:**

**A: for people or animals:**

- **with 's for singular nouns** Ken's car
- ***with ' for plural nouns ending in -s.***
  the girls' dresses, the birds' nests
- **with 's for irregular plural nouns.**
  the women's clothes
- **when the same thing belongs to two or more people, we add 's only to the last noun.**
  *e.g.* ***Gina*** *and* ***Tom's*** *car. (The car belongs to both of them.)*
- **when two or more things belong to two or more people and we want to show that each person has his/her own thing, we add 's to each noun.**
  *e.g.* ***Claire's*** *and* ***Kate's*** *uniforms. (Each girl has her own uniform.)*

**B: we use of to talk about things or parts of things.**
*e.g. the roof* ***of the house***
*(NOT: ~~the house's roof~~ because 'house' is a thing)*

- **When we refer to place or time, the possessive case is formed as follows:**
  - **phrase of place (shop/business, etc.) + 's**
    at the **butcher's** (we mean the shop)
  - **phrase showing measurement of time+ 's/'**
    (to show how long things last)
    a **day's** walk/two **hours'** drive

| Possessive Adjectives | | Possessive Pronouns | |
|---|---|---|---|
| my | our | mine | ours |
| your | your | yours | yours |
| his | their | his | theirs |
| her | | hers | |
| its | | – | |

**We put possessive adjectives before nouns.**
**Possessive pronouns are never followed by nouns.**
*e.g. This is* ***her car****. It's black. The black car is* ***hers****.*

**14** **Join the two parts with the correct form of the possessive case.**

1 the bags – the women
*the women's bags*
2 the top – the hill
3 the car – the roof
4 the shop – the owner
5 the boys – the caps
6 the manager – the hotel
7 the man – the trousers
8 the toys – the children
9 the name – the street
10 the clothes – the baby

**15** **Rewrite the part of each sentence which is in bold using the possessive case, as in the example.**

1 I'll meet you **in an hour**. = in an *hour's* time
2 From the airport, the hotel is **a drive of four hours**.
= four ..... drive
3 The advert is **in the paper today**.
= in ..... paper
4 I heard it **on the news yesterday**.
= on ..... news
5 It's on **the menu this week**.
= this ..... menu
6 **The results this year** are better.
= this ..... results
7 I will make the phone call **in five minutes**.
= in ..... time
8 That is **the magazine from last month**.
= last ..... magazine

***its*** *= possessive adjective*
*e.g. The dog is carrying* ***its*** *bowl.*
***it's*** *=* ***it is*** *or* ***it has*** *e.g.* ***It's (it is)*** *raining hard today. Let's go outside.* ***It's (it has)*** *stopped raining.*

**16** **Fill in the gaps with *it's* or *its*.**

1 The dog buried ...*its*... bone in the garden.
2 The book isn't mine, ..... my brother's.
3 I can't wear this jumper because ..... got a hole in it.
4 The bird built ..... nest in the tree in our garden.
5 ..... very cold today. I think it might snow.
6 It was raining earlier but ..... stopped now.
7 ..... quite a good novel but I didn't enjoy the end very much.
8 The cat was cleaning ..... paws.

# Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

**17** **Look at the objects and say what belongs to each person using the possessive case.**

1 ...*Bob's*... trumpet
2 ..... pencils
3 ..... and ..... hats
4 ..... toys
5 ..... shirts
6 ..... shoes

| Subject Pronouns | Object Pronouns |
|---|---|
| I | me |
| you | you |
| he | him |
| she | her |
| it | it |
| we | us |
| you | you |
| they | them |

**Subject pronouns go before verbs as subjects. Object pronouns go after verbs or prepositions as objects.** *e.g.* ***He*** *is walking barefoot. Look at* ***him****!*

**18** ***Fill in the appropriate possessive adjective or pronoun (i.e. subject, object, reflexive or possessive).***

1 A: Do you go to the village school?
B: No, ...*I*... don't. My sister and ..... go to the school in town. ..... go there by bus in the morning and ..... mother brings ..... back in the car every afternoon.

2 A: Whose are these football boots? Are they yours?
B: Yes, ..... are ..... .

3 A: Where are your parents?
B: ..... have gone shopping. ..... have taken ..... brother with ..... .

4 A: What did you and Jim do last night?
B: ..... went to the cinema.
A: What did ..... see?
B: The new James Bond film.
A: Was ..... good?
B: Yes, ..... was excellent. Both of ..... enjoyed ..... .

5 A: .....'m going to a party tonight but .....'ve got nothing to wear.
B: Don't worry, .....'ll give ..... one of ..... dresses to wear.
A: Thanks. Can ..... take ..... car too?
B: .....'m afraid ..... can't. .....'s at the garage. Anyway, enjoy ..... at the party!

6 A: Have you seen Georgia and Julian recently?
B: No, but I wrote a letter to ..... last week.
A: Have ..... written back to ..... ?
B: Not yet, but I'm sure ..... will.

7 A: Where are you going?
B: I'm going shopping with Pauline. Do ..... want to come with ..... ?
A: Yes, please. ..... would love to come.

8 A: Edward has hurt ..... . ..... is in hospital.
B: Really? Let's go and visit ....., then.

**19** **Underline the correct item.**

1 Oh dear! I've left ***my/mine*** wallet at home.
2 ***Ours/Our*** video recorder is not working. Grandmother is lending us ***her/hers*** for a few days.
3 ***Mine/My*** passport has expired. I need to get a new one.
4 The Smiths' house is the third from the left. And the Porsche that is parked outside is ***their/theirs***, too.
5 John and Patrick aren't at home but ***theirs/their*** cars are in the garage.
6 Don't wash your hair with that shampoo. It's ***mine/my***.
7 Is that Danielle's coat? No, it isn't. ***Her/Hers*** is the one with the red buttons on the front.
8 Rita has left ***her/hers*** job as a shop assistant because she wants to be a singer.
9 Don't use my pen, please. Use ***yours/your*** instead.
10 Is Sue Parker ***your/yours*** cousin? I've known her for months but she has never told me that.

**20** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 Neither Nora nor Peter didn't enjoy the party.
2 This is ours dog.
3 Neither Andy and Jane lives in Scotland.
4 This is Freds' watch.
5 We enjoyed us on holiday last year.
6 Is this him suitcase?
7 These are Johns slippers.
8 Jim, Bob and Tim are both doctors.

## Revision Box

**21** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple, past continuous, present perfect simple, present simple or present continuous.***

When my grandfather **1)** ...*was*... (be) a young boy, he **2)** ..... (like) watching the ships in the harbour of the town where he **3)** ..... (live). A few years later, he **4)** ..... (look) for a job when he **5)** ..... (find) one on one of the ships in the harbour and he **6)** ..... (become) a sailor. My grandfather **7)** ..... ..... (just/retire) and he **8)** ..... (enjoy) his free time. Now, he **9)** ..... (work) in his garden and he **10)** ..... (do) all the things he couldn't do when he **11)** ..... (work).

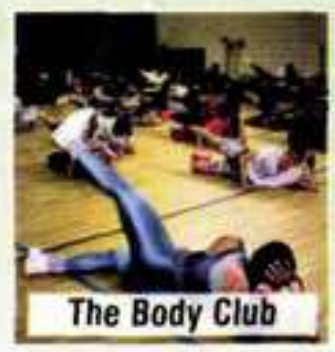
**22** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 Jill and Anne ...*C*... tennis now.
**A** were playing **B** play **C** are playing
2 ..... we go out for a meal on Saturday night?
**A** Will **B** Shall **C** Are
3 Look out! You ..... hit your head on the cupboard door.
**A** are going to **B** won't **C** shall
4 We ..... for Rome tomorrow morning.
**A** are leaving **B** left **C** were leaving
5 People ..... to the radio a lot sixty years ago.
**A** were listening **B** have listened **C** used to listen
6 Elizabeth Wilson is the woman ..... won the competition.
**A** which **B** who **C** whose

## ORAL Activity

**Look at the table and make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre have got qualified instructors. Neither the Body Club nor the Fitness Centre has got a sauna.*


The Body Club

The Fitness Centre

| | The Body Club | The Fitness Centre |
|---|---|---|
| • qualified instructors | ✓ | ✓ |
| • sauna | ✗ | ✗ |
| • less than £40 a month | ✓ | ✓ |
| • aerobics classes | ✓ | ✓ |
| • a large car park | ✗ | ✗ |
| • near the city centre | ✓ | ✓ |
| • a swimming-pool | ✗ | ✗ |

## WRITING Activity

**Look at the table in the Oral Activity again and complete the article about the Body Club and the Fitness Centre.**

*Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre are excellent sports centres in our neighbourhood. Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre have got qualified instructors.* .....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

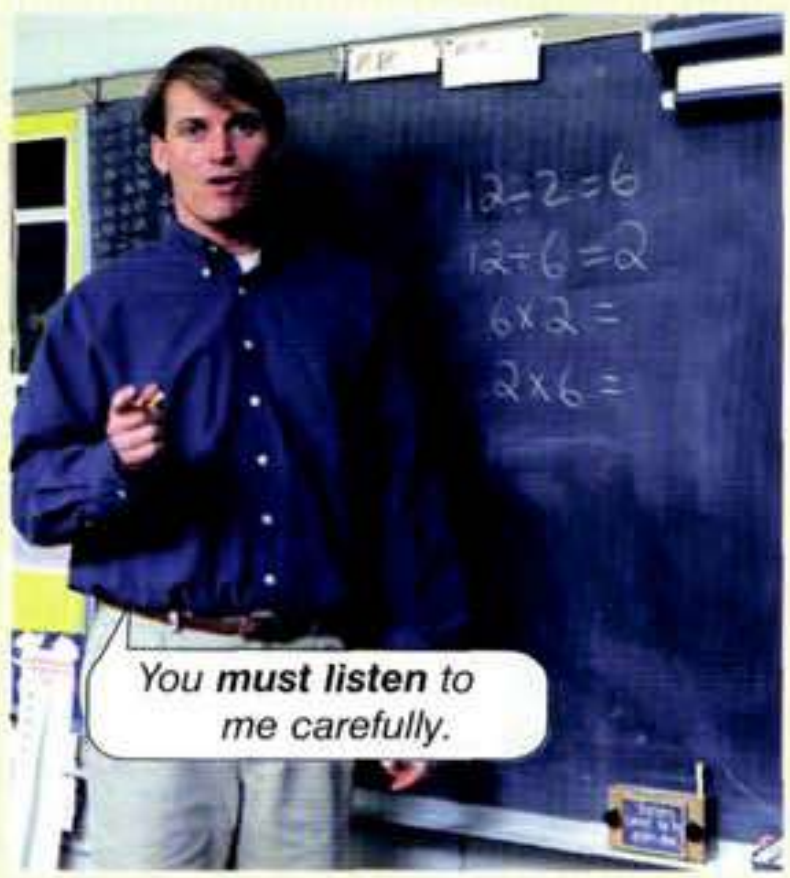
# UNIT 9
# Modal Verbs I

**The verbs must, can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should and ought are modal auxiliary verbs. They express certainty, possibility, obligation, necessity, lack of necessity, etc.**

**The main characteristics of modal verbs are the following:**

- **they do not take an -s, -ing or -ed suffix.** *e.g. He* ***can cook****. (NOT: ~~He cans cook.~~)*
- **they form questions, negations and short answers without the auxiliary verb 'do'.**
  *e.g.* ***May I*** *go now? (NOT: ~~Do I may go now?~~)*
  ***They shouldn't*** *make any noise. (NOT: ~~They don't should make any noise.~~)*
- **they are followed by a bare infinitive except for ought which is followed by a to - infinitive.**
  *e.g. You* ***must fasten*** *your seat-belt. (NOT: ~~You must to fasten your seat belt.~~)*
- **they do not form all tenses. They usually have present or past tense.**
  *e.g. He* ***can play*** *water polo. (present tense) He* ***could ski*** *when he was young. (past tense)*

## Must - Have to
### (obligation - necessity - advice)




- **Must and have to express obligation and necessity.**
  *e.g. You* ***must come*** *home early.*
  ***I have to be*** *at the office at nine o'clock.*
- **Must can only be used in the present tense. We use have to to form all the other tenses.**
  *e.g.* ***I'll have to work*** *late tomorrow.*
  *He* ***had to leave*** *early yesterday. (NOT: ~~He must leave early yesterday.~~)*
- **We also use must to give advice.**
  *e.g. You* ***must talk*** *to your brother about it.*
  *You* ***mustn't be*** *late for school.*

**1** ***Clare has got a cold. She has gone to the doctor's.*** **Look at the prompts and say what the doctor advises her (not) to do.**

- stay in bed
  *You must stay in bed.*

- go to the office for three days

- take some medicine

- drink a lot of water

- eat any ice-cream

- take your temperature twice a day

- call me if you have a high temperature

**2** **Look at the prompts given. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

SA: *Why did he go to the supermarket yesterday?*
SB: *Because he had to do some shopping.*

1 he / go to the supermarket / do some shopping
2 she / go to the post office / post some letters
3 they / call the babysitter / attend a meeting
4 he / call a taxi / go to the airport
5 she / buy a dictionary / translate a novel
6 they / go to a restaurant / entertain some clients

**3** **Fill in the gaps with *don't/doesn't have to, didn't have to* or *won't have to*.**

1 Tomorrow is Saturday, so I ...*won't have to*... go to school.
2 I've already finished my project, so I ..... do it in the holidays.
3 We bought a takeaway pizza last night, so we ..... ..... cook dinner.
4 Tom and Mary have got a washing-machine, so they ..... go to the laundrette.
5 Steve passed his driving test, so he ..... take it again.
6 Sally is very rich, so she ..... work.
7 They bought tickets in advance, so they ..... ..... wait in the queue.
8 Jane's mother wakes her up, so she ..... use an alarm clock.
9 I have already read the book, so I ..... read it again.
10 Sam never makes a mess, so he ..... tidy his room very often.

## Mustn't – Needn't
(prohibition – lack of necessity)

- **Must not/Mustn't (you aren't allowed to/it is against the rules) expresses prohibition.**
  *e.g. You **mustn't park** here. (It is against the rules.)*
- **Needn't (it isn't necessary) expresses lack of necessity. We can use don't/doesn't have to instead of needn't with no difference in meaning.**
  *e.g. You **needn't/don't have to buy** me a gift.*
  *(It isn't necessary for you to buy me a gift.)*

**4** **Fill in the gaps with *mustn't* or *needn't/don't have to*.**

1 A: You ...*mustn't*... do that again! It was very naughty!
B: I'm sorry.
2 A: Shall I put some petrol in the car?
B: No, you ..... . I did it this morning.
3 A: You ..... be late tonight.
B: I won't. I'll be home early.
4 A: Shall I give you a lift?
B: No, you ..... . I'll go by taxi.
5 A: You ..... forget to pay the bills today.
B: I've already done it.
6 A: You ..... lose the money I gave you.
B: I'll put it in a safe place.
7 A: You ..... buy a gift for Daisy's birthday.
B: Alright. I'll just send a card.
8 A: Shall we take a picnic with us on Saturday?
B: No, we ..... . We're going to eat at a restaurant.

**IN OTHER WORDS**

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 Parking your car in this area is forbidden.
**must** You ***must not park your car*** in this area.
2 It isn't necessary to buy any meat. We've got plenty.
**needn't** You ***needn't buy any*** meat. We've got plenty.
**have** You ***don't have to buy*** any meat. We've got plenty.
3 Is it necessary for you to call him?
**have** Do ***you have to call*** him?

**5** **Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.**

1 It isn't necessary to wait for us.
**have** You ...*don't have to wait*... for us.
2 Taking pictures inside the museum is forbidden.
**must** You ..... inside the museum.
3 Is it necessary for you to leave so early?
**have** Do ..... so early?
4 It isn't necessary to go by taxi. I'll give you a lift.
**needn't** You ..... by taxi. I'll give you a lift.
5 Keeping pets in the building is forbidden.
**must** You ..... in the building.
6 It isn't necessary to water the flowers.
**have** You ..... the flowers.

# Can - Could - Be able to (ability)

*Peter **can read** but his sister, Rose, **can't**.*

*Mrs Turner **could play** tennis before she had the accident.*

*Rachel **was able to reach** the top of the mountain.*

- **Can expresses ability and can't expresses lack of ability in the present.**
  *e.g. Kate **can speak** a foreign language. Tim **can't play** the piano.*
- **Could expresses general ability in the past.**
  *e.g. Alan **could sing** very well when he was young. (But now he can't.)*
- **Was/Were able to (managed to do) expresses ability that we had in the past in a particular situation. It shows that someone did something, but with effort.**
  *e.g. It was a very difficult test, but Meryl **was able to answer** all the questions. (She managed to answer all the questions.)*
- **Couldn't expresses lack of ability in the past, either generally or in a particular situation.**
  *e.g. My little brother **couldn't ride** a bicycle when he was two. (Generally, not in a particular situation.)*
  *Helen tried but she **couldn't open** the door. (She didn't manage to open the door — lack of ability in a particular situation)*

**We use could (not ~~was/were able to~~) with the verbs see, hear, feel, smell, taste, understand, remember, guess, etc.**
*e.g. Marian **could feel** that something was wrong the moment she entered the room. (NOT: ~~Marian was able to feel that ...~~.)*

**Can has only present and past tenses. We use be able to to form all the other tenses (future simple, present perfect, etc.).**
*e.g. I hope I'**ll be able to take** you out to dinner next week.*

**6** **Look at the prompts given and, in pairs, make sentences, as in the example.**

SA: *They **can't enjoy** much peace and quiet now.*
SB: *When the children grow up, **they'll be able to enjoy** some peace and quiet.*

**NOW**

- enjoy much peace and quiet
- go out in the evenings
- do lots of sports
- visit their friends often
- go to the theatre with their friends

**7** **Fill in the gaps with *can/can't, could/couldn't* or *was/were able to*.**

1 When I arrived, I ...*could*... see a few people waiting for the train.
2 After saving their money for ten years, they ..... ..... buy a house
3 Sam and Beth ..... speak Italian fluently, can't they?
4 ..... you tie your shoelaces when you were four years old?
5 It was a very tricky question, but Paul ..... answer it.
6 I ..... hear what they were saying because the music was too loud.
7 Although it was difficult, the children ..... build a tree house.
8 Susan ..... come to the phone. She's busy

**8** **Fill in the gaps with *could, couldn't* or *was able to*.**

I was walking in the woods one evening when something terrible happened. I slipped and fell down a hill into a stream. It was quite dark and I **1)** ...*couldn't*... see very well. I called for help but no one **2)** ..... ..... hear me. I had hurt my ankle and I **3)** ..... walk very easily, but I tried. After some time, I **4)** ..... start going up the hill again.

It was late and I was cold and wet. I wanted to go home, but it was too far to walk. It took me a long time, but eventually I reached the edge of the woods. There was a house there, so I **5)** ..... call my father. He came in the car and took me home. The following day, the doctor came and examined my ankle. I had to stay in bed for two days. It was a week before I **6)** ..... walk properly again.

**9** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 I ...*A*... understand what he was saying because he was speaking Spanish.
**A** couldn't **B** can't **C** can

2 Steven ..... walk when he was one year old.
**A** can't **B** can **C** could

3 The door was locked so I ..... go inside.
**A** will be able to **B** wasn't able to **C** can

4 We ..... go out for a meal since we bought the car.
**A** has been able to **B** haven't been able to
**C** can

5 When I am older, I ..... live by myself.
**A** can't **B** have been able to
**C** will be able to

6 I ..... run faster than my brother now.
**A** will be able to **B** could **C** can

7 Jenny ..... type since she went to college.
**A** has been able to **B** can **C** can't

8 I ..... hear you very well. Please speak louder.
**A** am able to **B** can **C** can't

9 We arrived at the shop just as it was closing, so we ..... do our shopping.
**A** are able to **B** can **C** couldn't

10 My brother ..... drive yet. He's too young.
**A** can **B** can't **C** couldn't

## Can - Could
### (permission - request - suggestion)

**We also use can and could to:**

- **ask for permission. Could is more formal and polite than can.**

- **make a request. Could is more polite than can.**

- **make a suggestion.**

**10** **What do *can* and *could* express in each sentence?**

1 We **can** watch the new show on TV. *(suggestion)*
2 It was cold last Saturday so we **couldn't** go on a picnic.
3 **Can** I go camping with my friends at the weekend?
4 If you are not feeling well, you **could** stay at home.
5 **Could** you shut the window, please?
6 **Could** I speak to you for a moment, please?
7 **Can** you call Greg and tell him I'll be late?

## Can - Can't
### (giving/refusing permission)

- **We use can to give permission.**
  *e.g. You **can sit** here.*
- **We use can't to refuse permission.**
  *e.g. You **can't use** this computer.*

**11** **Look at the pictures and make sentences using *can* or *can't*.**

*e.g. You can't take photographs here.*

1 take photographs
2 smoke
3 park
4 cross the road
5 ride a bicycle
6 have coffee

**12** **Fill in the gaps with *can*, *can't* or *could*. Then, say what they express in each sentence.**

1 A: Mum, ...*can*... I go on holiday with my friends this year? *(asking for permission)*
  B: I'm afraid you ..... . You're too young.
2 A: Sir, I need to leave work early tonight, if that's possible.
  B: You ..... leave early if you finish all your work first.
3 A: My mum always said that I was a clever child.
  B: What do you mean?
  A: Well, I ..... read and write when I was four years old.
4 A: It's raining, so we ..... go out tonight.
  B: Well, we'll stay in then.
  A: But, I want to do something nice. I'm bored.
  B: We ..... play chess.
5 A: Excuse me?
  B: Yes.
  A: ..... you tell me the time, please?
  B: Yes, it's almost two o'clock.
6 A: What skills do you have?
  B: Well, I ..... use computers and I ..... speak two foreign languages.
7 A: What shall we buy Mum for her birthday?
  B: We ..... get a big box of chocolates.
8 A: It's hot in here. ..... you open the window, please?
  B: Of course.
9 A: I'm going to the shops. I won't be long.
  B: Alright.
  A: Do you want anything?
  B: Yes. ..... you get me a magazine?

## Must - Can't
### (logical assumption)

*They **must be** lost.*

*They **can't be** at home.*

- **We use must for positive logical assumptions.**
  *e.g. Jason **must be** at work. (I'm sure Jason is at work.)*
- **We use can't for negative logical assumptions.**
  *e.g. Sam **can't know** about this. (I'm sure Sam doesn't know about this. NOT: ~~Sam mustn't know about this.~~)*

**13** **Fill in the gaps with *must* or *can't*.**

1 A: Wow! Look at that man in the beautiful car.
  B: Yes, he ...*must*... be very rich.
2 A: I passed my exam!
  B: Congratulations. You ..... be very happy.
3 A: Aunt Sheila's dog died.
  B: Oh no. She ..... be very sad.
4 A: That woman always wears smart clothes and lots of jewellery.
  B: I know. She ..... be poor.
5 A: I've been working all day without a break.
  B: Sit down, you ..... be really tired.
6 A: I've finished tidying my room. I'm ready to leave now.
  B: You ..... be ready so soon! You only started ten minutes ago!

**14** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 You can go out until you finish eating.
2 Dad, must I borrow the car, please?
3 I haven't be able to write the letter yet.
4 He can't run long distances when he was a boy.
5 You mustn't wake up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.
6 He drives a Porsche. He must be poor.

## Revision Box

**15** **Fill in the gaps with the *present simple, present continuous, past simple, present perfect, future simple* or *be going to.***

Charles Maxwell **1)** ...*works*... (work) in a bank in the centre of London. At the moment he **2)** ..... ..... (look) for a new house. He **3)** ..... ..... (live) with his parents all of his life but now he **4)** ..... (want) to move because he **5)** ..... (decide) to get married. So far, he **6)** ..... (look) at ten houses, but he **7)** ..... (not/like) any of them. He **8)** ..... (see) another one later today. He thinks he **9)** ..... (like) it because he **10)** ..... (already/see) a photograph of it and it **11)** ..... (be) beautiful. Good luck, Charles!

## ORAL Activity

**Alan Roland has just become the director of the company he works for. Look at the information below and talk about the changes in Alan's life, using the modal verbs in the list.**

*has to - will have to - needn't/doesn't have to - can - will be able to - won't be able to*

e.g. *Alan has to go to work earlier now.*

Alan | Mary (wife) | Rick and Kate (children)

- go to work earlier now
- drive to work (a chauffeur picks him up)
- work overtime sometimes now
- send the children to a better school next year
- Mary not work any more (they have enough money)
- move to a bigger house next month
- take a family holiday this year (Alan has too much work)

## WRITING Activity

**Look at your notes from the Oral Activity and complete the letter that Alan has sent to his friend.**

Dear Keith,

I'm writing to tell you that I got a promotion last month. I am the director of the company now, so our life has changed in a number of ways.

To begin with, I have to go to work earlier. .....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

# UNIT 10
# Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

## The Infinitive

*They **want to spend** their life together.*
*They **would like to have** two children.*
*They **may buy** a car next year.*

**The infinitive is the root form of the verb. There are two kinds of infinitive:**

a) **the to - infinitive** *e.g.* **to stay, to go**
b) **the bare infinitive which is the root form of the verb without to.** *e.g.* ***stay, go***

### We use the to - infinitive:

- **after verbs such as *advise, agree, decide, expect, hope, manage, offer, promise, refuse, seem, want*, etc.**
  *e.g. He **refused to answer** my question.*
- **after be + adjective such as *glad, happy, nice, sorry*, etc.**
  *e.g. It **is nice to be** back home.*
  *Jack **will be glad to see** you.*
- **after some verbs such as *know, learn, remember, ask, want to know*, etc. when there is a question word (who, what, where, how, etc.) after them. 'Why' is not followed by an infinitive, but by a subject + verb.**
  *e.g. I don't **know how to answer** this question.*
  ***but*** *I didn't **know why he was crying**.*
- **with too and enough.**
  *e.g. It's **too** cold **to go** outside.*
  *Joe isn't old **enough to vote**.*
- **to express purpose.**
  *e.g. I went to the florist's **to buy** some flowers.*

### We use the bare infinitive:

- **after modal verbs (can, must, etc.).**
  *e.g. You **can go** home now.*
- **after the verbs let and make.**
  *e.g. My parents **let me have** a party for my birthday last month.*

**1** **Write what the following words/phrases are followed by: *to - infinitive (T.I.)* or *bare infinitive (B.I.)*.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | could + | *B.I.* | 9 | make sb + | ..... |
| 2 | agree + | ..... | 10 | seem + | ..... |
| 3 | let + | ..... | 11 | expect + | ..... |
| 4 | must + | ..... | 12 | can't + | ..... |
| 5 | want + | ..... | 13 | it is nice + | ..... |
| 6 | learn + | ..... | 14 | hope + | ..... |
| 7 | decide + | ..... | 15 | may + | ..... |
| 8 | promise + | ..... | 16 | advise + | ..... |

**2** **In pairs, say what your parents *(don't) let* or *(don't) make* you do using the prompts below.**

SA: *My parents don't let me watch TV late at night.*
SB: *My parents make me study hard.*

- watch TV late at night
- study hard
- go to parties at the weekend
- wear anything I want
- tidy my room
- invite friends home
- have breakfast every morning
- play music loud

**3** **Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form.**

*climb, help, go, open, buy, post, stay, take, wash, ask*

1 I think I will ...*buy*... some flowers for my mother.
2 Bill went to the post office ..... some letters.
3 Let me ..... you with your homework.
4 I want ..... a mountain before I'm thirty.
5 We must ..... the car today. It's very dirty.
6 He's too young ..... in the house alone.
7 I don't know how ..... the windows in this room.
8 I couldn't ..... on holiday last summer.
9 Can I ..... you a question, please?
10 They made her ..... the money out of the safe.

## The Subject of the Infinitive

- **When the subject of the main verb and the subject of the infinitive is the same, then the subject of the infinitive is omitted.**
  e.g. ***I would like to stay*** *here. (The subject of the main verb and the infinitive is "I".)*
- **When the subject of the infinitive is different from the subject of the main verb, then the subject of the infinitive is not omitted. The subject of the infinitive can be a name (Mark), a noun (the boys) or an object pronoun (me, you, them, etc.) and goes before the infinitive.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *e.g.* ***I would like*** | ***Lucy***<br>***the girls***<br>***her*** | ***to stay here.*** |

**4** **Rephrase the following, as in the example.**

1 You must help me.
I want *you to help me.*
2 They mustn't leave now. .....
I don't want .....
3 She must eat her dinner.
I want .....
4 He must visit Aunt Linda.
I want .....
5 You mustn't talk to strangers.
I don't want .....
6 Fiona mustn't go on holiday by herself.
I don't want .....
7 They must do their homework now.
I want .....
8 You must go to bed now.
I want .....

**5** **Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the correct form of the infinitive.**

*be - leave - do - make - meet - tell*

1 I really don't know what ...*to do*... .

2 You mustn't ..... ..... anyone about this.

3 I can ..... my own clothes.

4 I want you ..... quiet.

5 I don't think the boss will let me ..... earlier today.

6 I'm pleased ..... ..... you.

**6** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the infinitive.**

Dear Emma,

I'm writing (1) ...*to invite*... (invite) you to my birthday party next Saturday.

As you know, I'll be sixteen, so this is going to be a very special occasion for me. I've invited almost all of my friends and I really hope they'll all be able (2) ..... (come). Could I (3) ..... (ask) you (4) ..... (help) me with the preparations, though? I would like (5) ..... (decorate) the house with white and pink flowers, but I'm afraid I won't (6) ..... (have) time to do everything by myself. I've also decided (7) ..... (make) my own cake and I'll certainly need your help with that!

Please write back soon and let me (8) ..... (know) if you can make it.

Best wishes,
Sandra

# Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

## Too/Enough

*He is **too short to reach** the biscuits.*

*She's **tall enough to reach** the top shelf.*

- **Too goes before adjectives or adverbs. It has a negative meaning and shows that something is more than enough, more than necessary or more than wanted.**

  **too + adjective/adverb + to - infinitive**

  *e.g. Sarah is **too young to go** to school. (Sarah is so young that she can't go to school.)*

  *He speaks **too quickly for me to understand** him. (He speaks so quickly that I can't understand him.)*

- **Enough goes before nouns but after adjectives or adverbs. It has a positive meaning and shows that there is as much of something as is wanted or needed.**

  **adjective/adverb + enough** } **+ to - infinitive**
  **enough + noun**

  *e.g. She's **old enough to go** out on her own. (She can go out on her own.)*

  *I've got **enough butter to make** a cake. (I can make a cake.)*

**enough ... + to - infinitive (positive meaning)**
*e.g. He is **strong enough to lift** the suitcase.*

**not enough ... + to - infinitive (negative meaning)**
*e.g. He is **not strong enough to lift** the suitcase.*

**too ... + to - infinitive (negative meaning)**
*e.g. He is **too weak to lift** the suitcase.*

**too ... for somebody/something + to - infinitive (negative meaning)**
*e.g. The suitcase is **too heavy for him to lift**.*

### 7 Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 It's only 6 o'clock. It's too | a enough to live alone. |
| 2 He wasn't tall | b cold to go out without a coat. |
| 3 I'm not old | c enough to go to bed now. |
| 4 It's too | d enough to reach the cupboard. |
| 5 The girl wasn't early | e expensive for me to buy. |
| 6 The dress was too | f early to go to bed. |
| 7 I'm not tired | g rich enough to buy a yacht. |
| 8 We aren't | h enough to catch the train. |

### 8 Complete the responses using *too* or *enough*.

1 Can she win the race? (fast) Yes, *she's fast enough.*
2 Can he buy this car? (cheap)
No, .....
3 Can he wear this jacket? (small)
No, .....
4 Can she carry the bags? (heavy)
No, .....
5 Can he hear the music? (loud)
Yes, .....
6 Can he touch the ceiling? (short)
No, .....

### 9 Rewrite the sentences using *too* or *enough*.

1 Don't wear a T-shirt. It's cold outside.
It's *too cold outside to wear a T-shirt.*
2 It's very hot today. Let's go to the beach.
It's .....
3 We're not going to the party yet. It's early.
It's .....
4 You can't touch the ceiling. You're short.
You're not .....
5 You can buy this sweater. It's cheap.
This sweater is .....
6 You can walk to school alone. You aren't too young.
You're .....
7 They can buy a luxury yacht. They're rich.
They're .....
8 You can lift this box. It's light.
This box .....

## The "-ing form"

*Mr Scott* ***likes painting.***
***Painting*** *is his favourite hobby.*

**The "-ing form" is the verb form with the -ing suffix.**
*e.g. Sam likes* ***fishing.***

### We use the "-ing form":

- **as a noun.** *e.g.* ***Walking*** *is a good form of exercise.*
- **usually after the verbs like, love, dislike, hate, enjoy, prefer.**
  *e.g. Helen* ***likes watching*** *old films on TV.*
- **after the verbs start, begin, stop, finish.**
  *e.g. He* ***started writing*** *his composition an hour ago.*
- **after prepositions.**
  *e.g. I'm tired* ***of going*** *to work by bus every morning.*
- **after the verb go when we talk about activities.**
  *e.g. We usually* ***go skiing*** *at the weekends.*
- **after the expressions *be busy, it's no use, it's no good, it's (not) worth, what's the use of ...?, there's no point in.***
  *e.g. Father* ***is busy repairing*** *the car.*
- **after verbs such as *avoid, admit, confess, deny, look forward to, mind, regret, risk, spend, suggest,* etc.**
  *e.g. Tony* ***avoided answering*** *my question.*

**NOTE:**

1 **We can use the -ing form or the to - infinitive after the verbs start, begin, continue, like, love, prefer and hate.** *e.g. He* ***started writing/to write*** *his speech last night.*

2 **We use the to - infinitive and not the -ing form after the expressions would love/would like/ would prefer.** *e.g. I* ***would love to have*** *my own house one day. (NOT: ~~I would love having my own house one day.~~)*

3 **We can use the bare infinitive or the -ing form after the verbs see, hear, feel and watch. Note the difference in meaning, however.**
   **a)** *I* ***saw*** *Peter* ***cross*** *the street. (I saw the whole action – by the time I left, Peter was on the other side of the street.)*
   **b)** *I saw Peter* ***crossing*** *the street. (I only saw part of the action – I don't know if Peter got to the other side of the street by the time I left.)*

**10** **Match column A with column B to make correct sentences.**

| A | B |
|---|---|
| 1 Writing letters to friends | a is very tiring. |
| 2 The baby started | b is bad for your teeth. |
| 3 Running long distances | c crying when I left the room. |
| 4 Speaking foreign languages | d skiing last winter. |
| 5 They went | e is one of my hobbies. |
| 6 Eating lots of sugar | f washing the dishes. |
| 7 Tom doesn't like | g is useful for everyone. |

**11** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *infinitive form* or the *-ing form*.**

1 I would like ...*to go*... (go) out tonight.
2 He hates ..... (play) cards.
3 She is too excited ..... (sleep).
4 You must ..... (get up) early in the morning.
5 I regret ..... (spend) so much money last weekend.
6 They go ..... (run) every Tuesday evening.
7 I saw Helen ..... (wash) the dishes. It took her only ten minutes.
8 I started ..... (learn) French two years ago.
9 He was very pleased ..... (see) her again.
10 The dentist advised him ..... (stop) eating sweets.

# Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

## 12 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *infinitive form* or the *-ing form*.

Last weekend, Toby's parents let him **(1)** ...*go*... (go) to the funfair with his friends. When they arrived, they didn't know which ride **(2)** ..... (try) first, but someone suggested **(3)** ..... (start) with the ghost train. Everyone agreed that this was a very good idea. After they had finished **(4)** ..... (ride) the ghost train, they moved on to the other rides. Toby admitted **(5)** ..... (be) afraid on the fast roller-coaster, but he was still happy enough **(6)** ..... (go) on it three times! He and his friends wanted **(7)** ..... (try) all of the rides but they were too exhausted **(8)** ..... (do) everything in one day. Toby suggested **(9)** ..... (come) back the following weekend. Then, they all decided **(10)** ..... (go) home. They all loved **(11)** ..... (visit) the funfair and they are looking forward to **(12)** ..... (return) this weekend.

## 13 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *infinitive form* or the *-ing form*.

1 A: Are you busy ...*reading*... (read)?
B: Yes, but I don't mind ..... (help) you. What do you want?
A: Do you know the answer to this question?
B: Yes. Look, I'll show you how ..... (do) it yourself.

2 A: I've decided ..... (get) a part-time job.
B: Really? What kind of job do you want ..... ..... (find)?
A: Well, I really enjoy ..... (look after) animals, so I wouldn't mind ..... ..... (work) in a pet shop.

3 A: The police caught the man who burgled my house last month.
B: Really? How did they manage..... (catch) him?
A: I don't know, but he admitted ..... (steal) things in our neighbourhood.
B: Well, I'm happy ..... (hear) that the thief was caught.

4 A: Let's ..... (go) to the ice-rink at the weekend.
B: You know I hate ..... (ice-skate).
A: But you've only tried it once. Anyway, you love ..... (roller-skate). It's the same thing.
B: That's different.

5 A: Dad, Lucy has started ..... (have) riding lessons. Will you let me ..... (go) riding too?
B: Do you really want ..... (go)?
A: Yes, I'd ..... (love) to.
B: Well, I'll talk to your mother and, if she agrees, I'm sure we can ..... (arrange) some lessons for you.
A: Thanks Dad.

6 A: Did you know that Scott is going to ask Laura ..... (marry) him?
B: Really? How do you know that?
A: I saw them ..... (look) at engagement rings in a jewellery shop.
B: Oh, that's interesting.

7 A: Are you looking forward to ..... (go) on holiday?
B: Yes, I'm busy ..... (plan) my week.
A: I suggest ..... (visit) the museums and art galleries. They're fascinating.
B: That's a good idea. Actually, I wanted ..... ..... (ask) you what the town is like before I decide what ..... (do).

### IN OTHER WORDS

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 Jerry was so short that he couldn't reach the top shelf.
**too** Jerry was ***too short to reach*** the top shelf.

2 Fiona is too young to go out at night.
**old** Fiona isn't ***old enough to go*** out at night.

3 Driving fast is dangerous.
**drive** It ***is dangerous to drive*** fast.

## 14 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

1 Alec is too short to be a basketball player.
**tall** Alec isn't ...*tall enough to be*... a basketball player.

2 Exercising regularly is good for you.
**exercise** It is good ..... regularly.

3 Mary was so late that she didn't catch the bus.
**too** Mary was ..... the bus.

4 This book is too boring for me to read.
**enough** This book isn't ..... read.

**15** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 I'm not too tall to reach the top cupboard.
2 He is enough fast to win the race.
3 I'm old enough travelling alone.
4 You must to get up now.
5 She suggested to go to the cinema on Friday night.
6 He promised sending me a postcard.
7 It's no use to try to change her mind.
8 She knocked before to open the door.
9 He is tired enough to come to the party.
10 I am poor enough to buy a new sports car.

## Revision Box

**16** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 I'm thirsty. I .....C..... for two hours.
**A** have run **B** am running **C** have been running

2 ..... Kate and Alice enjoy going to the theatre.
**A** Both **B** Neither **C** All

3 This is the park ..... I take my dog every afternoon.
**A** where **B** what **C** which

4 The children are tired. I think they ..... to bed early tonight.
**A** are going **B** will go **C** go

5 Alice ..... to Japan four times so far.
**A** has gone **B** has been going **C** has been

6 ..... his boss let him leave early?
**A** Shall **B** Must **C** Will

7 Jack is in a hurry. He ..... his boss in twenty minutes and he has to be on time.
**A** will meet **B** is meeting **C** meets

8 My husband painted our house all by ..... .
**A** himself **B** him **C** his

9 The bus drivers were on strike yesterday, but Alex ..... get to work.
**A** was able to **B** has been able to **C** could

10 Robert ..... lunch when his uncle phoned.
**A** was having **B** has had **C** had

## ORAL Activity

**Jake Potts, a dangerous criminal, has escaped from prison. Look at the information in the poster below and make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. Jake Potts managed to escape from Walton Prison this morning.*

- manage/escape/Walton Prison this morning
- make/people/trust him
- be clever enough/disguise himself
- enjoy/go/bars and cafés
- police/suggest/look out for him in these places
- police/continue/look for him
- police/advise/people/keep away from him and avoid/talk/him
- anyone who/see/him/should/contact the police on 263419

## WRITING Activity

**You hear a news bulletin on the radio about Jake Potts. Look at the Oral Activity again and complete the bulletin below.**

*This is the nine o'clock news. A dangerous criminal managed to escape from Walton Prison this morning. Jake Potts makes people* .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Revision 2 (Units 1 - 10)

## 1 Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences using *who* or *which*.

1 *Marconi/invent the radio*

2 *a washing-machine/ wash clothes*

3 *Bell/invent the telephone*

4 *zebras/have got stripes*

5 *a vacuum cleaner/ clean carpets*

6 *Jackie Kennedy/marry Aristotle Onassis*

1 *Marconi was the man who invented the radio.*
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer.

1 ...*A*... dog is this?
**A** Whose **B** Who **C** Who's
2 That was the year ..... I bought my first car.
**A** where **B** when **C** why
3 This is the restaurant ..... we ate last weekend.
**A** where **B** who **C** when
4 That's the man ..... garden is always full of flowers.
**A** who's **B** whose **C** who
5 That's the house ..... she lives.
**A** when **B** where **C** who
6 The year ..... I was born my parents moved to the country.
**A** why **B** where **C** when
7 There's no reason ..... he can't come with us.
**A** where **B** when **C** why
8 Did she say ..... she was late?
**A** why **B** who **C** whose

## 3 Fill in the gaps with the correct pronoun.

1 Rebecca has got a kitten. She found ...*it*... in the park.
2 Where are my keys? ..... can't find ..... .
3 This is Terry. This motorbike is ..... .
4 "Now listen, children. Behave ..... at the party."
5 The Smiths came to our house yesterday. ..... brought ..... some flowers.
6 I've got a dog and Fiona has got one too, but my dog is older than ..... .
7 Mary decorated the cake ..... .
8 I left my dictionary at home. Can I use ..... please?

## 4 Rewrite the sentences using *both ... and* or *neither ... nor*.

1 Hilary likes skiing. Emily likes skiing, too.
*Both Hilary and Emily like skiing.*
2 Samantha goes shopping on Saturdays. Eric goes shopping on Saturdays, too.
.....
3 Brian doesn't play football. Simon doesn't play football, either.
.....
4 Peter is a good dancer. Sally is a good dancer, too.
.....
5 David doesn't know how to drive. Linda doesn't know how to drive, either.
.....
6 Jane doesn't like carrots. I don't like carrots, either.
.....

## 5 Choose the correct answer.

1 You ...*B*... buy any biscuits because we've got lots already.
**A** could **B** needn't **C** can't
2 You ..... telephone your uncle tomorrow. He wants to speak to you.
**A** must **B** are able to **C** can't
3 You ..... play ball games near the windows.
**A** don't have to **B** needn't **C** can't
4 ..... I speak to you in my office, please?
**A** Can't **B** Must **C** Could
5 He ..... speak two languages when he was ten years old.
**A** needn't **B** could **C** may
6 Martha ..... leave hospital yesterday.
**A** can't **B** can **C** was able to

## 6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *infinitive form* or the *-ing form*.

Last weekend I went **1)** ...*camping*... (camp) with my brother. I expected **2)** ..... (have) a terrible time, but, in fact, I didn't want **3)** ..... (go) home at the end of the trip. We managed **4)** ..... (put up) our tent by ourselves and we were very pleased **5)** ..... (see) that it didn't fall down again! After we had finished **6)** ..... (put up) the tent, we began **7)** ..... (make) some sandwiches because we were very hungry after all that hard work! During the weekend we went **8)** ..... (swim) in the river and we went **9)** ..... (walk) in the countryside. We had a lovely time. **10)** ..... (camp) is great!

## 7 Fill in the gaps with *too* or *enough*.

1 I'm not old ...*enough*... to go to nightclubs.
2 I'm not lucky ..... to have my own bedroom. I share it with my sister.
3 My brother is ..... young to go to school. He's still a baby.
4 The bag is ..... heavy for me to carry.
5 The books are small ..... to put in this box.
6 It is ..... hot to wear a jacket today.

## 8 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

1 Mary was so tired that she couldn't study any more.
**too** Mary was ...*too tired to study*... any more.
2 The boys are too young to play in the street.
**old** The boys ..... play in the street.
3 This car is too expensive for him to buy.
**not** This car is ..... to buy.
4 Jim was so shocked that he couldn't say anything.
**too** Jim was ..... anything.
5 Alice is too short to be a model.
**tall** Alice isn't ..... to be a model.
6 Meeting old friends is always nice.
**to** It is ..... old friends.
7 Helen was so excited that she couldn't sleep.
**too** Helen ..... sleep.

## 9 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1 A: I ...*met*... (meet) Simon Jones last week.
B: Really. I ..... (not/see) him for a long time.
2 A: ..... (you/do) anything this evening?
B: No, I ..... (stay) at home this evening because I ..... (be) tired.
3 A: ..... (Steve/phone) you yesterday?
B: No, he ..... (not/phone) me. I ..... (probably/give) him a call later this evening.
4 A: ..... (be) you busy?
B: Yes, I ..... (be).
A: What ..... (you/do)?
B: I ..... (study) for an exam at the moment.
5 A: Why are your eyes red?
B: Because I ..... (work) on the computer for three hours.
6 A: ..... (you/ever/go) to France?
B: Yes, I ..... (go) there on holiday last year.
A: I ..... (never/go) there, but I want to go next year.
7 A: How long ..... (you/live) in Russia?
B: I ..... (live) here since I was born.
8 A: ..... (you/post) the party invitations yet?
B: Yes, I ..... (do) it this morning.
9 A: Why are you crying?
B: Because I ..... (just/cut) my finger.
10 A: We ..... (go) to a restaurant last night.
B: ..... (be) the food good?
A: Yes, I ..... (enjoy) it very much.

## 10 Correct the mistakes.

1 He is the man who's daughter won the competition.
2 I want he to help me in the garden.
3 Did you hear him to shout?
4 We went to the bakery for to buy some bread.
5 Would you like me do the washing-up?
6 When have you met her?
7 He is tired because he has painted the gate since this morning.
8 It's not worth to wait any more.

# UNIT 11
# Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

## Past Perfect Simple

*What **had** Lesley **done** before her husband came home?*
*She **had cooked** dinner, but she **hadn't laid** the table.*

**We form the past perfect simple with had and the past participle of the main verb.**
**We form questions by putting had before the subject.**
**We form negations by putting not after had.**

| Affirmative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Long form | Short form | |
| I<br>He/She/It<br>You/We/They | had | 'd | finished/ left. |

| Interrogative | | |
|---|---|---|
| Had | I<br>he/she/it<br>you/we/they | finished/ left? |

| Negative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Long form | Short form | |
| I<br>He/She/It<br>You/We/They | had not | hadn't | finished/ left. |

**1** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *past perfect simple*.**

1 Jason ...*had returned*... (return) home before the storm broke out.
2 ..... (Lucy/pack) her suitcase by the time you called her?
3 The children ..... (finish) doing their homework by nine o'clock.
4 ..... (Julie/type) the letters by the time her boss came to the office?
5 I ..... (not /finish) my lunch when uncle Bill came.
6 After Sarah ..... (do) the shopping, she had coffee with her friends at a café.
7 When I got to the garage, the mechanic ..... ..... (not/repair) my car.
8 The boys were frightened because they ..... ..... (not/be) on a plane before.

**2** ***It was Marie's birthday yesterday and she gave a party for her friends. What had she done before the day of the party?* Look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below, as in the example.**

SA: *What had Marie done before the day of the party?*
SB: *She had prepared the food.*

## Use

**We use the past perfect simple:**

- **for an action which happened in the past before another past action. The action which happened earlier in the past is in the past perfect simple, and the action which happened later is in the past simple.**

*They **had done** their homework before they **went** out to play yesterday afternoon. (=They did their homework first and then they went out to play.)*

- **for an action which happened before a stated time in the past.**

*She **had watered** all the flowers **by five o'clock** in the afternoon. (=She had finished watering the flowers before five o'clock.)*

- **as the past equivalent of the present perfect simple. That is, we use the past perfect simple for an action which started and finished in the past, but we use the present perfect simple for an action which started in the past and finished in the present.**

e.g. *Jill **wasn't** at home. She **had gone** out. (Jill was out then.)*
*Jill **isn't** at home. She **has gone** out. (Jill is out now.)*

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the past perfect simple include:**

***before, after, already, just, till/until, when, by, by the time, etc.***

**3** **Match column A with column B to make correct sentences. Which is the first action in each pair?**

**Column A**

1 By the time he reached the airport *c (first action: the plane had already taken off)*
2 Mary was angry because
3 The bank robbers had escaped
4 We went to the theatre
5 The actress gave an interview

**Column B**

a her husband had forgotten her birthday.
b after we had bought the tickets.
c the plane had already taken off.
d after she had won the prize.
e before the police arrived.

**4** **Use the prompts to make sentences, as in the example.**

e.g. *a) After/When Sue had packed her suitcase, she called a taxi.*
*b) Sue had packed her suitcase before she called a taxi.*

| First | Then |
|---|---|
| • Sue/pack/her suitcase | call/a taxi |
| • Bob/eat/the meal | pay/the bill |
| • Mary/read/the contract | sign/it |
| • the boys/watch/the match | turn off/the TV |
| • Peter/borrow/some money | buy/a car |

**5** **Join the sentences using the words in brackets.**

1 She cleaned the house. Then, she watched TV. (after)
*After she had cleaned the house, she watched TV.*
2 I found a solution to my problem. Then, I felt happier. (when) .....
3 The boys finished their homework. Then, they went out to play. (before)
.....
4 He locked the door. Then, the phone rang. (after)
.....
5 Sarah washed the dishes. Then, her husband arrived. (by the time) .....
6 The concert finished. Then, the fans left the stadium. (when) .....
7 The play started. Then, Henry arrived at the theatre. (already...when) .....

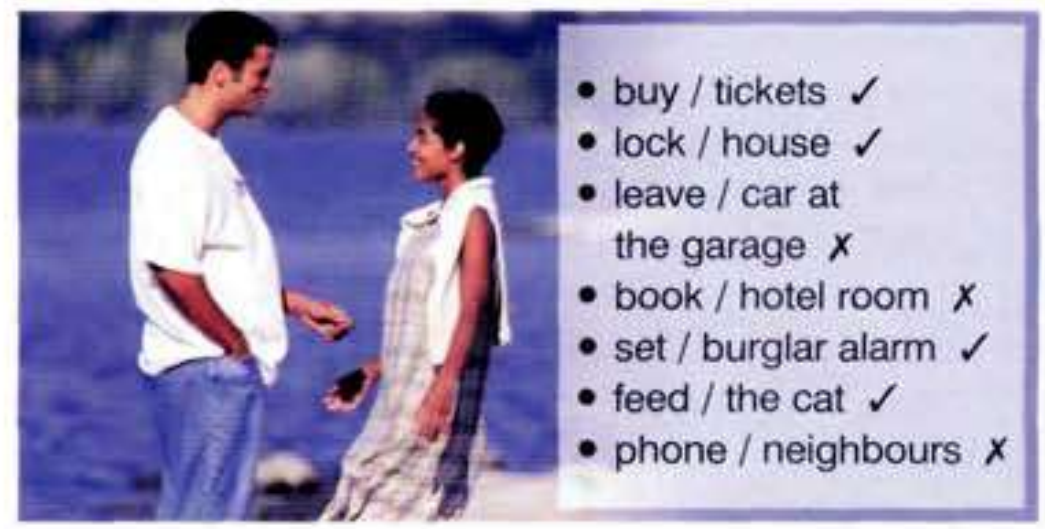
## Short Answers

*e.g. Had you read the book before you saw the film?*
*Yes, I had./No, I hadn't.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Had you ...? | Yes, I/we had. |
| | No, I/we hadn't. |
| Had he/she/it ...? | Yes, he/she/it had. |
| | No, he/she/it hadn't. |
| Had they ...? | Yes, they had. |
| | No, they hadn't. |

**6** ***Rick and Alison went on holiday last weekend.*** **Look at the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

SA: *Had they bought tickets before they left?*
SB: *Yes, they had.*




## Past Perfect Simple - Past Continuous - Past Simple

### Past Perfect Simple

- **We use the past perfect simple for a past action which happened before another past action.**

*They **had eaten** dinner when their friends came. (They had dinner first. Their friends came afterwards.)*

### Past Continuous

- **We use the past continuous for a past action which was in progress when it was interrupted by another action.**

*They **were eating** dinner when their friends came. (They were still eating dinner when their friends came.)*

### Past Simple

- **We use the past simple for actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past.**

*They **ate** dinner when their friends came. (Their friends came and they had dinner immediately.)*

**7** **Put the verbs in brackets into the *past simple, past perfect simple or past continuous*.**

1 A: Where **1)** ...*were*... (be) you last night?
B: I **2)** ..... (be) at the cinema. I **3)** ..... (watch) a great film when a fire **4)** ..... (break out).
A: Oh gosh! How **5)** ..... (it/happen)?
B: Someone **6)** ..... (drop) a match into a waste-paper basket.

2 A: **1)** ..... (you/go) to the beach on Saturday?
B: No, I **2)** ..... (go) on Sunday instead.
A: **3)** ..... (you/have) a good time?
B: No, I didn't. I **4)** ..... (sunbathe) when it **5)** ..... (start) raining, so I **6)** ..... (leave) in a hurry.

3 A: I **1)** ..... (lose) my keys yesterday.
B: Where **2)** ..... (you/lose) them?
A: I don't know. I **3)** ..... (go) shopping and when I got back, I **4)** ..... (realise) that I **5)** ..... (leave) my keys somewhere.

## Past Perfect Continuous

*He **had been working** on the computer for an hour before she came to help him.*

**We form the past perfect continuous with had been and the main verb with the -ing suffix. We form questions by putting had before the subject.**

*e.g.* ***Had Peter been driving*** *for two hours before he had the accident?*

**We form negations by putting not after had.**

*e.g.* ***He had not/hadn't been driving*** *for two hours before he had the accident.*

| Affirmative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Long form | Short form | |
| I<br>He/She/It<br>You/We/They | had | 'd | been studying. |

| Interrogative | | |
|---|---|---|
| Had | I<br>he/she/it<br>you/we/they | been studying? |

| Negative | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Long form | Short form | |
| I<br>He/She/It<br>You/We/They | had not | hadn't | been studying. |

## Short Answers

**We form short answers for the past perfect continuous in the same way as for the past perfect simple (see page 76).**

*e.g. Had you been sleeping for long when I called you last night? Yes, I had./No, I hadn't.*

## Use

- **We use the past perfect continuous as the past equivalent of the present perfect continuous. That is, the past perfect continuous puts emphasis on the duration of an action which started and finished in the past, whereas the present perfect continuous puts emphasis on the duration of an action which started in the past and continues up to the present.**

  *e.g. He **had been waiting** for the bus **for** half an hour before it came. (He isn't waiting for the bus now.)*
  *He **has been waiting** for the bus **for** half an hour. (He is still waiting for the bus.)*

- **We use the past perfect continuous to show that the result of an action which happened in the past for some time was evident in the past, whereas we use the present perfect continuous to show that the result of an action which started in the past is evident in the present.**

  *e.g. She **was** tired. She **had been working** hard all day yesterday. (We could see that she was tired. The result was obvious in the past.)*
  *She **is** tired. She **has been working** hard all day. (We can see that she is tired. The result is obvious in the present.)*

## Time Expressions

**Time expressions used with the past perfect continuous include: *for, since, how long, before, until*, etc.**

**8** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the *past perfect continuous*.**

1 Sophie ...*had been painting*... (paint) the walls all day before she finished them.
2 ..... (you/wait) long when the boss announced that he couldn't see you?
3 Tom ..... (look) for a job for six months when he found one.
4 We ..... (watch) TV for half an hour when the doorbell rang.
5 They ..... (sunbathe) for an hour when it started to rain.
6 Stan ..... (work) as a postman for forty years when he retired.
7 I ..... (live) in France for ten years when I met my husband.

# Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

## 9 Fill in the gaps with one of the verbs from the list in the *past perfect continuous*.

*play, work, walk, wait, discuss, sit*

1 She was wet. She ...*had been walking*... in the rain.

2 They were happy. They ..... together for hours.

3 He was irritated. He ..... for the bus for half an hour.

4 He was hot. He ..... ..... in the barn.

5 He was suntanned. He ..... in the sun for hours.

6 They were tired. They ..... business problems for four hours.

## 10 Put the verbs in brackets into the *past perfect simple* or the *past perfect continuous*.

1 A: Are you alright? You look tired.
B: Yes, I am. I didn't sleep very well. I **1)** ...*had just gone*... (just/go) to sleep last night when a lot of noise outside woke me up. I got up and went to the window. I **2)** ..... (stand) there for a few minutes when two police cars stopped outside my house. I went downstairs and a policeman told me that two prisoners **3)** ..... (escape) from prison and were hiding in the area.
A: Did they catch them again?
B: Yes, but I didn't sleep very well after that.

2 A: Did you do anything exciting at the weekend?
B: Not really. By the time I **1)** ..... (do) my shopping and cleaned the house, Saturday was nearly over. What about you?
A: Well, I **2)** ..... (plan) to go out with my friend but she was late and I **3)** ..... ..... (wait) for nearly two hours before she phoned me to say she couldn't come after all.
B: That's a shame. Next weekend, we should go somewhere nice together.

## 11 Put the verbs in brackets into the *past perfect simple* or the *past simple*.

**A** Bert and Willy **1)** ...*went*... (go) fishing on Sunday. They **2)** ..... (take) some sandwiches and some coffee with them. They **3)** ..... (sit) on the river bank all day, but by the time they **4)** ..... (leave), they **5)** ..... (not/catch) anything.

**B** James **1)** ..... (be) late for work this morning. He **2)** ..... (forget) to set his alarm clock and then, when he **3)** ..... (get) to work, his boss **4)** ..... (be) very angry.

**C** Barry **1)** ..... (have) lots of work to do yesterday. He **2)** ..... (get up) very early and by six o'clock, he **3)** ..... (finish). Then, he **4)** ..... (have) time to relax.

**D** Yesterday, Liz **1)** ..... (go) to a party. She **2)** ..... (have) a great time, but when she **3)** ..... (get) home, she **4)** ..... (realise) she **5)** ..... (forget) her jacket. So, she **6)** ..... (go) back to the party to get it.

## 12 Put the verbs in brackets into the *past perfect simple* or the *past perfect continuous*.

Yesterday was a bad day for Andrew. He **1)** ...*hadn't slept*... (not/sleep) well because there was a terrible storm in the night. After he **2)** ..... (have) a shower, he made breakfast. After he **3)** ..... (eat), he got into his car and drove to work. He **4)** ..... (only/drive) for five minutes when he remembered that he **5)** ..... (leave) his briefcase at home. He turned the car around and went home again. Then, he realised that he **6)** ..... (lock) himself out. The keys were still inside the house! Andrew was already late for work, so he decided to leave the briefcase and go to work. When he arrived, his secretary told him that his boss **7)** ..... (try) to call him at home. Andrew went to find his boss. When he asked his boss why he **8)** ..... (call), he told him that it hadn't been necessary for him to come to work that day after all! Poor Andrew drove all the way home again.

# Revision Box

**13** **Cross out the unnecessary word.**

1 The woman who she lives next door is a flight attendant.
2 Sam is going to on holiday next month.
3 Karen had been finished her homework by the time her parents came home.
4 Peter couldn't to dive when he was young.
5 Mary did used to like sweets, but now she doesn't.
6 Neither Liz nor Kim is not tall.
7 The box was too heavy for Paul to lift it.
8 That blouse isn't yours. It's mine blouse.
9 He is not never late for work.
10 Jack is not too short to reach the ceiling.

**14** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 That's the girl ...*B*... dog bit me last week.
A who B whose C that

2 I ..... the house all day, I need a break!
A am tidying B have been tidying C tidy

3 Charles and Monica are ..... doctors.
A both B all C none

4 You ..... finish your homework before you go out to play.
A mustn't B must C can't

5 Archie went ..... his uncle.
A phone B to phone C phoning

6 My father lets me ..... up late on Saturday nights.
A stay B to stay C staying

7 Marion denied ..... the window.
A to break B break C breaking

8 I ..... your mother three times this week.
A have seen B see C have been seeing

9 Roger ..... a luxury yacht.
A has recently bought B buys C was buying

10 I ..... fairy tales when I was a child.
A was reading B used to read C have read

## ORAL Activity

**Linda is married to Nick and they have a baby. Last weekend, Linda had to go away on business, so Nick was at home. Linda asked him to do some things. Look at the list and say what Nick had or hadn't done by the time Linda returned home.**

*e.g. Nick had fed the baby.*

| | |
|---|---|
| feed the baby | ✓ |
| cook something | ✗ |
| do the shopping | ✓ |
| make the beds | ✗ |
| take the rubbish out | ✗ |
| put the baby's toys away | ✓ |
| pay the phone bill | ✓ |

## WRITING Activity

**Linda is writing a letter to her friend Lucy. Look at the Oral Activity again and complete Linda's letter.**

Dear Lucy,

Hi! I hope you're well. I'm writing to tell you what a busy weekend I had. As you know, I had to go away on business, so Nick was at home with the baby. As usual, he had done only half the things I had asked him to. He had fed the baby but he hadn't .....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

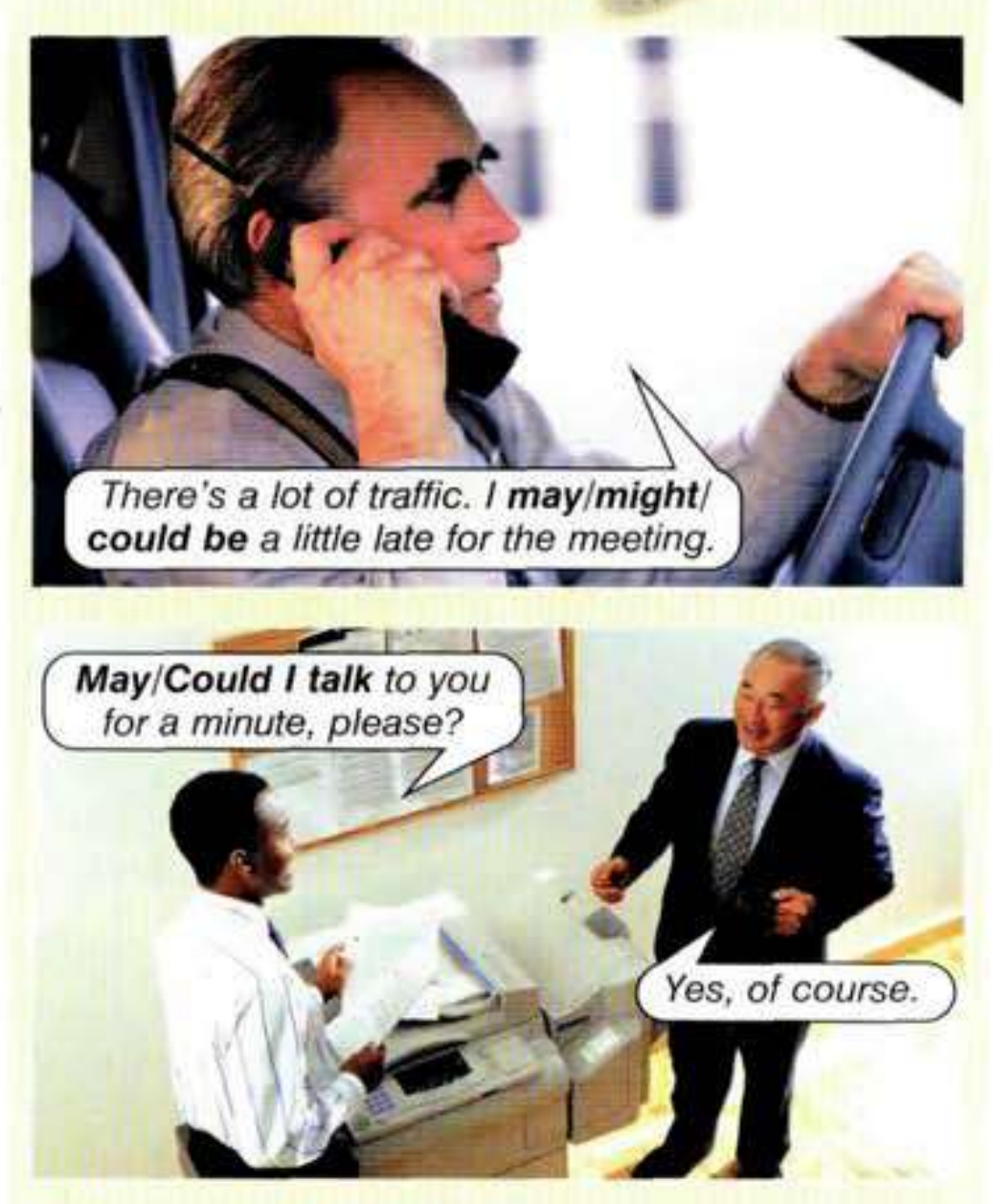
When I asked him why he hadn't done all the things, he told me he had just been lazy! I was so angry with him!

Anyway, I've got to go now because I have a million things to do and I haven't got time to be lazy.

Best wishes,
Linda

# UNIT 12
# Modal Verbs II

## May - Might - Could
### (possibility - asking for permission)




- **We use may/might/could to express possibility.**
  *e.g. 'Where's Paul?' 'He **may/might/could be** at the cinema.' (Perhaps he is at the cinema.)*
- **We use May I...?/Could I...?/Can I...? to ask for permission. Note the difference in the following questions.**
  ***May I use** your telephone? (Formal – we do not know the other person very well.)*
  ***Can I use** your phone? (Informal – we know the other person very well.)*
  ***Could I use** your phone? (more polite than 'can'.)*
- **When someone asks for our permission, we can reply in the following ways: Yes, of course./Of course./Certainly. When we know the other person very well, we can reply with Sure. or No problem.**

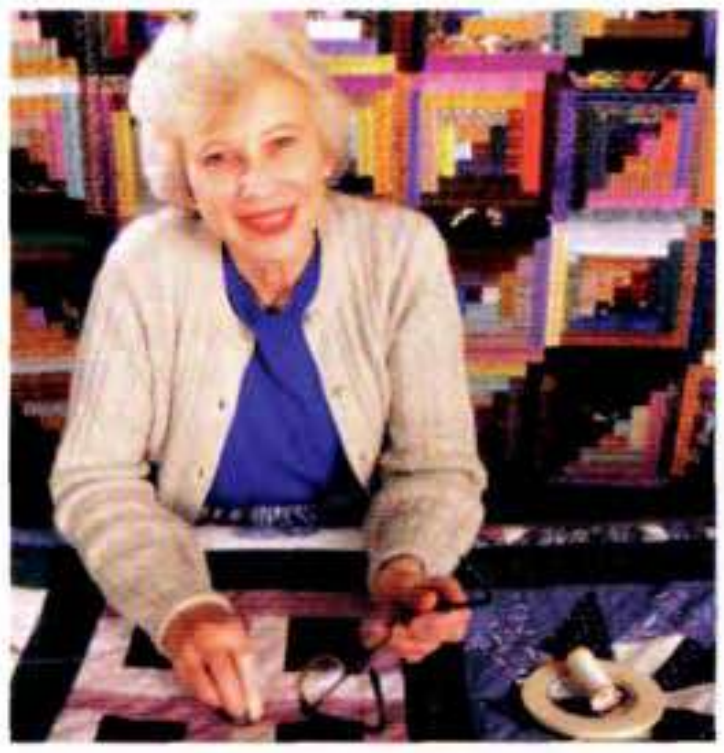
**maybe** (adv) = perhaps
*e.g. Jack isn't here. **Maybe** he's at home.*
**may be** (modal + bare infinitive)
*e.g. Sheila **may be** in the office.*

**1** **Fill in the gaps with *may* or *may not* and one of the verbs from the list.**

*leave, buy, come, be, enjoy, cut, go, visit, cook*

1 I ...*may not go*... to school tomorrow. I don't feel very well.
2 Father ..... the grass today. It looks as if it is going to rain.
3 Dan isn't at home. He ..... at the football field.
4 I ..... a new dress. I haven't really got enough money.
5 We ..... the Smiths. There is a film on TV we want to watch.
6 Let's take Molly to the funfair. She ..... it.
7 Mother ..... something special tonight. It's my birthday.
8 I ..... work early today. I have almost finished everything I have to do.
9 Sally ..... home late tonight. She's got a lot of work at the office.

**2** **Underline the correct answer.**



A: Good morning, madam. **1)** ***May/Must*** I help you?
B: You **2)** ***might/mustn't*** be able to. I need a ball of wool that is the same colour as my jumper.
A: Just a moment, please. I **3)** ***must/mustn't*** look in the stock room. We **4)** ***might/might not*** have some left. I'm not sure.
B: The wool **5)** ***must/mustn't*** be exactly the same colour, it **6)** ***must/mustn't*** be different.
A: **7)** ***Could/Mustn't*** I ask you a question, madam?
B: Yes.
A: What do you want the wool for?
B: I **8)** ***could/must*** finish knitting this jumper. It only has one sleeve at the moment!

# Should - Ought to (advice)
# Shall - Will
## (offer - suggestion - request)

- **We use should/ought to to give advice.**

  *e.g. Young children* ***should/ought to go*** *to bed early.*

  *You* ***should not/shouldn't*** / ***ought not to/oughtn't to*** ***spend*** *so much money on clothes.*

- **We use shall in questions a) when we offer to do something,** *e.g.* ***Shall I carry*** *your shopping for you? (Would you like me to carry your shopping for you?),* **b) when we make suggestions.** *e.g.* ***Shall*** *we* ***visit*** *your cousins tonight?* **and c) when we ask for suggestions.** *e.g. 'What time* ***shall I call*** *you?' 'Give me a call at six.'*

- **We use will in questions when we want to make a request.** *e.g.* ***Will you phone*** *the doctor, please?*

**3** ***Joan doesn't always do the right thing. What does her mother advise her to do?*** **Use the prompts to make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. You should do your homework.*

- She doesn't do her homework.
- She talks all the time.
- She never washes the dishes.
- She doesn't tidy her room.
- She eats lots of chocolate.
- She argues with her sisters.
- She doesn't put her clothes away.
- She never takes the dog for a walk.

**4** **Fill in the gaps with the question words from the list and** ***shall we.***

*when, what, how, how much, who, where*

1 '*Where shall we* go on Saturday night?'
'Let's go to a restaurant.'
2 '..... spend on a present for Jane?'
'£10.'
3 '..... pay?' 'In cash.'
4 '..... invite to the party?' 'Just our friends.'
5 '..... decorate the house?' 'This weekend.'
6 '..... do on your birthday?'
'We can have a party.'
7 '..... do on Monday?'
'Why don't we go swimming?'
8 '..... take the dog for a walk?'
'Let's take him to the beach.'

**5** ***Mrs Patterson asks the nanny to do some things while she's gone.*** **Use the prompts to make requests, as in the example.**

*e.g. Will you give the baby a bath?*

# Functions of Modal Verbs

| FUNCTION | MODAL VERBS |
|---|---|
| **obligation/ necessity** | *You **must/have to** study hard. (You're obliged to ...)* |
| **advice** | *You **must/should/ought to** see a doctor. (I advise you to ...)* |
| **prohibition** | *You **mustn't** talk in the library. (You aren't allowed to...)* |
| **lack of necessity** | *They **needn't/don't have to** call us tonight. (It isn't necessary.)* |
| **ability** | *Tony **can** run fast. (present)*<br>*When he was young, he **could** climb trees. (general ability in the past)*<br>*She **was able to** get into the house. (single action in the past)* |
| **permission** | ***Can/Could/May** I use your phone? (asking for permission)*<br>*You **can** take my car tonight. (giving permission)*<br>*You **can't** take photographs inside the museum. (refusing permission)* |
| **request** | ***Can** you lend me your pen, please?*<br>***Could** you open the door, please?*<br>***Will** you post this letter?* |
| **suggestion** | *We **can/could** watch a film tonight.*<br>***Shall** we eat out tonight? (Why don't we eat/How about eating out tonight?)* |
| **possibility** | *He **may/might/could** be ill. (Perhaps; it is possible.)* |
| **offer** | ***Shall** I carry the shopping for you? (Would you like me to carry ...?)* |
| **logical assumption** | *She **must be** at work. (I'm sure she is ...)*<br>*She **can't be** at work. (I'm sure she isn't ...)* |

## 6 Rewrite the sentences using modal verbs, as in the example.

1 **It isn't necessary for her to** wear a suit to the office.
*She needn't/doesn't have to wear a suit to the office.*

2 **You aren't allowed to** take those books out of the library.
.....

3 **It is possible that Mark will** be at home this evening.
.....

4 **Would you like me to** make some sandwiches for you?
.....

5 **I advise you to** leave early.
.....

6 **Emily managed to** find a job after looking for six months.
.....

7 **I'm sure Paul isn't** from Canada.
.....

8 **We are obliged to** take exams every six months.
.....

9 **I'm sure the children aren't** happy with your decision.
.....

10 **Perhaps we will** go to Florida on holiday.
.....

## 7 Choose the correct answer.

1 I ...C... remember to go to the bank. I haven't got any money.
**A** don't have to **B** needn't **C** must

2 ..... I take your order, please?
**A** Mustn't **B** Must **C** May

3 ..... you ride a bicycle?
**A** Can **B** Should **C** May

4 Steven ..... read and write until he was seven years old.
**A** must **B** could **C** couldn't

5 ..... you make dinner tonight?
**A** Shall **B** Will **C** May

6 Susan, ..... you come outside and play with me?
**A** will **B** shall **C** may

7 You ..... go to bed late during the week.
**A** couldn't **B** shall **C** shouldn't

8 You ..... visit your grandparents more often.
**A** ought to **B** were able to **C** shall

9 ..... we go to the cinema at the weekend?
**A** Mustn't **B** May **C** Shall

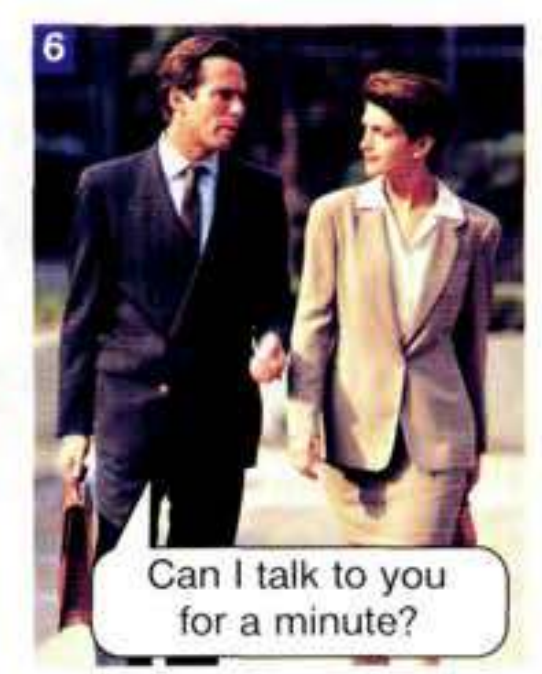
10 'Where ..... we meet?' 'At my place.'
**A** must **B** shall **C** ought to

11 Peter ..... go to the dentist before his toothache gets worse.
A ought to B shall C can

12 You ..... do the ironing. I'll do it instead.
A needn't B must C mustn't

13 You ..... cross the road without looking first. It's dangerous.
A needn't B mustn't C must

## 8 Read what each person says and rewrite their comments using another modal verb.




1 *Will you read louder, please?*
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....

## 9 Match the sentences in Column A with the responses in Column B.

**Column A**

1 Do I have to do the shopping today?
2 Can I ask you a question?
3 Will you buy me some stamps at the post office?
4 If you're tired, we could have a short break.
5 May I borrow your mobile phone, please?
6 Edward can't be in his office.

**Column B**

a Certainly.
b Yes, that would be nice.
c No, you don't. I did it yesterday.
d Yes, I agree. He must be at the bank.
e Sure. How many do you want?
f Of course. What do you want to know?

1 ...c... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 .....

## 10 Underline the correct item.

*Dear Henry,*

*I'm writing to you because I need some advice.* 1) **Can/Shall** *you help me, please? My boss offered me a job in Italy and I* 2) **could/must** *make a decision about it soon. I've been thinking about it since last week but I* 3) **haven't been able to/wasn't able to** *decide! I'm a bit worried that I* 4) **shall/may** *not enjoy living in another country. I* 5) **might/ought to** *find it difficult to learn Italian. However, I* 6) **won't have to/mustn't** *stay there if I don't like it. What do you think?* 7) **Should/Will** *I move to Italy or* 8) **could/should** *I stay here?* 9) **Could/May** *you write to me and tell me what you think?*

*I hope to hear from you soon.*

*Best wishes,*
*Ronnie*

## 11 Fill in the gaps with an appropriate modal verb. Sometimes more than one answer is correct.

1 A: I ...*could*... roller-skate when I was young.
B: So could I. Those were the days.
2 A: Dad's car broke down yesterday.
B: ..... he ..... repair it?
A: No, he took it to the garage.
3 A: Those men look alike. They ..... be brothers.
B: Yes, they are.
4 A: You ..... leave your toys on the floor.
B: Why?
A: You'll cause an accident.
5 A: Shall I do Grandma's shopping for her?
B: No, you..... . She wants to do it herself.
6 A: You ..... tidy your bedroom today.
B: Oh, do I ..... ?
7 A: Where is Colin?
B: I'm not sure. He ..... be in his office.
8 A: What ..... we do at the weekend?
B: We ..... go swimming.
9 A: My brother ..... ride a motorbike.
B: Really? ..... he drive a car, too?
10 A: I'm really tired.
B: You ..... go to bed early tonight.
11 A: ..... I help you, sir?
B: No thank you. I'm just looking around.

### IN OTHER WORDS

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 I advise you to look for another job.
**should** You **should look for** another job.
**ought** You **ought to look for** another job.
2 Perhaps Mary is at the library.
**may** Mary **may be at the** library.
3 Let's leave the party now.
**shall** **Shall we leave** the party now?
4 I'm sure Jack isn't married.
**can't** Jack **can't be** married.
5 I'm sure Peter has a lot of money.
**must** Peter **must have a lot of** money.

## 12 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

1 Perhaps Nick is at the office.
**may** Nick ...*may be at the*... office.
2 I don't think Mary is very happy at the moment.
**can't** Mary ..... very happy at the moment.
3 I'm bored. Let's watch TV.
**shall** I'm bored. ..... TV?
4 I'm sure those are Paula's sunglasses.
**must** Those ..... Paula's sunglasses.
5 I advise you to stop eating fatty foods.
**ought** You ..... fatty foods.
6 Perhaps the children are in the playground.
**may** The children ..... playground.
7 I'm sure they come from Spain. They've got a Spanish accent.
**must** They ..... .
They've got a Spanish accent.

## 13 Read the situations and complete the sentences with an appropriate modal verb.

1 You are at school. Your teacher tells you to bring your homework with you tomorrow.
*You must* bring your homework with you tomorrow.
2 You have fallen over. Your arm hurts. Your friend thinks it might be broken. She advises you to go to hospital.
..... go to hospital.
3 Your friend is having a birthday party on Saturday. You want to go. Ask your parents for permission.
..... go to my friend's party on Saturday?
4 You are eating lunch with your family. You can't reach the salt. Make a request.
..... pass the salt, please?
5 Your mother asks you where your brother is. You think he is at the cinema with his friends.
..... be at the cinema with his friends.
6 Your parents are planning to go on holiday this summer. They can't decide where to go. You suggest going to America.
..... go to America.
7 You are at the beach with your mother. She is going to buy a drink. She asks you if you want anything. Ask for an ice-cream.
..... buy me an ice-cream, please?

## 14 Correct the mistakes.

1 Might we visit Mary and Tony tonight?
2 I'm not sure where Ed is. He mustn't be at work.
3 Will I help you wash the dishes?
4 You mustn't get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.
5 Martha had a bad cold but she could do all her work at the office.
6 You shouldn't go to the dentist if you have toothache.
7 Shall I borrow your pen, please?
8 I might climb trees when I was young.

# Revision Box

**15** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *infinitive form* or the *-ing form*.**

**A** I went **(1)** ...*swimming*... (swim) last week. Even though it is only April, it was warm enough **(2)** ..... ..... (swim). I hope **(3)** ..... (go) again next week if the weather is good.

**B** I also managed **(1)** ..... (find) time to go to the cinema to see the new Brad Pitt film last week. The film is worth **(2)** ..... (see) because it is very exciting.

**16** **Choose the correct answer.**

*Dear Melanie,*
*Hi! I'm writing 1) ...B... you some good news. My father 2) ..... for a new job for two months 3) ..... he found one last week. It is in Carrfield and that means that we 4) ..... move back. I'm very happy about this because I 5) ..... see my old friends again. I was very sad 6) ..... we left two years ago, but now I'm looking forward 7) ..... back.*
*Well, I must go now. I hope 8) ..... you very soon.*

*Best wishes,*
*Jenny*

1 **A** give **B** to give **C** giving
2 **A** had looked **B** was looking **C** had been looking
3 **A** until **B** after **C** while
4 **A** should **B** have to **C** shall
5 **A** have been able to **B** will be able to **C** was able to
6 **A** when **B** while **C** as soon as
7 **A** come **B** to coming **C** to come
8 **A** see **B** seeing **C** to see

## ORAL Activity

**A fire-fighter is visiting your school. He wants to tell the students what they should/shouldn't do if there is a fire. Look at the prompts below and say what his advice is.**

*e.g. You should leave the classroom at once.*

- leave the classroom at once
- stay behind to collect your things
- follow your teacher's instructions
- use the lift
- run down the stairs
- go to a safe place
- panic

## WRITING Activity

**Look at the Oral Activity again and complete the leaflet that the fire-fighter gave the students, as in the example.**

**What to do in case of fire**

*You should leave the classroom at once.*

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

**What not to do in case of fire**

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

# UNIT 13
# The Passive

*The Parthenon **was built** in the 5th century BC.*
*It **is visited** by thousands of tourists every year.*

**We form the passive with the verb to be and the past participle of the main verb.**

**to be + past participle (pp)**

- **The passive verb forms are:**

**present simple:** **am/is/are + pp**
*The office **is cleaned** twice a week.*

**present continuous:** **am/is/are being + pp**
*The office **is being cleaned** now.*

**past simple:** **was/were + pp**
*The office **was cleaned** last week.*

**past continuous:** **was/were being + pp**
*The office **was being cleaned** when the boss arrived.*

**present perfect simple:** **have/has been + pp**
*The office **has not been cleaned** yet.*

**past perfect simple:** **had been + pp**
*The office **had been cleaned** by two o'clock.*

**future simple:** **will be + pp**
*The office **will be cleaned** tomorrow.*

- **We form questions by putting the verb to be before the subject.**
*e.g. **Is your car being** serviced?*

**We form negations with the word not.**
*e.g. The furniture **has not been delivered** yet.*

- **We form the passive of infinitives like this:**

**to be + past participle**

*e.g. He wants **to be told** the truth.*

- **We form the passive of modal verbs like this:**

**modal verb + be + past participle**

*e.g. The roof of the house **must be repaired**.*

**1** **Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences using the *present simple passive*, as in the example.**

*1 Volkswagen cars are made in Germany.*

1 Volkswagen cars/ make/Germany
2 a lot of rice/ eat/India
3 snails/eat/ France
4 Coca Cola/ produce/the USA
5 coffee/grow/ Brazil
6 cricket/play/ England

**2** **Match Column A with Column B to make correct sentences using the *past simple passive*. Then, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

*e.g. SA: Who was "Oliver Twist" written by?*
*SB: It was written by Charles Dickens.*

| Column A | Column B |
|---|---|
| 1 'Oliver Twist' (write) | a Leonardo da Vinci |
| 2 The 'Mona Lisa' (paint) | b Steven Spielberg |
| 3 The Eiffel Tower (build) | c Alexander the Great |
| 4 'Jurassic Park' (direct) | d Charles Dickens |
| 5 'Carmen' (compose) | e Georges Bizet |
| 6 Alexandria (found) | f Gustave Eiffel |
| 7 America (discover) | g Christopher Columbus |
| 8 The telephone (invent) | h Alexander Graham Bell |

**3** ***Mrs Edison is a businesswoman. She was away on a business trip but now she is back. She wants to know what has been done while she was away.* Use the prompts and, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

*e.g. SA: Have they delivered my new desk?*
*SB: No, it hasn't been delivered yet.*
*SA: Have you posted the invitations?*
*SB: Yes, they have already been posted.*

1 they / deliver / my new desk? (No)
2 you / post / the invitations? (Yes)
3 they / repair / the photocopier? (Yes)
4 you / type / last month's reports? (No)
5 you / place / advertisement in the newspaper? (No)
6 you / pay / the bills? (Yes)

**4** ***Emma Doyle has got three children. Yesterday she had to go out. What had been done by the children by the time she got home?* Look at the prompts and make sentences using the past perfect passive, as in the example.**

e.g. *The beds had been made.*
*The dishes had not been washed.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | beds / make | ✓ | e | cat / feed | ✗ |
| b | dishes / wash | ✗ | f | dinner / cook | ✗ |
| c | plants / water | ✓ | g | rubbish / take out | ✓ |
| d | carpet / hoover | ✓ | h | windows / clean | ✗ |

**5** **Fill in the gaps with the correct passive tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1 A: These flowers are great.
B: They ...*were sent*... (send) to me yesterday by one of my fans.
2 A: Have you ever appeared on TV?
B: Actually, I ..... (recently/ask) to take part in a show.
3 A: When will I have my car?
B: It ..... (deliver) to your house the day after tomorrow.
4 A: So, when did they tell you about the robbery?
B: I ..... (inform) by the police as soon as they found out.
5 A: Why can't we go over the bridge?
B: Because it ..... (repair) at the moment.
6 A: I'm tired.
B: So am I. But these reports must ..... ..... (type) before we leave.
7 A: Who looks after your baby when you're at work?
B: Well, he ..... (look after) by my mother.
8 A: Those pictures are beautiful.
B: They ..... (paint) by my father while he was on holiday last summer.
9 A: Who does the washing-up in your house?
B: The dishes ..... (wash) by my brother and then they ..... (dry) by my sister.
10 A: Why can't I use your car?
B: Because it ..... (service) at the moment. You can take Mum's car if you want.
11 A: Did you post the letters?
B: No, they ..... (already/post) by the time I came in.
12 A: What will happen to the criminals?
B: They ..... (punish) for their crimes.
13 A: That's a very pretty tablecloth.
B: It ..... (give) to me last year for my birthday.
14 A: Have you moved house yet?
B: Yes. The last boxes ..... (just/move).
15 A: Have you heard about Jack?
B: Yes, he ..... (promote) to senior manager.

## Use

**We use the passive when we want to show that the action of the verb is more important than the person who carries out the action.**

*The missing climber* ***was found*** *yesterday. (The action (was found) is more important than the person who found the climber.)*

- **The agent (the person who carries out the action) is introduced with the preposition by and is mentioned only when the identity of the agent is important or needs to be stated.**

  e.g. *Australia* ***was discovered by Captain Cook.*** *(by Captain Cook - The identity of the agent is important.)*

- **The agent is not mentioned when:**

  **a) it is unknown.**

*Jim's car* ***was stolen*** *last night. (We don't know who stole Jim's car.)*

  **b) it is unimportant.**

*Olive oil* ***is produced*** *in Mediterranean countries. (The agent is unimportant.)*

  **c) it is obvious from the context.**

*The bank robbers* ***are being chased****. (It is obvious that the police are chasing them.)*

# Turning the active into the passive

**To turn a sentence from the active into the passive:**

a) **The object of the active sentence becomes the subject in the passive sentence.**

b) **The active verb changes into a passive form.**

c) **The subject of the active sentence becomes the agent.**

| | subject | verb | object |
|---|---|---|---|
| active | Kim | baked | a cake. |

| | subject | verb | agent |
|---|---|---|---|
| passive | A cake | was baked | by Kim. |

**Study the following table:**

| | active | passive |
|---|---|---|
| **present simple** | She **types** the letters. | The letters **are typed**. |
| **present continuous** | She **is typing** the letters. | The letters **are being typed**. |
| **past simple** | She **typed** the letters. | The letters **were typed**. |
| **past continuous** | She **was typing the letters.** | The letters **were being typed**. |
| **present perfect simple** | She **has typed** the letters. | The letters **have been typed**. |
| **past perfect simple** | She **had typed** the letters. | The letters **had been typed**. |
| **future simple** | She **will type** the letters. | The letters **will be typed**. |
| **infinitive** | She has **to type** the letters. | The letters have **to be typed**. |
| **modals** (modal + be + pp) | She **may type** the letters. | The letters **may be typed**. |

- **Only the verbs that take an object can be turned into the passive.** *e.g. Susan **cleans the silver. The silver is cleaned** by Susan. **But:** It **is snowing** today. (This sentence cannot be turned into the passive because the verb does not take an object.)*
- **When the subject of the active sentence is one of the following words: people, one, someone/somebody, they, he, etc., the agent is often omitted in the passive sentence.**
  *e.g. **People** watch TV all over the world. TV is watched all over the world (by people).*
- **Object pronouns (me, you, him, etc.) become subject pronouns (I, you, he, etc.) in the passive.**
  *e.g. He gave this book to **me**. **I** was given this book.*
- **When the verb of the active sentence is followed by a preposition, the preposition is kept in the passive sentence as well.** *e.g. Burglars **broke into** our house last night. Our house **was broken into** last night.*

**6** **Rewrite the sentences in the passive.**

1 The pop star sang the song.
*The song was sung by the pop star.*

2 The chef hasn't made dinner.
.....

3 An explorer has found a dinosaur egg.
.....

4 Mrs Gates will look after the baby.
.....

5 They won't take him home after the party.
.....

6 Someone left the front door open.
.....

7 Jenny didn't break the window.
.....

8 Someone is using the computer.
.....

9 His brother taught him to drive.
.....

10 Many people speak English.
.....

11 The doctor had already told him to go on a diet.
.....

12 The author is writing a new book.
.....

## 7 Turn the following questions into the *passive*.

1 Do they make bread in this factory?
*Is bread made in this factory?*
2 Will Susan decorate the bedroom tomorrow?
.....
3 Did they find the ring in the garden?
.....
4 Is Tom drawing the picture?
.....
5 Has Simon sent the invitations yet?
.....
6 Had Paul repaired the door before he left for work?
.....

**Note:**
**When we want to find out who or what did something, then the passive is formed as follows: Who/What ... by?**
*e.g.* ***Who*** *was America discovered* ***by****?*

## 8 Write questions in the passive to which the words in bold are the answers, as in the examples.

1 **Captain Cook** discovered Australia.
*Who was Australia discovered by?*
2 **A dog** was chasing Paul.
*What was Paul being chased by?*
3 **Simon** is going to organise the party.
.....
4 **A bee** stung him.
.....
5 **Fiona** cooked this delicious turkey.
.....
6 **An international company** publishes these books.
.....
7 **A bomb** killed the soldier.
.....

**With verbs which take two objects, such as ask, bring, tell, send, show, teach, promise, offer, give, pay, lend, etc., we can form the passive in two ways.**
***Active:*** *Someone sent* ***Helen some flowers****.*
***Passive:*** *a)* ***Helen was sent*** *some flowers.*
*b)* ***Some flowers were sent*** *to Helen.*
**The first way is used more often because we are more interested in the person (Helen) than the thing (some flowers).**

## 9 Rewrite the sentences in the *passive* in both ways, as in the example.

1 His father gave Billy a new bicycle.
*a) Billy was given a new bicycle by his father.*
*b) A new bicycle was given to Billy by his father.*
2 Fred has offered Mary a watch.
a) .....
b) .....
3 Lisa is sending Tim an invitation.
a) .....
b) .....
4 She brought me some oranges.
a) .....
b) .....
5 Sonia is going to lend me some money.
a) .....
b) .....
6 Jack will show me the new car.
a) .....
b) .....
7 They paid him a lot of money for the job.
a) .....
b) .....

## 10 Rewrite the sentences in the *passive*.

1 They will not deliver the new sofa on Friday.
*The new sofa will not be delivered on Friday.*
2 You can use this saucepan for cooking spaghetti.
.....
3 I have to finish my homework tonight.
.....
4 You must tidy your bedroom.
.....
5 You ought to put these clothes away.
.....
6 The boss gave the secretary some letters to type.
.....
7 We should eat this cake immediately.
.....
8 Sally sent Peter a birthday card.
.....
9 You must take the dog for a walk.
.....
10 The cat is not chasing the mouse.
.....
11 Do they produce oil in Spain?
.....
12 Did a dog bite him?
.....
13 Edward has not recorded a new song.
.....

## 11 Rewrite the following passage in the *passive*.

Somebody sent me a bunch of flowers. The man from the flower shop delivered them to my house. He told me that they were a present. A young man had ordered them. He had put no card in the flowers. I still don't know who sent them.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

## 12 Rewrite the following passage in the *passive*.

Someone started a fire in the Courtney National Park early yesterday morning. They had used a match and some petrol to start the fire. The fire had burnt a lot of trees before someone called the fire brigade. The police have arrested a man. They are still questioning him.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

### IN OTHER WORDS

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 A famous artist will paint his portrait.
**be** His portrait **will be painted by** a famous artist.

2 You must post these letters as soon as possible.
**must** These letters **must be posted** as soon as possible.

3 Somebody stole my wallet yesterday.
**was** My wallet **was stolen** yesterday.

## 13 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

1 They built the house last year.
**was** The house ...*was built*... last year.

2 They are planting trees in the garden.
**being** Trees ..... in the garden.

3 The dog was chasing the cat around the house.
**was** The cat ..... around the house by the dog.

4 They haven't cleaned the floor yet.
**been** The floor ..... yet.

5 They had eaten all the food by the time I got there.
**had** All the food ..... by the time I got there.

6 You must finish the project by Wednesday afternoon.
**be** The project ..... by Wednesday afternoon.

7 Mr Brown sent us a wedding invitation.
**was** A wedding invitation ..... to us by Mr Brown.

8 They should inform the citizens as soon as possible.
**should** The citizens ..... as soon as possible.

## 14 Fill in the *active* or *passive* form of the verbs in brackets.

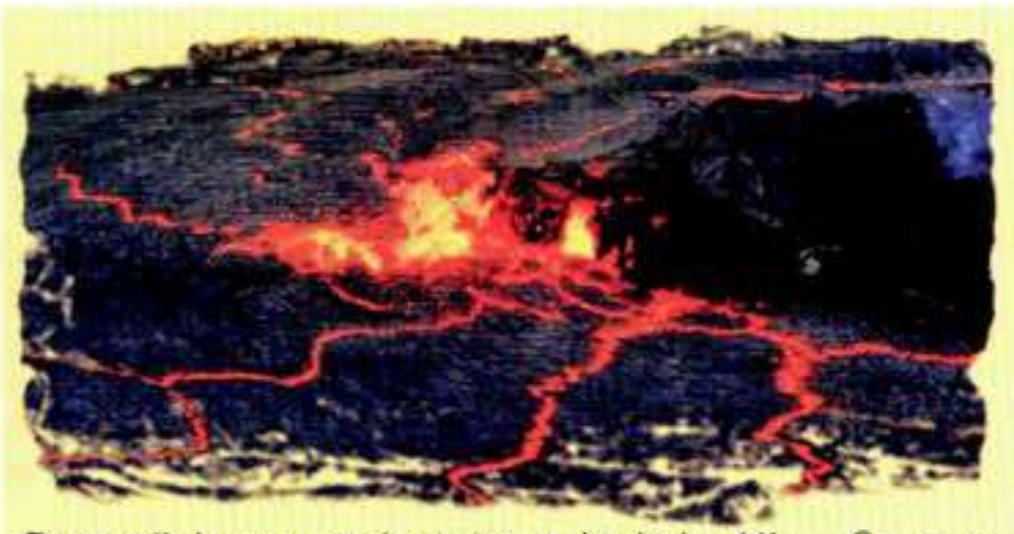
Mrs Wilson is a rich young lady. She **(1)** ...*lives*... (live) in a big house on the outskirts of the city with her husband and her two dogs. Every day, Mrs Wilson **(2)** ..... ..... (take) into the city centre. Her car **(3)** ..... (drive) by her chauffeur. She then **(4)** ..... (go) shopping in her favourite shops. Her bags **(5)** ..... ..... (carry) by the chauffeur. Mrs Wilson **(6)** ..... (buy) lots of things every week. She **(7)** ..... (need) lots of clothes because she goes to lots of parties. In fact, this week she **(8)** ..... (invite) to a big birthday party which **(9)** ..... (hold) in a large mansion in the country. All of her friends will be there, so Mrs Wilson **(10)** ..... ..... (look forward) to it very much.

**15** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 The dishes has been washed.
2 The letters are being opened every morning in the office.
3 Your homework must finished by Monday.
4 The woman seen taking the children to school.
5 Mike has been tell about the new job.
6 The cars stole from the car park.
7 The house is been decorated recently.
8 The centre will visit by the King next month.

# Revision Box

**16** **Choose the correct answer.**



Pompeii is an ancient town in Italy **(1)** ...C... was destroyed when a volcano **(2)** ..... in 79 AD. The lava and ash from the eruption of Mount Vesuvius buried the town along with everything and everyone in it. Most of the site **(3)** ..... studied by archaeologists **(4)** ..... have uncovered many objects among the ruins. The town is now a popular tourist attraction and is visited **(5)** ..... thousands of people each year. They **(6)** ..... walk along the streets which **(7)** ..... once a part of the busy market town and **(8)** ..... now an important part of history.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | A where | B who | C which |
| 2 | A erupted | B has erupted | C had erupted |
| 3 | A has been | B was being | C had been |
| 4 | A whose | B they | C who |
| 5 | A by | B from | C with |
| 6 | A could | B can | C are able |
| 7 | A was | B have been | C were |
| 8 | A were | B are | C has been |

## ORAL Activity

**Max Hunter has inherited an old factory and he has decided to turn it into a club. Look at the pictures and the notes below, then make sentences in the passive, as in the example.**

*the walls/painted, the windows/replaced, garden lights/put in, the roof/repaired, trees/planted, the sign/put up, the door/fixed*

*e.g. The walls have been painted.*

## WRITING Activity

**Imagine you are Max Hunter. Look at your notes from the Oral Activity and write a letter to your friend telling him about the changes to the factory.**

*Dear Harry,*

*I have some exciting news. I've recently inherited an old factory and I've decided to turn it into a club.*

*So far, the walls have been painted* .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# UNIT 14
# Reported Speech

Diana had a meeting yesterday.

Today, Diana met Alison. **Alison asked her what they had said. Diana told her that they would use her plans.**

- **Direct Speech is the exact words someone said. We use quotation marks (' ') in direct speech.**
  *e.g. '**I'm very tired**,' Mary said.*
- **Reported Speech is the exact meaning of what someone said, but not the exact words. We do not use quotation marks in reported speech. We can either use the word that after the introductory verb or we can omit it.** *e.g. Mary said (that) **she was very tired**.*

## Say - Tell

**We use the verb say:**

- **both in direct and reported speech without the preposition to when it is not followed by the person being spoken to.**
  *e.g. Jerry **said**, 'I need some money.' Jerry **said** (that) he needed some money.*
- **both in direct and reported speech with the preposition to when it is followed by the person being spoken to.**
  *e.g. Jerry **said to me**, 'I need some money.' Jerry **said to me** (that) he needed some money.*
- **in expressions such as:** say good morning/afternoon, etc., say something, say one's prayers, say so, etc.

**We use the verb tell without the preposition to:**

- **both in direct and reported speech when it is followed by the person we are talking to.**
  *e.g. Jerry **told me**, 'I need some money.' Jerry **told me** (that) he needed some money. (NOT: ~~Jerry told to me that he...~~)*
- **in expressions such as:** tell the truth, tell a lie, tell a secret, tell a story, tell the time, tell the difference, tell sb one's name, tell sb the way, tell one from another, etc.

**1** **Fill in the gaps with *say* or *tell* in the correct tense.**

**A** Richard **(1)** ...*told*... Sarah that he was having a party on Saturday night. He **(2)** ..... that it would start early but it would finish quite late. He **(3)** ..... her to bring her sister along as well. Sarah **(4)** ..... she was looking forward to going. Richard **(5)** ..... her he would probably call again on Friday to **(6)** ..... her the way to his house.

**B** 'What shall we do?' asked Carrie. 'It's raining outside, so let's watch television,' I **(1)** ..... . I turned on the television and Carrie **(2)** ..... to me, 'Look! That's my favourite programme. Let's watch it.' 'To **(3)** ..... you the truth, I don't like it,' I **(4)** ..... .

**C** 'Good morning, Mr Pearson,' **(1)** ..... Bella. 'Good morning, Bella,' he replied. 'I've got lots of letters for you to type today,' he **(2)** ..... to her. 'Alright,' Bella **(3)** ..... . 'I'll type them after I finish writing this report for you.'

# Reported Statements

Yesterday, the Johnsons and the Smiths had a barbecue together. What did Laura say to Jim? What did Ed say to Celia?

*Laura told Jim that the hot dogs **were** delicious and that he **was** a great cook. Ed told Celia that he **was having** a great time and that he really **liked** their new house.*

- **When we report statements (that is, a positive or negative sentence), we use the verbs 'say' or 'tell' to introduce the statement. Pronouns and possessive adjectives change according to the meaning.**
  *e.g. Sophie said, 'I bought a new camera yesterday.'*
  *Sophie said (that)* ***she*** *had bought a new camera the day before.*

- **When the introductory verb is in the past simple, the verb tenses change as follows:**

| Direct Speech | Reported Speech |
|---|---|
| **Present Simple**<br>*'I want to find a better job,' he said.* | **Past Simple**<br>*He said he wanted to find a better job.* |
| **Present Continuous**<br>*'They're playing table tennis,' he said.* | **Past Continuous**<br>*He said they were playing table tennis.* |
| **Present Perfect**<br>*'I've ordered a new fridge,' she said.* | **Past Perfect**<br>*She said she had ordered a new fridge.* |
| **Past Simple**<br>*'Jack left the country,' they said.* | **Past Perfect**<br>*They said Jack had left the country.* |
| **Future (will)**<br>*'I'll send you a letter,' he said.* | **Conditional (would)**<br>*He said he would send me a letter.* |

- **Certain words and time expressions change as follows:**

| Direct Speech | Reported Speech |
|---|---|
| tonight, today, this week/month/year, etc. | **that night, that day, that week/month/year, etc.** |
| now | **then, at that time, at once, immediately** |
| yesterday, last night/week/month/year, etc. | **the day before/the previous day, the previous night/week/month/year, etc., the night/week/month/year, etc. before** |
| tomorrow, next week/month/year, etc. | **the day after/the following /next day, the next/following week/month/year, etc.** |
| two days/months/years, etc. ago | **two days/months/years etc. before** |
| this, these | **that, those/the/some** |
| here | **there** |
| come | **go** |

- **When the introductory verb is in the present, future or present perfect simple or when the sentence expresses something which is always true (general truth), there are no changes in the verb tenses in reported speech.**

**Direct speech:** She says, 'I don't like him.' | 'It **is** cold in the Arctic,' said the teacher.
**Reported speech:** She **says** (that) she **doesn't like** him. | The teacher said (that) it **is** cold in the Arctic.

- **The past continuous, past perfect simple and past perfect continuous do not change in reported speech.**

**Direct speech:** '**I was watching** TV while she **was cooking,**' he said.
**Reported speech:** He said (that) he **was watching TV** while she **was cooking**.

- **Certain modal verbs do not change in reported speech. These are would, could, might, should and ought to.**

**Direct speech:** '**I could** run fast when I was young,' Tom said.
**Reported speech:** Tom said (that) he **could** run fast when he was young.

## 2 Fill in the gaps with the correct *pronouns or possessive adjectives.*

1 Mary said, 'I want to go out with my friends.'
Mary said (that) ...*she*... wanted to go out with ...*her*... friends.
2 Tom said, 'I have lost my keys.'
Tom said (that) ..... had lost ..... keys.
3 Bob and Marie said, 'We are taking our dog for a walk.'
Bob and Marie said (that) ..... were taking ..... dog for a walk.
4 Andrew said, 'My sister is coming to visit me next week.'
Andrew said (that) ..... sister was going to visit ..... the following week.
5 Mr Jones said, 'I need to buy a present for my wife.'
Mr Jones said (that) ..... needed to buy a present for ..... wife.
6 Father said, 'I want you to wash my car for me.'
Father said (that) ..... wanted ..... to wash ..... car for ..... .

## 3 Turn from *direct* into *reported speech.*

1 'I can't find my bag,' she said.
*She said (that) she couldn't find her bag.*
2 'They are working in the garden,' he said.
.....
3 'We got married six months ago,' she said to us.
.....
4 'I'll go shopping tomorrow,' he said.
.....
5 'I bought a new car last week,' he said.
.....
6 'We aren't doing anything next week,' they said.
.....
7 'I can't go out tonight,' she said to me.
.....
8 'I forgot to pay the bill,' he said.
.....
9 'We've brought you a present,' she said to me.
.....
10 'I'll phone you tomorrow,' she said to Peter.
.....

## 4 In which of the following sentences do the tenses not change? Why? Then, turn the following statements from *direct* into *reported speech.*

1 'I'll paint the house next week,' he says.
*Tenses do not change because the introductory verb is in the present simple. He says (that) he will paint the house .*
2 'I've put the washing in the washing-machine,' Rose said.
.....
3 'A giraffe is bigger than a mouse,' he said.
.....
4 'We haven't seen Tom for two weeks,' she said.
.....
5 'I haven't phoned my uncle since last month,' she says.
.....
6 'Birds can fly,' the student said.
.....
7 'He's studying for an exam now,' she said.
.....
8 'Leaves fall from the trees in autumn,' he said.
.....
9 'We visited the circus last weekend,' they said.
.....
10 'She dropped the vase on the floor,' Tony said.
.....
11 'He took the money to the bank this morning,' she said.
.....
12 'The Earth moves round the sun,' the teacher said.
.....

# Reported Questions

Yesterday, Mary went to the doctor's.

*The doctor* ***asked*** *Mary* ***how often*** *she* ***exercised****.*
*She also asked her* ***if/whether*** *she* ***drank*** *milk.*

- **We introduce reported questions with ask or want to know.**
  **In reported questions, the verb is in the affirmative and the question mark is omitted. Verb tenses, pronouns and time expressions change as in statements.**
  *e.g. '**Are** you **working tomorrow morning**?' Paul asked her.*
  *Paul asked her if **she was working the next morning**.*

- **When the direct question begins with a question word (who, where, how, when, why, what, etc.), then the reported question begins with the same question word.**
  *e.g. '**Why** are you late?' Mother asked me.*
  *Mother asked me **why** I was late.*

- **When the direct question begins with an auxiliary (is, do, have, etc.) or a modal verb (can, may, etc.), then the reported question begins with if or whether.**
  *e.g. '**Can** you speak French?' they asked me.*
  *They asked me **if/whether** I could speak French.*

**5** **Turn the questions from *direct* into *reported speech*.**

1 'How old are you?' he asked me.
*He asked me how old I was.*
2 'When will you call me?' she asked George.
.....
3 She asked, 'Can you play the piano?'
.....
4 He asked, 'Who's there?'
.....
5 'Do you like fish?' she asked Jonathan.
.....
6 'What have you done today?' Mother asked.
.....
7 Jim asked, 'Did you go to work yesterday?'
.....
8 'How did you get here?' he asked.
.....
9 'Have you seen my blue jacket anywhere?' she asked.
.....
10 He asked, 'Will you take me to work tomorrow?'
.....
11 She asked, 'Where have you been?'
.....
12 She asked, 'Will they visit us in the summer?'
.....

**6** ***There has been a fire in a busy area of your town.*** **Read the reporter's questions and turn them into *reported speech*.**

1 'How did the fire start?'
The reporter asked *how the fire had started.*
2 'Who called the fire brigade?'
The reporter wanted to know .....
3 'Did you ask people to leave the building?'
The reporter asked .....
4 'Was anybody injured?'
The reporter wanted to know .....
5 'How many fire-fighters are here now?'
The reporter asked .....
6 'Have any of the houses been damaged?'
The reporter wanted to know .....

# Reported Commands/ Requests/Suggestions

*The teacher **suggested making** some cards.*
*She **asked Ruth to sit** down.*
*She **told the children to be** careful with the glue.*
*She also **told them not to make** a mess.*

- **To report commands or instructions we use the verbs order or tell + sb + (not) to - infinitive.**
  *e.g. 'Give me your money!' he said to me.*
  *He **ordered me to give** him my money.*
  *'Don't shoot!' he said to them.*
  *He **ordered them not to shoot**.*
  *'Cut the paper into two pieces,' she said to me.*
  *She **told me to cut** the paper into two pieces.*
- **To report requests, we use the verbs ask or beg + sb + (not) to - infinitive. The sentence in direct speech usually contains the word 'please'.**
  *e.g. 'Listen to me, please,' Laura said to Bob.*
  *Laura **asked Bob to listen** to her.*
  *'Please, please don't tell anyone I'm here,' she said to him.*
  *She **begged him not to tell** anyone (that) she was there.*
- **To report suggestions, we use the verb suggest + -ing form.**
  *e.g. 'Let's play a game,' Father said to us.*
  *'We can/could play a game,' Father said to us.*
  *'Shall we play a game?' Father said to us.*
  *'How about playing a game?' Father said to us.*
  *Father **suggested playing** a game.*

**7** **Fill in the gaps with the verbs in the list in the correct form.**

*order, tell, ask, beg, suggest*

1 'Let's call Brian,' Susan said to me.
Susan ...*suggested*... calling Brian.
2 'Don't make any noise,' Mother said to us.
Mother ..... us not to make any noise.
3 'Please stay a little longer,' Kate said to her sister.
Kate ..... her sister to stay a little longer.
4 'Fire!' the General said to the soldiers.
The General ..... the soldiers to fire.
5 'Please, please forgive me,' she said to him.
She ..... him to forgive her.

**8** **Turn the following sentences into *reported speech*.**

1 Be careful of the glass! *The fire-fighter told them to be careful of the glass.*
2 Stand back! .....
3 Bring the light nearer! .....
4 Pass me an axe! .....
5 Go to the other side of the plane! .....

**9** **Turn from *direct* into *reported* speech.**

1 Mary said to me, 'Come with me, please.'
*Mary asked me to go with her.*
2 The shop assistant said to the child, 'Don't touch anything.'
.....
3 The secretary said to me, 'Wait here, please.'
.....
4 She said, 'Shall we go swimming?'
.....
5 The park keeper said to them, 'Don't walk on the grass.'
.....
6 He said to them, 'Don't stay out late tonight.'
.....
7 Annie said to Barry, 'Please, please help me.'
.....

# Introductory Verbs

**Apart from 'say' and 'tell', there are other introductory verbs which can be used in reported speech. These verbs give the meaning of the direct sentence more accurately and are followed by either the to - infinitive or the '-ing form'. Study the table:**

| Introductory Verb | Direct Speech | Reported Speech |
|---|---|---|
| promise, refuse, offer + to - inf | 'I'll be home early.' | He **promised to be** home early. |
| | 'No, I won't wash the dishes.' | He **refused to wash** the dishes. |
| | 'Can I get you an aspirin?' | He **offered to get** me an aspirin. |
| advise, ask, beg, order, warn + sb + to - inf | 'You should stay in bed.' | He **advised me to stay** in bed. |
| | 'Please post this letter.' | He **asked me to post** the letter. |
| | 'Please, please listen to me.' | He **begged her to listen** to him. |
| | 'Don't move!' | He **ordered me not to move**. |
| | 'Don't go near the fire.' | He **warned me not to go** near the fire. |
| suggest + -ing form | 'Let's have some tea.' | He **suggested having** some tea. |
| | 'Shall we go to Helen's party?' | He **suggested going** to Helen's party. |

**10** **Choose an introductory verb and turn the following from *direct* into *reported* speech.**

*advised, asked, ordered, warned, promised, begged, offered, refused, suggested*

1 'I think you should eat more vegetables,' my mother said to me.
*My mother advised me to eat more vegetables.*
2 'Please get me a glass of water,' he said to Jill.
.....
3 'No, I won't help you,' she said to Jim.
.....
4 'I'll buy you something nice for your birthday,' her mother said to her.
.....
5 'Don't play near the road because it's dangerous,' he said to us.
.....
6 'Would you like me to do the shopping?' she said.
.....
7 'Please, please don't leave me alone in the dark,' she said to her parents.
.....
8 'How about going to the cinema tonight?' he said.
.....
9 'Go to bed! ... Now!' his father said to him.
.....
10 'Shall we watch a video?' they said.
.....

**11** ***The people in the picture had a meeting yesterday in which they discussed some business matters.* Read their comments and turn them into *reported* speech.**

1 Tom: 'We should advertise on TV.'
*Tom suggested advertising on TV.*
2 Alison: 'I'll help you organise the meeting.'
.....
3 Alex: 'I can give you copies of the plan.'
.....
4 Bob: 'Let's do some research on the subject.'
.....
5 Nick: 'I'll give you all the details next week.'
.....
6 Diana: 'Don't decide until you know the cost.'
.....

# UNIT 14
# Reported Speech

**To turn a sentence from reported into direct speech, we follow the same steps as we do when we turn a sentence from direct into reported speech (see page 93), but in reverse order. We also:**

- **put the sentence in quotation marks.**
- **mention the speaker before or after the direct speech.**
- **put commas before or after the direct speech.**
- **begin the direct speech with a capital letter.**
- **put a question mark and not a comma if the direct speech is a question and the person being spoken to comes after it.**

**reported speech:** Jack told me that he was leaving the next day.
**direct speech:** Jack said to me, 'I'm leaving tomorrow.' **or** 'I'm leaving tomorrow,' Jack said to me.

**reported speech:** The boss asked me if I enjoyed my work.
**direct speech:** 'Do you enjoy your work?' the boss asked me. **or**
The boss asked me, 'Do you enjoy your work?'

## 12 Turn the following sentences from *reported* into *direct speech*.

1 Trevor asked me if I had posted the letter.
*'Did you post the letter?' Trevor asked me.*
2 Sarah told me she was looking for a new job.
.....
3 Brian wanted to know what time the train to Leeds left.
.....
4 She said that she didn't like jogging.
.....
5 He said he would be back the following day.
.....
6 He asked how much my new car had cost.
.....
7 I asked Marie if she could do the shopping for me.
.....
8 Jill asked Roy to close the window.
.....

## 13 Turn from *direct* into *reported speech* or vice versa.

1 'I've finished the housework,' she said.
*She said (that) she had finished the housework.*
2 'Why did you do that?' he asked her.
.....
3 Susie told her mother that *Titanic* was the best film she had ever seen.
.....
4 He told them to put the rubbish in the bin.
.....
5 'Please answer the telephone,' he said to her.
.....
6 Alex said that they were going to Hawaii for their honeymoon.
.....
7 'Are you going out on Saturday night?' Ben asked me.
.....
8 Adam said that he had never ridden a horse before.
.....
9 'We'll go to the circus tomorrow,' said Mother.
.....
10 Mr Carter told them to pick up the paper from the floor.
.....
11 Julia begged her parents to let her go to the party.
.....
12 Greg said, 'Let's have a party on my birthday.'
.....

## 14 Turn the underlined sentences from *reported* into *direct speech*.

I met an old friend yesterday. I hadn't seen her for two years. I asked what she had been doing. We decided to go for a drink. We sat in a café for three hours. We talked about many different things. She asked me to give her my phone number and she wrote it down. When we left the café, I told her to call me very soon.

*'What have you been doing?' I asked her.*
.....
.....

**15** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 He asked me where was the post office.
2 She suggested to visit the zoo.
3 Mother said, 'You must always say the truth.'
4 The doctor told me to not exercise a lot.
5 My parents offered giving me a lift to the railway station.
6 Our teacher said to us that the test was quite easy.
7 She asked how could she contact me.
8 He said that Kate had left the last month.
9 The old man told good night and went to bed.
10 Jenny said me, 'I hate Maths.'

# Revision Box

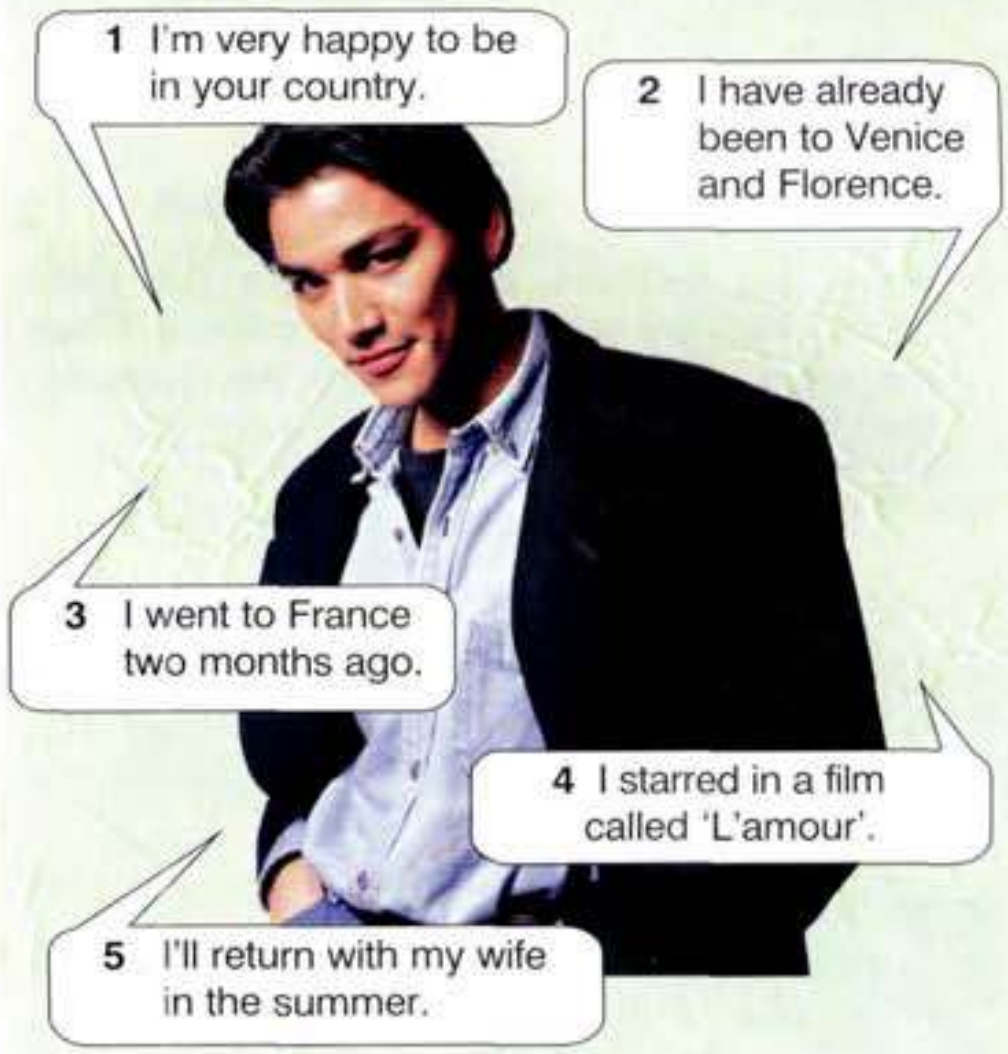
**16** **Underline the correct word(s).**

1 A: Where ***are you going/do you go***?
B: To work.
2 A: ***Did you do/Have you done*** your homework yet?
B: Yes. I ***was doing/did*** it last night.
3 A: Did you paint the house?
B: Yes. I did it all by ***me/myself***.
4 A: Can you get the sugar from the shelf?
B: No, I'm not tall ***too/enough*** to reach it.
5 A: Do you still play tennis?
B: No, I ***used to/didn't use to*** play every week, but I don't any more.
6 A: Do I have to go to the shops today?
B: No, you ***needn't/mustn't***. I'll go instead.
7 A: Why are your clothes all wet?
B: I ***was washing/have been washing*** the dog!
8 A: Have you read this book?
B: Of course. It ***is written/was written*** by my aunt!
9 A: Who's that woman over there?
B: It's the woman ***whose/who's*** son is in my class at school.
10 A: ***Shall/Must*** we go out tonight?
B: Yes. Let's go to the cinema.
A: Okay. I ***have to/will*** meet you there at 8 o'clock.
11 A: I need some paper.
B: There is some in the drawer ***who/which*** is on your right.
12 A: Nicola's hair is short now.
B: Really? It ***used to/didn't use to*** be really long.

## ORAL Activity

**Tim Stevens, the famous actor, gave a press conference yesterday. Lucy Morton, a young reporter, attended the conference. Read what Tim Stevens said. Then, in pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

*SA: What did Tim Stevens say?*
*SB: He said that he was very happy to be in our country.*
*SA: What else did he say?*




## WRITING Activity

**Lucy is writing an article about Tim Stevens for the magazine she works for. Complete the article using the information from the Oral Activity.**

**FAMOUS ACTOR VISITS OUR COUNTRY**

Tim Stevens, who I'm sure all of you know, was here for a short visit. I was lucky enough to attend the press conference he gave yesterday. This is what Mr Stevens told the reporters. He said that he was very happy to be in our country. He also said .....
.....
.....
.....

# UNIT 15
# Conditionals - Wishes

## Conditionals

- **There are three types of conditionals. Each type consists of two parts: the if - clause (hypothesis), which begins with the word if, and the main clause, which shows the result of the hypothesis.**

| if - clause (hypothesis) | main clause (result) |
|---|---|
| *If you are late,* | *you will miss the bus.* |

- **When the if-clause comes before the main clause, they are separated with a comma. When the main clause comes before the if-clause, then they are not separated with a comma.**
  *e.g. If Peter has time, he will come to visit us.*
  *Peter will come to visit us if he has time.*

## Type 1 Conditionals

*If Robert **studies** hard, he **will pass** his exams.*

*Water **turns** into ice **if** the temperature **falls** below 0°C.*

*If you **don't understand, look** at the example.*

*If you go to New York, you **can see** the Statue of Liberty.*

- **Type 1 conditionals express a real or very probable situation in the present or future. They are formed as follows:**

| If - clause | Main clause |
|---|---|
| If + present simple | → future simple<br>→ present simple<br>→ imperative<br>→ can/must/may, etc. + +bare infinitive |

- **We can use unless instead of if...not in the if - clause. The verb is always in the affirmative after unless.**
  *e.g. **If** you **don't hurry**, we'll be late for school.*
  ***Unless** you **hurry**, we'll be late for school.*
  *(NOT: ~~Unless you don't hurry~~ ...)*

**1** **Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. If you go to London, you can see Big Ben.*

## 2 Match column A with column B in order to make correct type 1 conditional sentences, as in the example.

e.g. *If you are tired, go to bed.*

| Column A | Column B |
|---|---|
| 1 tired | a make a sandwich |
| 2 hungry | b get something to drink |
| 3 bored | c go to bed |
| 4 thirsty | d take one of these pills |
| 5 seasick | e read a good book |

## 3 Fill in *unless* or *if*.

1 We won't go on holiday ...*unless*... we can take our dog with us.
2 ..... we don't buy it now, we'll have to get it later.
3 ..... you go to bed late, you'll be tired in the morning.
4 I can't finish my homework ..... you help me.
5 We'll have a picnic on Saturday ..... the weather is bad.
6 You'll catch a cold ..... you wear your coat.
7 I'll open the window ..... I get too hot.

## 4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Add a comma where necessary.

1 If you ...*have*... (have) toothache, go to the dentist.
2 If Peter ..... (do) lots of exercise he'll be fit and healthy.
3 Please call me if you ..... (need) any help.
4 ..... Sarah ..... (be) angry if we don't go to her party?
5 Cathy will be able to go on holiday if she ..... (save) enough money.
6 Unless it ..... (rain) we'll go for a walk.
7 If you ..... (work) hard you may be promoted.
8 ..... you ..... (give) me a call if you have time tomorrow?
9 If you don't do your homework I ..... (not/let) you watch TV.
10 Mary won't go to Australia unless I ..... (pay) for her tickets.
11 If he ..... (arrive) on time we'll have dinner before we go out.

## 5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1 A: I'd like a cup of coffee.
B: Well, if you ...*hold*... (hold) the baby for five minutes, I ..... (make) it for you.
2 A: I must go to the bank.
B: If you ..... (leave) now, you ..... (get) there before it closes.
3 A: I can't do everything myself!
B: Well, if you ..... (wash) the dishes, I ..... (cook) the meal.
4 A: Are you going on holiday this year?
B: Yes, I ..... (go) to Spain for two weeks if I ..... (have) some time off work.
5 A: I want to cook something special tonight.
B: Great, if I ..... (finish) work early, I ..... (give) you a hand.
6 A: Could I have a chocolate biscuit, please?
B: Yes, if you ..... (look) in the cupboard, you ..... (find) some cakes as well.

## 6 Rewrite the sentences, as in the examples.

1 If Harry doesn't phone, we'll leave without him.
*Unless Harry phones, we'll leave without him.*
2 Unless Sheila returns the money she owes me, I won't be able to pay my rent.
*If Sheila doesn't return the money she owes me, I won't be able to pay my rent.*
3 Sarah will be disappointed if you don't send her a birthday card.
.....
4 Maria won't go to the theatre if Peter doesn't go with her.
.....
5 If you don't pay the electricity bill, it will be cut off.
.....
6 Unless Kate comes home soon, her parents will call the police.
.....
7 If the children don't behave themselves, they won't go to the zoo.
.....
8 Unless my mother offers to help me, I won't have time to make all the preparations.
.....
9 Unless you tidy your room, I won't take you to the party.
.....
10 If Dennis doesn't write soon, I will be very upset.
.....

## Type 2 Conditionals

***If I had** a lot of money, I **would buy** a big house and **I'd go** on a cruise round the world.*

- **Type 2 conditionals express an imaginary or improbable situation which is unlikely to happen in the present or future.**
  **They are formed as follows:**

| If - clause | Main clause |
|---|---|
| If + past simple | → would/could/might + + bare infinitive |

*e.g. **If I had** the time, I **would take up** a sport. (I don't have the time now, so it is unlikely that I will take up a sport. - improbable situation)*

- **We can use were instead of was for all persons.**
  *e.g. If **Peter was/were** here, he would tell us what to do.*

- **We use If I were you ... when we want to give advice.**
  *e.g. **If I were** you, **I'd talk** to him about my problem.*

**7** **Choose one of the prompts from the list to say what you would do in each of the situations below.**

*order a pizza, complain to the manager, light some candles, go to hospital, call the police, stay in bed*

1 You see someone robbing a bank.
*If I saw someone robbing a bank, I would call the police.*
2 A shop assistant is rude to you.
3 You fall over and break your arm.
4 You burn your dinner.
5 There is a power cut in your house.
6 You catch a bad cold.

**8** **Look at the pictures and the prompts. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

e.g. SA: *Shall I paint the fence red or green?*
SB: *If I were you, I'd paint it red.*

**9** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense to make correct type 2 conditional sentences.**

1 If I ...*were*... (be) you, I ...*would study*... (study) for the exams.
2 If we ..... (have) a car, we ..... (go) for a drive in the country.
3 Kim ..... (buy) some new clothes if she ..... (have) enough money.
4 If cameras ..... (not/cost) so much, we ..... (buy) one.
5 John ..... (lend) you some money if you ..... (ask) him.
6 He ..... (open) the door if he ..... (have) the key.
7 We ..... (paint) the house if we ..... (have) the time.
8 If she ..... (get) good grades, she ..... (go) to university.
9 If I ..... (be) rich, I ..... (never/ work) again.
10 Helen ..... (post) the letters if she ..... (have) some stamps.

# Type 3 Conditionals

Jack missed the bus yesterday, so he was late for work.

*If Jack **hadn't missed** the bus, he **wouldn't have been** late for work yesterday.*

**Type 3 conditionals express imaginary situations in the past; that is, they refer to past situations that did not happen.**
**They are formed as follows:**

| If - clause | Main clause |
|---|---|
| If + past perfect | → would/could/might + + have + past participle |

*e.g. If she **had called** earlier, I **would have told** her about the meeting. (She didn't call earlier, so I didn't tell her about the meeting.)*

**10** ***Richard Brooks was very upset yesterday because he missed an important meeting.* Look at the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. If the airline hadn't been on strike, his flight wouldn't have been delayed. If his flight hadn't been delayed, ...*

the airline / not be / on strike →
his flight / not be / delayed →
he / arrive / in New York / on time →
he / attend / the meeting →
he / sign / the contract →
his boss / be / pleased with him →
she / give / him / a promotion

**11** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense to make correct *type 3 conditional* sentences.**

1 If you ...*hadn't been*... (not/be) in a hurry, you ...*wouldn't/might not have forgotten*... (not/forget) your keys.
2 If he ..... (remember) earlier, he ..... (send) her a birthday card.
3 If you ..... (not/be) ill, you ..... (go) to the party.
4 Jason ..... (not/break) his arm if he ..... (be) more careful.
5 Helen ..... (get) wet if she ..... (not/take) her umbrella.
6 If I ..... (do) my homework, my teacher ..... (not/shout) at me.
7 You ..... (pass) the test if you ..... (study) more.
8 If she ..... (close) the gate, the rabbit ..... (not/run away).
9 She ..... (lose) her keys if I ..... (not/pick) them up.
10 If he ..... (save) some money, he ..... (be able) to go on holiday.

**12** **Read the story below and *write type 3 conditional* sentences, as in the example.**

Ben offered to help his neighbour fix the roof so he climbed up the ladder. He fell off the ladder and broke his leg. He went to hospital. He met Linda there. They fell in love and got married six months later.

1 *If Ben hadn't offered to help his neighbour fix the roof, he wouldn't have climbed up the ladder.*
2 *If he hadn't climbed up the ladder,* .....
.....
3 .....
.....
4 .....
.....
5 .....
.....
6 .....
.....
7 .....
.....

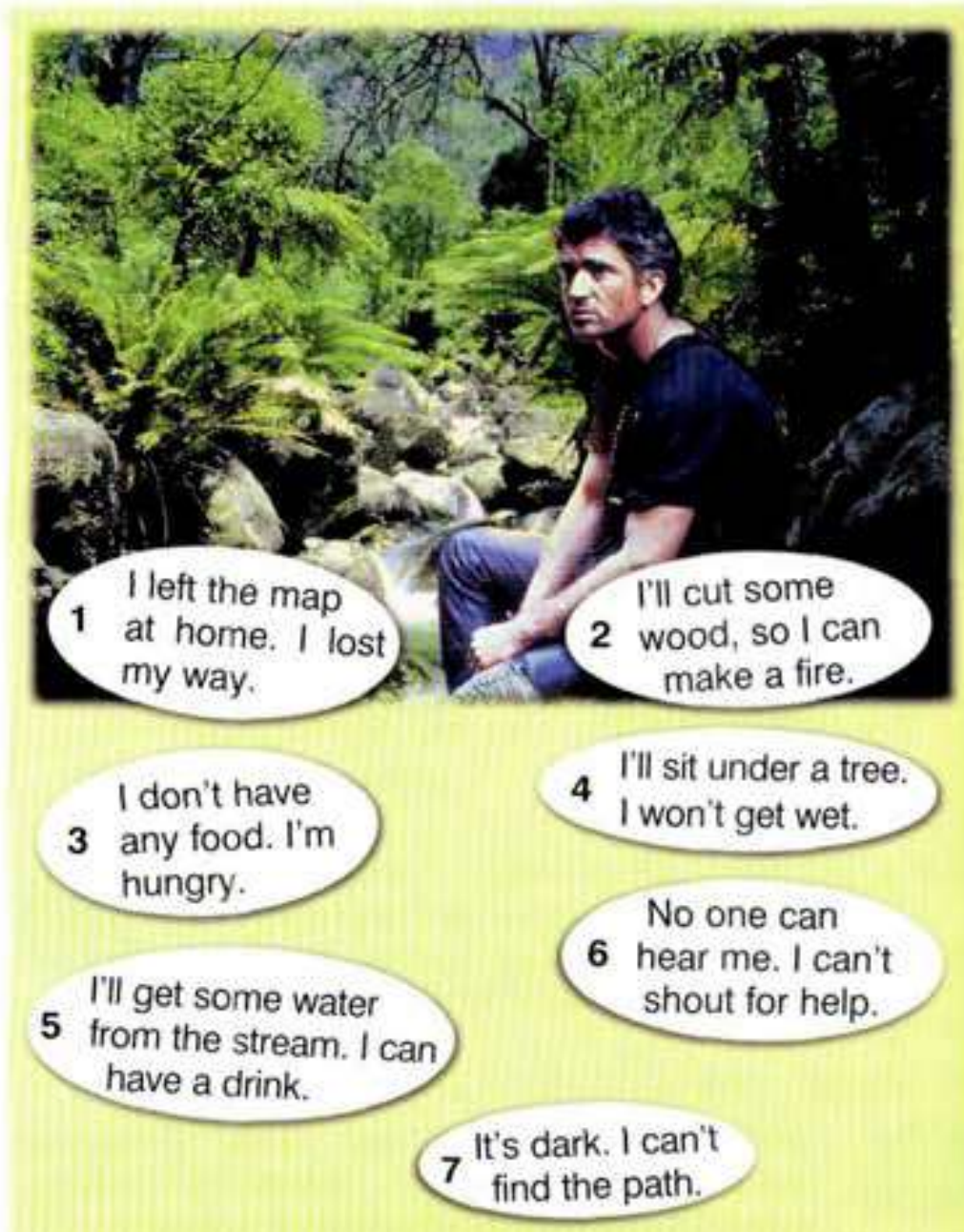
## 13 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1 A: Mum, Dad shouted at me.
B: Well, if you ...*hadn't been*... (not/be) naughty, he ...*wouldn't have shouted*... (not/shout) at you.
2 A: I don't know what to do about my problem.
B: If I ..... (be) you, I ..... (talk) to my boss.
3 A: If I ..... (win) lots of money, I ..... (buy) a new house.
B: That's a nice idea. I ..... (buy) a new car.
4 A: I failed my exam today.
B: Well, if you ..... (study) harder, you ..... (not/fail).
5 A: I've got terrible toothache.
B: If I ..... (be) you, I ..... (go) to the dentist's.
6 A: I'm sorry.
B: What for?
A: If I ..... (not/leave) the door open, the puppy ..... (not/escape).
7 A: Why are you upset?
B: Because it's all my fault. If I ..... (not/be) late, we ..... (not/miss) the bus.
8 A: Where ..... (you/go) if you ..... (can) travel anywhere in the world?
B: If I ..... (can), I ..... (go) to America.
9 A: I've lost my bag with my purse and my keys inside.
B: Well, if I ..... (be) you, I ..... ..... (report) it to the police.
10 A: Ouch! I dropped a glass and cut my finger.
B: Well, if you ..... (be) careful, you ..... (not/cut) yourself.

## 14 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1 If you ...*had looked*... (look) both ways before crossing the street, you wouldn't have been knocked down.
2 If I ..... (be) you, I would phone my mother tonight.
3 If he hadn't stopped the car, he ..... (have) an accident.
4 I ..... (give) some money to charity if I won a competition.
5 Unless we ..... (leave) now, we'll be late.
6 Your friend wouldn't have phoned if you ..... ..... (not/meet) her in the street.
7 If I hadn't woken up early, I ..... (be) late for work.
8 If I ..... (have) more time, I would tidy the garden.
9 If John ..... (phone), can you take a message?
10 If I were you, I ..... (get) someone to help me.

## 15 *Henry is lost in the forest and he's thinking.* Use his thoughts to write conditional sentences, as in the example. Then, state the type of conditional (1, 2 or 3).




1 *If I hadn't left the map at home, I wouldn't have lost my way. (3)*
2 .....
.....
3 .....
.....
4 .....
.....
5 .....
.....
6 .....
.....
7 .....
.....

## Wishes

*I* ***wish*** *I* ***could find*** *a job.*

*I* ***wish*** *I* ***hadn't parked*** *my car here.*

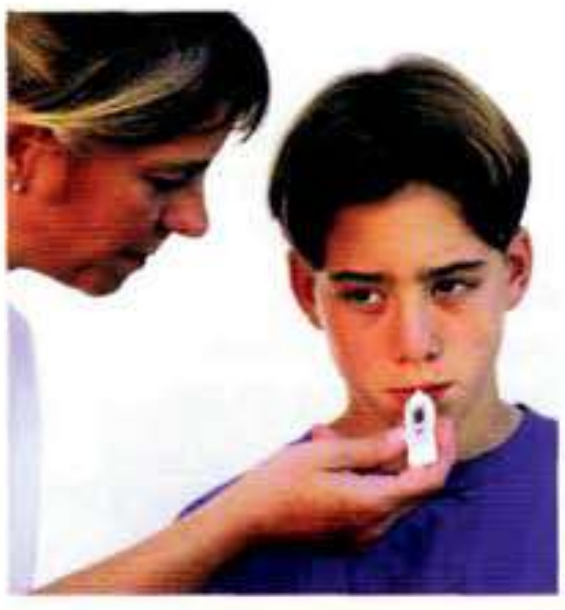
*I* ***wish*** *my son* ***would stop*** *interrupting me.*

- **We use the verb wish and the expression if only to express a wish. If only is more emphatic than I wish.**
- **We use wish/if only + past simple for the present when we want to say that we would like something to be different.**
  *e.g. I* ***wish/If only I had*** *a lot of money. (But I don't have a lot of money.)*
- **We use wish/if only + past perfect to expess regret that something happened or did not happen in the past.**
  *e.g. I* ***wish I had come*** *to your party last night. (But I didn't come to your party.)*
  ***If only I had listened*** *to your advice. (But I didn't listen to your advice.)*
- **We use wish/if only + would for a polite imperative.** *e.g. I* ***wish*** *you* ***would put*** *your things away.* **and to express our wish for a change in a situation or someone's behaviour because we are annoyed by it.**
  *e.g. I* ***wish it would stop*** *raining. (wish for a change in a situation)*
  ***If only*** *Susan* ***would stop*** *playing the music so loud. (wish for a change in someone's behaviour)*

**Note: a) We can use were instead of was in the first and third person singular after wish or if only. However, were is more often used in formal English.**
*e.g. I wish I* ***were*** *taller. (formal English) – I wish I* ***was*** *taller. (everyday English)*
**b) After the subject pronouns I and we, we use could instead of would.**
*e.g. I wish I* ***could*** *help you. (NOT: ~~I wish I would help you.~~)*

**16** ***Tony has got a bad cold. He has to stay in bed.*** **Read what he says and make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. I wish I didn't have a temperature.*



- I've got a temperature.
- I've got a sore throat.
- I want to play outside in the snow, but I can't.
- I have to take medicine.
- I have to stay in bed.
- I can't go to my friend's party tonight.
- None of my friends are here with me.

**17** ***Scott has been on holiday. He had a terrible time.*** **Read what he says and make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. I wish it hadn't rained every day.*

- It rained every day.
- The beach was a long way from the hotel.
- The hotel was dirty.
- My hotel room was small.
- I lost my luggage.
- My wallet was stolen.

# UNIT 15
# Conditionals - Wishes

**18** *Mrs Taylor is annoyed with her neighbours. What does she say?* **Look at the pictures and the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.**

e.g. *I wish Alan wouldn't play his trumpet late at night.*

**19** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

1 A: It's still raining.
B: Yes, I wish it ...*would stop*... (stop). I want to go out for a walk.
2 A: Have you seen that film?
B: No, I wish I ..... (see) it when it was on at the cinema.
3 A: You look tired today.
B: I've been busy. I wish I ..... (do) my Christmas shopping earlier.
4 A: Lisa, I wish you ..... (remember) to take the dog for a walk.
B: Sorry. I'll go now.
5 A: Do you like your job, Doris?
B: Yes, but I wish I ..... (not/have) to travel so far every day.
6 A: Did you have a good holiday?
B: Yes, but I wish I ..... (be) still on holiday now.
7 A: Do you like your new car?
B: Yes, but I wish it ..... (not/cost) so much.
8 A: I hate travelling by bus.
B: So do I. I wish I ..... (can) drive.

**20** **Read the following sentences. What wishes would you make corresponding to the words in bold?**

1 Your car has broken down so **you have to walk to work.**
*I wish I didn't have to walk to work.*
2 You want to bake a cake, but **you can't remember the recipe**.
3 It is raining heavily and **you can't find your umbrella**.
4 **You didn't remember to lock the front door** and thieves broke in.
5 **You are on a diet**, but you want to eat some chocolate.
6 You are having an exam today, but **you haven't studied at all.**
7 You want to go on holiday, but **you haven't got enough money.**

**IN OTHER WORDS**

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 I think Tom should look for a better job.
**would** If I **were Tom, I would look** *for a better job.*
2 Mary regrets shouting at her friend.
**had** Mary **wishes she had not shouted** at her friend.
3 Why don't you stop complaining?
**wish** I **wish you would stop** complaining.

**21** **Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.**

1 Peter regrets spending his holidays with his family.
**had** Peter ...*wishes he hadn't spent*... his holidays with his family.
2 Why don't you stop spending your money on useless things?
**wish** I ..... spending your money on useless things.
3 You should go on a diet, Sheila.
**would** If I ..... on a diet, Sheila.
4 Why don't you tidy your room more often?
**wish** I ..... tidy your room more often.

**22** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 I wish I would go home now.
2 If I were you, I will ask my father's advice.
3 Unless you don't ask her, she won't come.
4 I wish you will listen to me.
5 I wish I saw the play when it was on at the theatre.
6 I wish I will go on long holidays to hot places.
7 If I will have time, I will tidy up before I go out.

# Revision Box

**23** **Rewrite the following sentences in the passive.**

1 Mother threw that box away weeks ago.
*That box was thrown away weeks ago (by Mother).*
2 The maid polished the silver yesterday.
.....
3 We must take the dog to the vet.
.....
4 The mayor will open the new cinema tomorrow.
.....
5 We couldn't put out the fire because of the wind.
.....
6 Have you done the washing yet?
.....

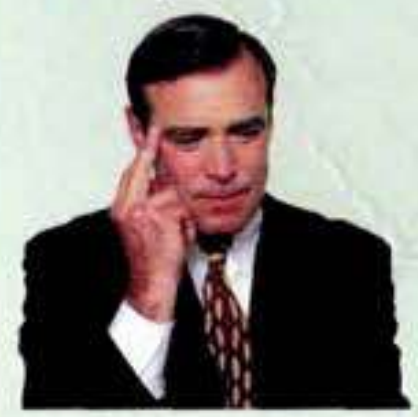
**24** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 I ...A... you as soon as I get there.
**A** will phone **B** phone **C** am phoning
2 Jason said that he ..... to Florida before.
**A** had never been **B** have never been
**C** will never be
3 You ..... tidy your room before you go to the cinema.
**A** may to **B** must **C** must to
4 James ..... the newspaper when the phone rang.
**A** reads **B** is reading **C** was reading
5 This photograph ..... by my grandfather.
**A** was taken **B** took **C** taken
6 My sister made this cake all by ..... .
**A** herself **B** her **C** she
7 'Whose bag is this?' 'It's ..... .'
**A** me **B** mine **C** my
8 Liz is tired. She ..... the windows all morning.
**A** has been cleaning **B** is cleaning
**C** has cleaned
9 When I arrived, Paul ..... .
**A** leaves **B** already left **C** had already left
10 Michael and Steven are friends. They ..... like football.
**A** both **B** all **C** neither

## ORAL Activity

**Edward Simpson and Laura Smithers aren't very happy with their lives. Look at the prompts and make sentences, as in the example.**

*e.g. Edward wishes he didn't have a stressful job.*
*He wishes his wife wouldn't spend so much money on clothes.*



- has a stressful job
- his wife spends a lot of money on clothes
- his children ask him for money all the time
- has no time for himself
- feels lonely
- doesn't go out often
- has difficulty making friends
- doesn't have any hobbies

## WRITING Activity

**Edward and Laura sent letters to Dorothy Forester, who is a counsellor, asking for advice. First, read Dorothy's letter to Edward and put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Then, write Dorothy's letter of advice to Laura.**

Dear Mr Simpson,

Thank you for your letter asking for my advice.

To begin with, if I (1) ..... (be) you, I would try to find ways to change my life. If you took time off work more often, you (2) ..... (not/feel) so stressed. If you asked your wife to stop spending a lot of money, she (3) ..... (listen) to you. Your children would also stop asking you for money all the time if you (4) ..... (be) stricter. Finally, you would feel a lot better if you (5) ..... (take up) a hobby and made some time for yourself.

I hope my advice will help.

Best wishes,
Dorothy

# Revision 3 (Units 1 - 15)

## 1 Choose the correct item.

1 James ...A... when Wendy came into the room.
**A** was sleeping **B** slept **C** has been sleeping

2 I think I ..... go to university when I leave school, but I'm not sure yet.
**A** should **B** will **C** am going

3 My mother always ..... the clothes on Monday.
**A** is washing **B** has washed **C** washes

4 They ..... here for twenty years.
**A** work **B** have been working
**C** were working

5 Greg ..... down, opened the book and began to read.
**A** had sat **B** sat **C** was sitting

6 He ..... a magazine once a week, but now he doesn't.
**A** used to buy **B** had bought **C** didn't use to buy

7 We ..... on holiday to Italy tomorrow.
**A** have gone **B** go **C** are going

8 The train to London ..... at six o'clock in the morning.
**A** leaves **B** leave **C** has left

9 At four o'clock yesterday afternoon, Chris ..... his birthday presents.
**A** opens **B** was opening **C** has opened

10 The children ..... to bed by the time the guests arrived.
**A** have already gone **B** will go
**C** had already gone

## 2 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

1 It isn't necessary for you to wear a suit.
**have** You ...*don't have to wear*... a suit.

2 You are not allowed to go out after dark.
**must** You ..... after dark.

3 It's possible that she'll visit us tomorrow.
**may** She ..... tomorrow.

4 I'm sure they're on holiday.
**must** They ..... on holiday.

5 I'm bored. Let's go somewhere else.
**shall** I'm bored. ..... somewhere else?

6 You don't have to go to work on Saturday.
**needn't** You ..... on Saturday.

7 I advise you to look for a job soon.
**ought** You ..... a job soon.

## 3 Rewrite the following sentences in the passive.

1 You must wash the car today.
*The car must be washed today.*

2 They are taking him to hospital now.
.....

3 Who will make the speech?
.....

4 The cat has destroyed the flowers.
.....

5 Shakespeare wrote 'Hamlet'.
.....

6 Someone sent Susan a red rose.
.....

7 The fire had burnt down the house by the time the fire brigade arrived.
.....
.....

8 Who invented the television?
.....

## 4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1 A: I've lost my purse. Have you seen it?
B: No. If you ...*had been*... (be) more careful, you wouldn't have lost it.

2 A: Did you buy that dress you saw?
B: No, but I wish I ..... (buy) it. It was lovely.

3 A: You should read this article. It's really interesting.
B: Pass me my glasses. I can't see unless I ..... (wear) them.

4 A: If only I ..... (go) to the party.
B: You can go if you help me first.

5 A: Can you lend me some money?
B: I would if I ..... (have) any, but I'm broke at the moment.

6 A: You failed your exam because you didn't study.
B: I know. I wish I ..... (study) more.

7 A: Do you want to come on holiday with me this year?
B: I will come if I ..... (have) enough money.

8 A: If only I ..... (not/spend) so much money this month.
B: Yes, we'd be able to go out for a meal tonight.

9 A: That music is very loud.
B: I wish Tom ..... (not/play) his music so loud. It gives me a headache.

10 A: Shall we go to the party on Friday night?
B: We'll go unless I ..... (be) too tired.

## 5 Choose the correct item.

1 You ...B... borrow my notebook if you want to.
**A** are able to **B** can **C** might

2 I ..... stay late at work tonight. There is lots of work to do.
**A** have to **B** can **C** needn't

3 Charlie ..... speak German when he was young, but now he can.
**A** can't **B** could **C** couldn't

4 You ..... ask for directions if you get lost.
**A** should **B** are able to **C** mustn't

5 ..... you water the plants for me?
**A** May **B** Will **C** Shall

6 Bill ..... get a new job after he had completed the training course.
**A** should **B** can **C** was able to

7 '..... I help you, sir?' 'Yes please.'
**A** May **B** Must **C** Will

8 She ..... visit us on Sunday if she has time.
**A** might **B** shall **C** mustn't

## 6 Turn from *direct* into *reported speech*. Use an appropriate introductory verb where necessary.

1 Janet said, 'I'm leaving for Jamaica tomorrow.'
*Janet said that she was leaving for Jamaica the following day.*

2 Paul said to me, 'Open the door for me, please.'
.....

3 Anna said, 'Let's go ice-skating this weekend.'
.....

4 'What time is it?' he said to me.
.....

5 Jonathan said to them, 'Please, please don't go without me.'
.....

6 Amanda said to me, 'I have found a new job.'
.....

7 Samantha said to Tim, 'I'll send you a postcard from Italy.'
.....

8 Mother said, 'I'll bake a cake for the party.'
.....

9 The fire-fighter said to the people, 'Don't go into the house.'
.....

10 Brian said, 'No, I won't type the report.'
.....

11 'Can you give me a lift?' she asked her father.
.....

## 7 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *infinitive form* or the *-ing form*.

My best friend is called Pam. She likes **(1)** ...*going*... (go) to the theatre and she also enjoys **(2)** ..... (read). She is always happy **(3)** ..... (help) anybody and doesn't mind **(4)** ..... (do) the housework for her mother every week. She tries to avoid **(5)** ..... (argue) with other people and usually manages **(6)** ..... (keep) a happy smile on her face. She has got lots of nice clothes and she lets me **(7)** ..... (borrow) them sometimes when we go out together. I always look forward to **(8)** ..... (see) Pam because she is very funny and she makes me **(9)** ..... (laugh).

## 8 Underline the correct word(s).

1 This is my picture. I drew it ***me/myself.***
2 The reason ***why/where*** I'm late is that I missed the bus.
3 Is this bicycle ***your/yours***?
4 That house ***was built/built*** by Harry and Sally.
5 If only he ***hadn't forgotten/didn't forget*** to post the letter.
6 That's the girl ***who/whose*** father is a policeman.
7 That's your coat. Put ***it/its*** away now, please.
8 He ***has worked/is working*** in this factory for twenty years.
9 Tommy ***is living/lived*** by himself at the moment.
10 This vase was a gift from my parents. They gave it to ***I/me***.
11 Laura ***was able to/could*** repair her bicycle when it got a flat tyre.
12 This is the bag ***which/who*** I bought in France.
13 If I ***will see/see*** Peter, I'll give him your message.
14 That's the house ***that/where*** I lived when I was a child.
15 ***Shall/Will*** I answer the door for you?
16 Gary, ***which/who*** lives next door, owns a dog and two cats.

# UNIT 16
# Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons

## Adjectives

*This is a **small** village. It looks **peaceful**. There are some **lovely old** houses.*

- **Adjectives describe nouns** (*a **big car***). **They have the same form in the singular and plural.** *e.g. a **small house** – **small houses***

- **Adjectives go before nouns.** *e.g. a **beautiful girl**.* **They can also be used alone after the verb to be and after verbs such as *look, smell, sound, feel, taste*, etc.** *e.g. Jack **is tall**. You **look sad**.*

- **There are two kinds of adjectives: opinion adjectives (*beautiful, good*, etc.), which show what a person thinks of somebody or something, and fact adjectives (*long, strong, young*, etc.), which give us factual information about age, size, colour, etc.**

### ORDER OF ADJECTIVES

- **Opinion adjectives go before fact adjectives.** *e.g. a **beautiful silk** dress*

- **When there are two or more fact adjectives in a sentence, they usually go in the following order:**

| | Size | Age | Shape | Colour | Origin | Material | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | small | old | square | blue | Thai | silk | scarf |

- **We do not usually have a long list of adjectives before a single noun. A noun is usually described by one, two or three adjectives at the most.**
  *e.g. an **expensive Persian silk** carpet*

**1** **Fill in the gaps with the correct adjective from the list.**

*lovely, fresh, quiet, cosy, bright, excellent, tall, comfortable*

The cottage was beautiful. It had a **1)** ...*cosy*... atmosphere. The rooms were small but **2)** ..... . There was a **3)** ..... fire burning in the fireplace, and the smell of **4)** ..... roses filled each room. The old furniture was in **5)** ..... condition. The garden was **6)** ..... . There were **7)** ..... trees all round the garden and colourful flowers near the cottage. It was very **8)** ..... and peaceful. I didn't want to leave.

**2** **Fill in the correct adjective.**

*oval, careful, thick, adventurous, long, generous*

1 Explorers are brave and .....*adventurous*.....
2 Rugby balls aren't round, they're .....
3 Uncle Sam is a very ..... man. He always brings us gifts when he visits us.
4 This book is very ..... It doesn't fit in my bag.
5 This dress is too ..... I need to shorten it.
6 Ricky is a ..... driver.

**3** ***You have inherited the following things from your grandmother.* Describe them by putting the adjectives in the right order.**

*e.g. a small wooden table*

1 a *wooden*/*small*/table
2 some *round*/*china*/*beautiful* plates
3 a *crystal*/*Venetian*/*blue*/vase
4 a(n) *gold*/*expensive*/ring
5 two *silver*/*old*/candlesticks
6 a(n) *antique*/*wooden*/*lovely*/radio

## Adverbs

*Farmers wake up **early** in the morning.*
*They work **hard** all day.*
*They go home **late** in the evening.*

- **An adverb can be one word (carefully) or a phrase (in the park). Adverbs show manner (how), place (where), time (when), frequency (how often), etc.**
  *e.g. He drives **carefully**.*
  *(How does he drive? Carefully. - adverb of manner)*
  *Your coat is **here**.*
  *(Where is it? Here. - adverb of place)*
  *He left for Italy **yesterday**.*
  *(When did he leave? Yesterday. - adverb of time)*
  *He **usually** eats out.*
  *(How often does he eat out? Usually. - adverb of frequency)*
- **Adverbs usually go after verbs.** *e.g. He **walks slowly**.*
- **Adverbs of frequency go after auxiliary verbs and the verb to be, but before main verbs.**
  *e.g. He **is always** on time for appointments.*
  *He **has never visited** Paris.*
  *He **always comes** to work on time.*

### Formation of adverbs

- **We usually form an adverb by adding -ly to the adjective.**
  *e.g. dangerous - dangerous**ly***
- **Adjectives ending in -le drop the -e and take -y.**
  *e.g. gent**le** - gent**ly***
- **Adjectives ending in consonant + y drop the -y and take -ily.**
  *e.g. eas**y** - eas**ily***
- **Adjectives ending in -l take -ly.**
  *e.g. wonderful - wonderful**ly***

- **Some adverbs are not formed according to the above rules. They have either a totally different form or the same form as the adjective.**

| Adjective | | Adverb |
|---|---|---|
| good | → | well |
| fast | → | fast |
| hard | → | hard |
| early | → | early |
| late | → | late |

### ORDER OF ADVERBS

- **When there are two or more adverbs in the same sentence, they usually come in the following order:**

| | manner (how) | place (where) | time (when) |
|---|---|---|---|
| *He was studying* | ***hard*** | ***in his room*** | ***last night.*** |

- **If there is a verb of movement (*go, come, leave*, etc.) in the sentence, then the adverbs come in the following order:**

| | place (where) | manner (how) | time (when) |
|---|---|---|---|
| *She came* | ***home*** | ***by bus*** | ***yesterday.*** |

**4** **Write the adverbs of the adjectives in the list in the correct box.**

*bad, quiet, impossible, easy, noisy, careful, horrible, lazy, simple*

| -ly | ~~-le~~ → ly | consonant + ~~y~~ → ily |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

**5** **Put the words from the list below into the correct column.**

*good, nicely, well, monthly, sadly, cheap, tall, strongly, fast, cold, early, softly, wide, carefully, late, pretty, loudly, hard*

| Adjective | Adverb | Adjective and Adverb |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

## 6 Put the adverbs from the list below into the correct box.

*sadly, quickly, here, last month, always, never, there, slowly, somewhere, tomorrow, cheerfully, often, now, last week, sometimes, anywhere*

| | |
|---|---|
| **how** (adverbs of manner) | *sadly* |
| **where** (adverbs of place) | |
| **when** (adverbs of time) | |
| **how often** (adverbs of frequency) | |

## 7 Choose an appropriate adjective from the list, turn it into an adverb and put it in the correct sentence.

*careless, fluent, proud, polite, happy, angry, heavy, serious, quick, careful*

1 The children were playing .....*happily*.....
2 The man drove ..... and crashed his car.
3 The teacher shouted ..... because the students were making too much noise.
4 Jonathan speaks English .....
5 It was raining ..... yesterday, so we stayed indoors.
6 The shop assistant placed the crystal vase ..... ..... on the shelf.
7 I asked the man ..... to help me cross the road.
8 Harry ran ..... to catch the bus, but it had already left.
9 The actor who won the Academy Award was smiling ..... on the stage.
10 He looked at me ..... and told me never to lie to him again.

## 8 Underline the correct word.

1 A: I'm going to the shops now.
B: Make sure you carry the eggs ***careful/carefully***. Don't break them.
2 A: I'm going to Alison's house for dinner tonight.
B: You'll enjoy it. Alison is a very ***good/well*** cook.
3 A: Have you finished that puzzle already?
B: Yes, it was really ***easy/easily***.
4 A: Mr Jones shouted ***angry/angrily*** today.
B: I know. He was in a very ***bad/badly*** mood all day.
5 A: Your mother is always ***cheerful/cheerfully***, isn't she?
B: Yes, she is always in a ***well/good*** mood.

## 9 Underline the correct word.

I organised a surprise party for my friend, Edith, last weekend. All the guests arrived early and waited **1) *quiet/quietly*** until Edith got there. When she walked through the door, we all cheered **2) *loud/loudly***. We went into the garden because it was a very **3) *warm/warmly*** day. The guests all gave Edith **4) *nice/nicely*** presents and Edith thanked them **5) *sincere/sincerely***. We danced **6) *happily/happy*** to the music and had a **7) *wonderful/wonderfully*** time. The party was **8) *successful/successfully.***

## 10 Put the words in the correct order.

1 always / wake up / I / early
*I always wake up early.*
2 by plane / we / to Spain / went
.....
3 to work / she / ran / quickly
.....
4 every afternoon / sleeps / my dog / in the garden / peacefully
.....
.....
5 they / in the kitchen / quietly / were talking
.....
6 all morning / happily / he / played / in his room
.....
7 they / the street / carefully / crossed
.....
8 yesterday / by taxi / I / went / to work
.....
9 in winter / they / never / go / to the beach
.....
10 sometimes / takes / he / to the park / his children
.....

## Comparisons

***SIZE:*** *6 metres*
***COST:*** *£3,000*
*The speedboat is* ***big****.*
*It is also* ***expensive****.*

***SIZE:*** *35 metres*
***COST:*** *£4,000,000*
*The yacht is* ***bigger than*** *the speedboat. It is also* ***more expensive****.*

***SIZE:*** *80 metres*
***COST:*** *£30,000,000*
*The cruise ship is* ***the biggest*** *and* ***the most expensive of*** *all.*

- **Adjectives have got three forms: positive, comparative and superlative.**
- **We use the comparative form + than to compare two people or things.**
  *e.g. Bob is* ***shorter than*** *Paul. My car is* ***more expensive than*** *yours.*
- **We use the + superlative form + of/in to compare one person or thing with more than one person or thing in the same group.** *e.g. Rick is* ***the shortest of*** *all.* **We use in when we talk about places.** *e.g. Stella is* ***the most beautiful*** *woman* ***in*** *the world. (NOT: ~~of~~ the world)*

### Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adjectives

- **One-syllable and two-syllable adjectives form the comparative by adding -er, and the superlative by adding -est.** *e.g. tall - tall**er** - tall**est***
- **Adjectives of three or more syllables form the comparative with more and the superlative with most.**
  *e.g. intelligent -* ***more*** *intelligent -* ***most*** *intelligent*
- **Some two-syllable adjectives, such as clever, stupid, narrow, gentle, friendly, etc., form the comparative and superlative either with -er/-est or with more/most.**
  *e.g. narrow -* ***narrower*** *-* ***narrowest****/narrow -* ***more narrow*** *-* ***most narrow***

## Spelling Rules

- **One-syllable adjectives ending in -e take -r in the comparative and -st in the superlative form.**
  *simple - simpl**er** - simpl**est***
- **Two-syllable adjectives ending in -y turn the -y into -i and then take -er/-est.**
  *easy - eas**ier** - eas**iest***
- **Adjectives ending in a stressed vowel between two consonants double the final consonant and then take -er/-est.**
  *fat - fat**ter** - fat**test*** **but** *cold - cold**er** - cold**est***

**11** **Write the *comparative* and *superlative* forms of the following adjectives.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | long | ...*longer*... | ..*longest*... |
| 2 | expensive | ..... | ..... |
| 3 | strong | ..... | ..... |
| 4 | difficult | ..... | ..... |
| 5 | intelligent | ..... | ..... |
| 6 | close | ..... | ..... |
| 7 | popular | ..... | ..... |
| 8 | safe | ..... | ..... |
| 9 | important | ..... | ..... |
| 10 | loud | ..... | ..... |
| 11 | weak | ..... | ..... |
| 12 | tasty | ..... | ..... |
| 13 | comfortable | ..... | ..... |
| 14 | delicious | ..... | ..... |

## Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adverbs

**Adverbs form their comparatives and superlatives in the same way as adjectives.**

- **Adverbs which have the same form as the adjective take -er in the comparative and -est in the superlative.**
  *e.g. hard - harder - hardest, early - earlier - earliest*
- **Adverbs formed by adding -ly to the adjective take more in the comparative and most in the superlative.**
  *e.g. carefully - more carefully - most carefully*

**12** **Write the *comparative* and *superlative* forms of the following adverbs.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | responsibly | *more responsibly* | *most responsibly* |
| 2 | hard | ..... | ..... |
| 3 | fast | ..... | ..... |
| 4 | noisily | ..... | ..... |
| 5 | early | ..... | ..... |
| 6 | satisfactorily | ..... | ..... |

## Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|---|
| good/well | better | best |
| bad/badly | worse | worst |
| much/many/ a lot of | more | most |
| little | less | least |
| far | further/farther | furthest/farthest |

**13** **Use the prompts below to make sentences, as in the example.**

1 an ostrich / an owl (big)
*An ostrich is bigger than an owl.*
2 gold / silver (expensive)
.....
3 Canada / Brazil (cold)
.....
4 feathers / stones (light)
.....
5 a car / a bicycle (fast)
.....

**14** **Use the prompts below to make sentences, as in the example.**

1 Have you read Sheldon's new novel? It's exciting, isn't it?
*Yes, it's the most exciting novel I've ever read.*
2 Have you seen the new Harvey film? It's frightening, isn't it?
3 Have you met Mary's cousin? She's beautiful, isn't she?
4 Have you tasted my mum's cheesecake? It's delicious, isn't it?
5 Have you heard Michael's new record? It's bad, isn't it?

**15** **Fill in the gaps with the *comparative* or *superlative* form of the adjectives/ adverbs in brackets.**

A: Excuse me, is there a **1)** ...*faster*... (fast) way to get to Clovelly?
B: If you take that road, which is **2)** ..... (narrow) than the others, it's only 15 minutes' walk. That's the **3)** ..... (quick) way.
A: Ah, thanks. We've been walking for 35 minutes and we thought we would get there **4)** ..... (soon). We can't even see Clovelly yet.
B: It's hidden by the trees, they're **5)** ..... (tall) than the houses. You'll like Clovelly. It's one of the **6)** ..... (beautiful) villages in north Devon.
A: That's what we've heard. It has some of the **7)** ..... (pretty) houses, hasn't it?
B: Yes, and the **8)** ..... (tasty) fish you've ever eaten!
A: Thank you very much for your help. Bye.

**16** **Fill in the gaps with the *comparative* or *superlative* form of the adverbs in brackets, adding any necessary words.**

1 Al swims ...*faster than*... you do. (fast)
2 My sister drives ..... us all. (carelessly)
3 I left the party ..... you did. (late)
4 Catherine dances ..... all. (beautifully)
5 The leading actress speaks ..... ..... all. (clearly)
6 My uncle gives ..... to the poor ..... my father does. (generously)
7 Jill Thomas works ..... all. (hard)
8 My best friend plays chess ..... I do. (well)

**17** **Fill in the gaps with the *comparative* or *superlative* form of the adjectives in brackets, adding any necessary words. Then, answer the questions.**

1 Which is ...*the coldest*... (cold) planet in our solar system? *Pluto.*
2 Is the Gobi desert ..... (large) the Sahara desert?
3 Which is ..... (heavy) animal in the world?
4 Which is ..... (long) wall in the world?
5 Is Mount Everest ..... (high) Kilimanjaro?
6 Which is ..... (small) continent in the world?
7 Does the cheetah run ..... (fast) the lion?
8 Does the blue whale make a ..... (loud) sound ..... the polar bear?
9 Which are ..... (tall) buildings in the world?
10 Has a falcon got ..... (good) eyesight ..... a human?

## Very - Much

**very + positive form of an adjective/adverb**
*e.g. It's **very hot** in here.*

**much + comparative form of an adjective/adverb**
*e.g. Today is **much hotter than** yesterday.*

**18** **Fill in the gaps with *very* or *much*.**

1 A: This book isn't ...*very*... interesting.
B: Try reading this one.
2 A: That's a beautiful car, isn't it?
B: Yes, but it's ..... more expensive than anything I can afford.
3 A: This jewellery is nice.
B: Yes, but the necklace is ..... long, isn't it?
4 A: I hate geometry, don't you?
B: Actually, I find geometry ..... more interesting than algebra.
5 A: Peter thinks Laura is a ..... polite girl.
B: I know. Barry does, too.
6 A: I want to lose weight, so I've taken up jogging.
B: That's good, but did you know that aerobics is a ..... more energetic form of exercise than jogging?

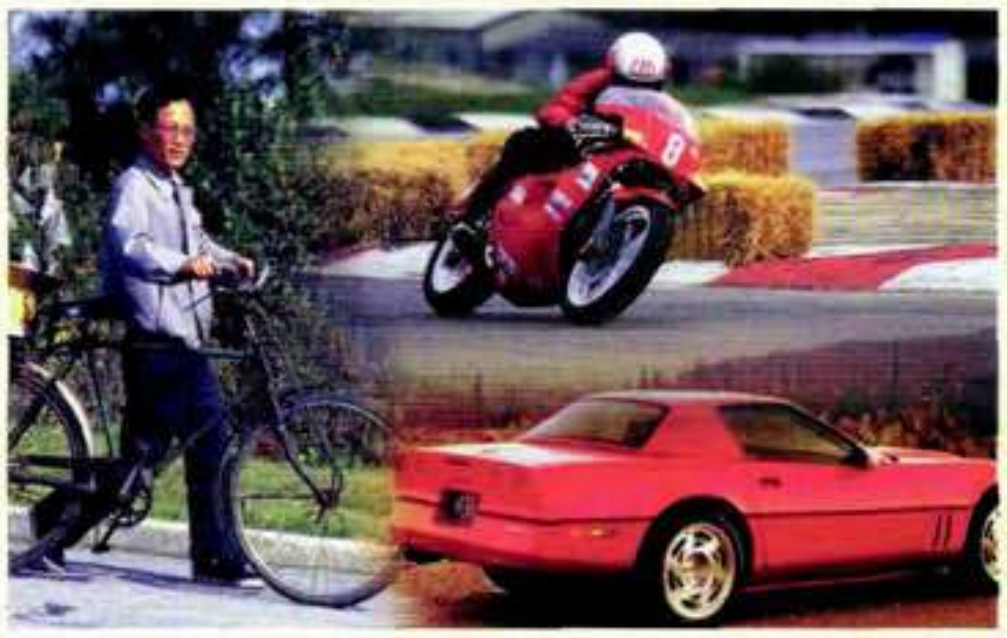
**19** **Put the adjectives in brackets into the *comparative* or *superlative* form adding any neccessary words.**

A: What do you think of this dress, Julia?
B: It's lovely. It's **1)** ...*the nicest*... (nice) of all you've tried on yet.
A: Yes, but I prefer short dresses.
B: Well, it's true that this dress is **2)** ..... (long) the blue one, but it's also **3)** ..... ..... (elegant).
A: Yes, but it's **4)** ..... (expensive) dress we've seen so far.
B: I know. The blue one is much **5)** ..... (cheap), but it doesn't look as good as the black one.
A: Oh! I can't decide. What time is it?
B: It's only 6 o'clock. We've got plenty of time.
A: Really! I thought it was **6)** ..... (late) that.
B: Why don't we go to another shop?
A: No, I've decided. I like the black dress **7)** ..... ..... (good). It's **8)** ..... (expensive), but it doesn't matter.
B: OK. Let's go and pay for it.

**20** **Fill in the gaps with the *comparative* or *superlative* form of the adjectives in brackets, adding *the* where necessary.**

My sister went on a school trip to a large outdoor swimming pool last week. Early in the morning, all the children got onto a bus with their teacher. It was **1)** ...*the smallest*... (small) bus my sister had ever seen, so it was **2)** ..... (uncomfortable) journey she'd ever been on. After two hours, they reached their destination. It was **3)** ..... (hot) day of the year. When they saw the pool, the children couldn't believe their eyes. It was **4)** ..... ..... (big) swimming-pool they had ever seen. There was even a huge water -slide! My sister said it was much **5)** ..... (enjoyable) than the rollercoaster at the funfair. Everyone had a fantastic time. When their teacher asked if they had enjoyed the trip, they all agreed that it was much **6)** ..... ..... (good) than having lessons at school!

## Types of Comparisons



*The motorbike is* ***as fast as*** *the car.*
*The motorbike is* ***n't as/so comfortable as*** *the car.*
*The bicycle is* ***less expensive than*** *the motorbike.*
*The bicycle is* ***the least expensive of*** *all.*

- **We use as + adjective (positive form) + as to show that two persons or things are similar in some way. In a negative sentence, we use not as/so ... as.**
  *e.g. Peter is* ***as tall as*** *Tom.*
  *Tom is* ***not as/so strong as*** *Peter.*

- **We use less + adjective (positive form) + than for two persons or things.**
  *e.g. This book is* ***less interesting than*** *that one.*

- **We use the least + adjective (positive form) + of/in for more than two persons or things.**
  *e.g. The film we saw last night was* ***the least interesting of*** *all I've seen this month.*

**21** **Complete the sentences to make correct statements about the three means of transport above, as in the example.**

1 *The car* is faster than *the bicycle.*
2 ... is slower than ...
3 ... is the slowest of all .
4 ... is more expensive than ...
5 ... is as fast as ...
6 ... is not as cheap as ...
7 ... is not as safe as ...
8 ... is more dangerous than ...
9 ... is the most dangerous of all.
10 ... is the cheapest of all.
11 ... is not as convenient as ...
12 ... is more comfortable than ...
13 ... is the safest of all.
14 ... is the most expensive of all.

**IN OTHER WORDS**

**Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.**

1 Paul is stronger than Alan.
**as** Alan **is not as strong as** Paul.
2 I have never read such an exciting book.
**the** It's **the most exciting book** I have ever read.
3 The blue car is more expensive than the black one.
**less** The black car is **less expensive than** the blue one.
4 This book has got 160 pages. That book has got 160 pages, too.
**thick** This book **is as thick as** that one.

**22** **Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.**

1 Lisa is prettier than Clare.
**as** Clare is ...*not as pretty as*... Lisa.
2 It's the biggest house I've ever seen.
**such** I ..... ..... a big house.
3 I've never heard such a beautiful song.
**the** It's ..... ..... I have ever heard.
4 Meat isn't as healthy as vegetables.
**than** Vegetables are ..... ..... meat.
5 Betty is 70 years old. Graham is 70 years old, too.
**old** Betty is ..... ..... Graham.
6 My car is old. Your car is new.
**than** Your car ..... ..... mine.
7 Samantha speaks French better than Josephine.
**well** Josephine doesn't ..... ..... Samantha does.
8 I have never worn such a warm sweater.
**the** It's ..... I have ever worn.
9 This necklace costs £200. That necklace costs £200, too.
**expensive** This necklace ..... ..... that one.
10 Peter is more handsome than Roger.
**less** Roger is ..... ..... Peter.

# Revision Box

**23** **Choose the correct answer.**

On 2nd September, 1666 a fire **(1)** ..... in a baker's house in London. It was an accident **(2)** ..... was the beginning of the **(3)** ..... fire in London's history. The wind **(4)** ..... hard, so the fire spread quickly through the city. It burned for three days and **(5)** ..... a large part of the city, including a cathedral, several churches and thousands of homes. People tried to escape with **(6)** ..... belongings in boats on the river, as their houses burnt down. Finally, the fire was put out and the rebuilding of London began. A magnificent new cathedral **(7)** ..... and the people returned to new houses.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **A** was started | **B** started | **C** had started |
| 2 | **A** which | **B** who | **C** why |
| 3 | **A** worse | **B** bad | **C** worst |
| 4 | **A** blew | **B** was blowing | **C** had blown |
| 5 | **A** destroyed | **B** had destroyed | **C** has destroyed |
| 6 | **A** theirs | **B** them | **C** their |
| 7 | **A** was built | **B** is built | **C** was being built |

**24** **Rewrite the sentences in the *passive*.**

1 Simon gave Rachel a gold ring for her birthday.
*Rachel was given a gold ring by Simon for her birthday.*
2 They are repairing the old bridge at the moment.
.....
3 Someone had informed the police about the planned robbery.
.....
4 They will announce the results early tomorrow morning.
.....
5 Alfred Hitchcock directed the film *'The Birds.'*
.....
6 You must clean your room more often.
.....
7 Someone was following Clare while she was walking home.
.....
8 Someone guards the entrance to the embassy twenty-four hours a day.
.....

## ORAL Activity

**You have recently visited three different restaurants. Look at the information below and make comparisons, as in the example.**

| | A | B | C |
|---|---|---|---|
| large | * | ** | *** |
| expensive | * | ** | *** |
| healthy | * | *** | ** |
| convenient | ** | * | *** |
| comfortable | * | ** | *** |

*S1: The Red Dragon is larger than Roberto's Pizza.*
*S2: The Regency Restaurant is the most expensive of all.*

## WRITING Activity

**Now, write a report comparing the three restaurants for the next issue of your magazine. Begin like this:**

*I visited three restaurants this week. The first one I went to was 'Roberto's Pizza' which is more convenient than the Red Dragon, because it is closer to bus stops and train stations.* .....
.....
.....

# UNIT 17
# Nouns - Articles

## The Plural

*Dennis lives on a farm with his parents. What have they got on their farm?*
*They've got* ***one horse, four rabbits, two geese, four ducks, one cockerel, two hens*** *and* ***three turkeys.***

## Spelling Rules

- **Most nouns form their plural by adding -s.**
  *one book - three books*

- **Nouns ending in -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x or -o take -es in the plural.**
  *bus - buses, dress - dresses, dish - dishes, peach - peaches, box - boxes, potato - potatoes*

  **But some nouns ending in -o take only -s.**
  *radio - radios, piano - pianos, studio - studios, video - videos, kilo - kilos, rhino - rhinos*

- **Nouns ending in a vowel + -y take -s in the plural.** *toy - toys, boy - boys*

  **But nouns ending in a consonant + y drop the -y and take -ies in the plural.**
  *cherry - cherries, lady - ladies*

- **Nouns ending in -f or -fe drop the -f or -fe and take -ves in the plural.**
  *loaf - loaves, wife - wives*

  **But some nouns ending in -f or -fe take only -s.**
  *roof - roofs, giraffe - giraffes, cliff - cliffs*

## Irregular Plurals

**Some nouns do not form their plural according to the above rules. They have either a different form or the same form as in the singular.**
**These include:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| child | – | children | goose | – | geese |
| man | – | men | mouse | – | mice |
| woman | – | women | sheep | – | sheep |
| foot | – | feet | ox | – | oxen |
| tooth | – | teeth | deer | – | deer |

## 1 Write the plural.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | orange | ...oranges... | 9 | tall man | ..... |
| 2 | baby | ..... | 10 | roof | ..... |
| 3 | watch | ..... | 11 | radio | ..... |
| 4 | tomato | ..... | 12 | fast car | ..... |
| 5 | chair | ..... | 13 | life | ..... |
| 6 | key | ..... | 14 | party | ..... |
| 7 | knife | ..... | 15 | beautiful day | ..... |
| 8 | foot | ..... | 16 | class | ..... |

## Pronunciation

**The suffix of the plural form is pronounced:**

- **/s/ when the noun ends in a /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/ or /θ/ sound.**
  *roofs, ducks, lamps, skirts, myths*
- **/ɪz/ when the noun ends in a /s/, /ks/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /z/ or /ʒ/ sound.**
  *glasses, boxes, dishes, torches, fridges, noses, mirages*
- **/z/ when the noun ends in any other sound.**
  *girls, dogs, knives, hens, beds*

## 2 First, say the words in the plural, then, write them in the correct box.

*basket, bush, ferry, cage, key, myth, bus, flower, desk, church, apple, dolphin, chair, hat, baby, dress, skirt, cherry, fox, bag, clock, piano, onion, bird, ball, cliff, box, radio, shirt, rose, dish, roof, song*

| | |
|---|---|
| /s/ | baskets, |
| /ɪz/ | bushes, |
| /z/ | ferries, |

## 3 Put the words in brackets into the plural where necessary.

**A** A: Did you go shopping on Saturday?
B: Yes, I did. I bought lots of things.
A: What did you buy?
B: I bought two **(1)** ...scarves... (scarf) and three **(2)** ..... (T-shirt).
A: Did you buy anything else?
B: Yes. I went to a lovely shop and bought six **(3)** ..... (cup) and four crystal **(4)** ..... (glass).
A: Gosh! You really bought lots of things!
B: And I also bought two silver **(5)** ..... (candlestick) for my aunt.

**B** A: I went to the zoo yesterday.
B: Really? Which animals did you see?
A: Well, first I saw a **(1)** ..... (lion), and then I saw two **(2)** ..... (giraffe).
B: Is that all?
A: No. I also saw three **(3)** ..... (deer) and two **(4)** ..... (rhino).
B: Did you go to the monkey house?
A: Yes, and there were three **(5)** ..... (monkey) there. It was a great day.

## 4 Fill in the gaps with the correct number and one of the words from the list. Use the plural where necessary.

*cucumber, tomato, radish, onion, pepper*

A: What do you need for the salad?

B: Well, I need **(1)** ...four peppers..., **(2)** ....., and **(3)** ..... .

A: Is that all?

B: Not quite. I also need **(4)** ..... ..... and **(5)** ..... .

# Countable/ Uncountable Nouns

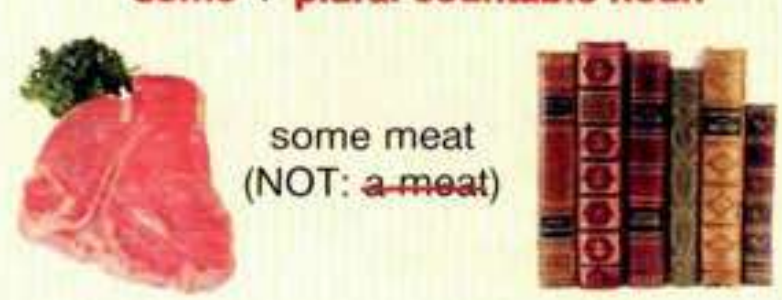
- **Countable nouns are nouns which can be counted and have a singular and plural form.**
  *e.g. one book, two books, three books*
- **We put a/an before countable nouns in the singular.**

  **a + consonant sound (/b/, /d/, /g/, /f/, /l/, /p/, etc.)**
  **an + vowel sound (/ɑ/, /e/, /ɪ/, /ɔ:/, /ʌ/, etc.)**

a hat
two hats
an umbrella
two umbrellas

- **Uncountable nouns are nouns which cannot be counted and they usually have no plural. These nouns include:**
  **food:** *cheese, butter, meat, salt, pepper, bread, chocolate, honey, jam, etc.*
  **liquids:** *coffee, milk, water, tea, lemonade, petrol, oil, etc.*
  **materials:** *gold, iron, silver, wood, paper, etc.*
  **abstract nouns:** *beauty, love, happiness, etc.*
  **others:** *hair, money, news, snow, furniture, weather, advice, etc.*
- **Uncountable nouns are followed by a verb in the singular. We do not use a/an or one but we can use some. Some is also used with countable nouns in the plural.**
  *e.g. There is* ***some*** *meat in the fridge.*
  *(NOT: There are ~~some meats~~ in the fridge.)*
  *There is* ***some*** *bread on the table.*
  *(NOT: There ~~is a bread~~ on the table.)*

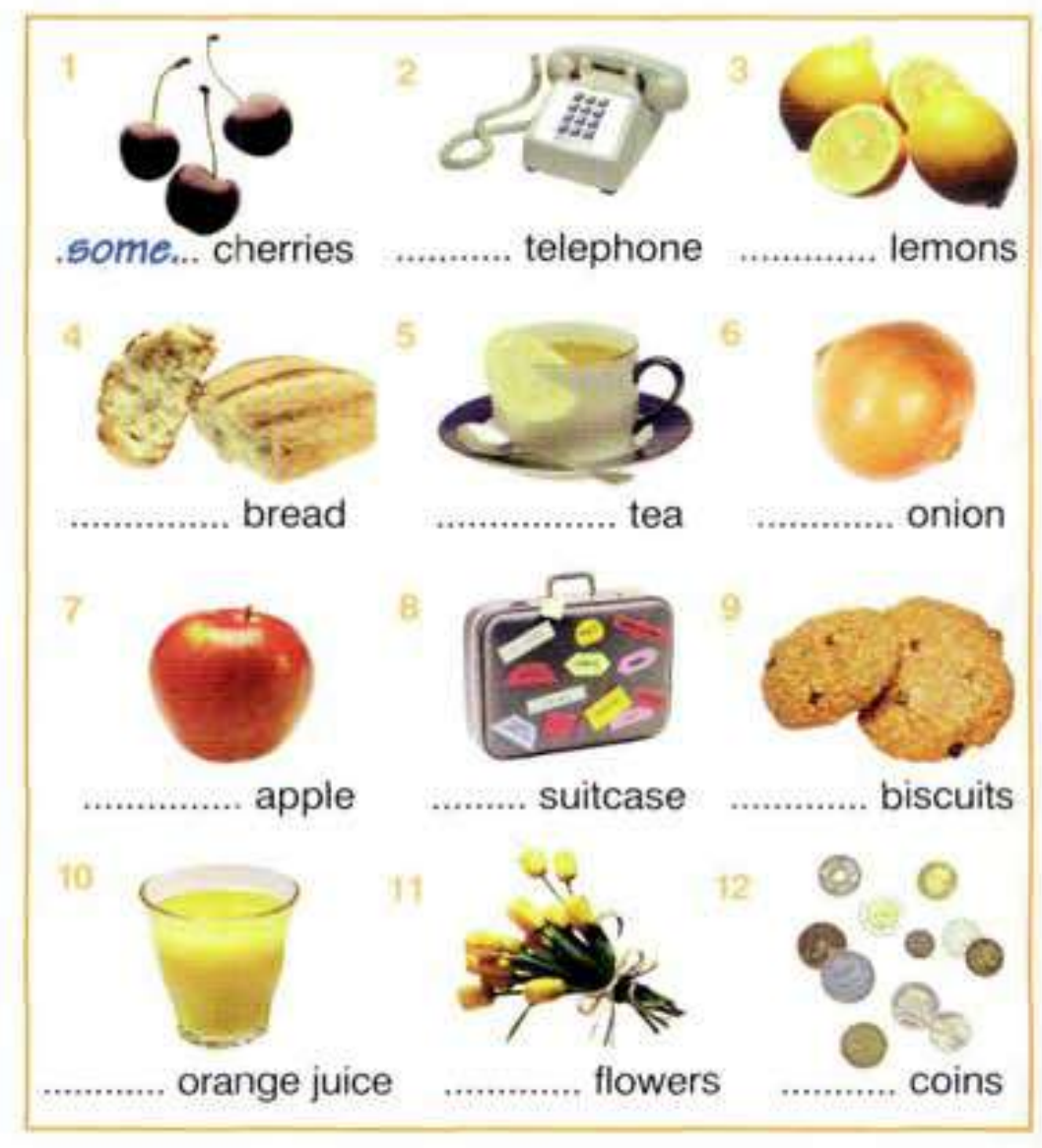
  **some + uncountable noun**
  **some + plural countable noun**


some meat
(NOT: ~~a meat~~)
some books

**5** **Put 'C' for countable and 'U' for uncountable.**

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | coffee | ..U.. | 5 | carrot | ..... | 9 | oil | ..... |
| 2 | book | ..... | 6 | beauty | ..... | 10 | jumper | ..... |
| 3 | furniture | ..... | 7 | money | ..... | 11 | friend | ..... |
| 4 | car | ..... | 8 | plate | ..... | 12 | advice | ..... |

**6** **Fill in a, an or some.**


1 .some... cherries
2 ..... telephone
3 ..... lemons
4 ..... bread
5 ..... tea
6 ..... onion
7 ..... apple
8 ..... suitcase
9 ..... biscuits
10 ..... orange juice
11 ..... flowers
12 ..... coins

**We can use countable and uncountable nouns after phrases of quantity such as: a *jar/bottle/piece/loaf/cup/bar/glass/kilo/carton/bowl/can/jug/slice/tin/packet*, etc. + of.**

*e.g. Don't forget to buy me* ***a jar of olives****.*
*They drank* ***ten glasses of lemonade****.*

**7** **Choose an appropriate *noun + of* to indicate quantity.**

1 some biscuits - four .....*packets of biscuits*.....
2 some bread - three .....
3 some tea - two .....
4 some soap - two .....
5 some pie - three .....
6 some meat - two .....
7 some sugar - three .....
8 some water - six .....

**8** **Read the note Julia left for Jack and fill in the gaps with one of the words from the list. Use the plural where necessary.**

*bottle, tin, jar, carton, packet, can*

Jack,

*I'll be late home from work tonight. Can you do the shopping for me? We need:*

two 1) ...*cartons*... of milk, six 2) ..... of Coke, a 3) ..... of pasta, a 4) ..... of strawberry jam, three 5) ..... of cat food, and a 6) ..... of ketchup.

*I'll be home at about 7 o'clock. See you then.*

Love,
Julia

## Plural Nouns

- **Plural nouns are nouns which represent a group of people or things and are followed by a plural verb. Such nouns include:**
  a) **people, police, clothes, stairs, etc.**
  *e.g. There* ***were*** *a lot of* ***people*** *at the party.*
  b) **objects which consist of two parts such as: trousers, shorts, shoes, gloves, pyjamas, tights, glasses, earrings, socks, scissors, etc.**
  *e.g. Your* ***trousers are*** *in the wardrobe.*
- **We can use a singular verb and the phrase a pair of... before objects which consist of two parts.**

| | |
|---|---|
| **singular verb + a pair of** | **trousers**<br>**shorts**<br>**gloves, etc.** |

**Compare:** *My* ***shoes are*** *dirty.*
*There* ***is a pair of shorts*** *on the chair.*

**9** **Underline the correct word.**

1 How many children ***is/are*** there in your class?
2 Some people never ***do/does*** any exercise.
3 There ***is/are*** a pair of socks under the bed.
4 His new clothes ***was/were*** very expensive.
5 I can't find the stairs in this building. Where ***is/are*** they?
6 The police ***is/are*** looking for the criminal.
7 I want to cut some paper. Where ***is/are*** the scissors?
8 Your hair ***need/needs*** cutting.
9 Your pyjamas ***is/are*** on the bed.
10 The information you gave me ***was/were*** very helpful.
11 There ***was/were*** a lot of people at the cinema last night.
12 My shorts ***is/are*** made of silk.
13 His shoes ***is/are*** too small. He needs a new pair.
14 My parents ***is/are*** walking the dog at the moment.
15 These earrings ***was/were*** given to me by my grandmother.

## One/Ones

**We use the pronoun one in the singular and ones in the plural to avoid repeating the noun.**

*e.g. I want a dress – a long red* ***one****.*
*I don't like big cars. I like small* ***ones****.*

**10** **Fill in the gaps with *one* or *ones*.**

1 A: Which trousers do you want?
B: The black ..*ones*.. .
2 A: I don't like this shirt.
B: Try on this ..... instead.
3 A: Which is your car?
B: The red ..... .
4 A: These socks are wet.
B: Put on some dry ..... .
5 A: Your glasses are broken.
B: I know. I'm going to buy some new ..... .
6 A: Which flowers do you prefer?
B: I think I prefer the white ..... .
7 A: Can I borrow a pen, please?
B: I'm sorry, I haven't got ..... .

# The Indefinite Article "A"/"An"

**The indefinite article a/an is used:**

- **with singular countable nouns after the verb to be when we want to say what somebody/something is.**

She's **an** actress.

It's **a** passport.

- **with certain phrases to show how often someone does something.**

  *e.g. We play tennis* ***once a week****.*
  *They go on holiday* ***twice a year****.*

**The indefinite article *a/an* is not used:**

- **with uncountable or plural countable nouns. We can use some instead.**

**some** bread

**some** eggs

- **before an adjective when there is no noun after it. But when there is a noun after the adjective, we use a for adjectives which begin with a consonant sound and an for adjectives which begin with a vowel sound.**

It's a hat. It is **green**.
It is **a green hat**.

## 11 Fill in the gaps with *a* or *an*.

1 .....*an*..... ancient city
2 ..... woman
3 ..... old building
4 ..... carrot
5 ..... film
6 ..... interesting book
7 ..... rose
8 ..... August evening
9 ..... owl
10 ..... businessman

## 12 *What are the following people's jobs?* Look at the pictures and the professions in the list and make sentences, as in the example.

*basketball player, electrician, photographer, mechanic, optician, pilot, painter, typist*

*e.g. Jack is a painter.*

## 13 Fill in *a, an* or *some*.

1 A: I bought ...*some*... butter and ..... sugar.
B: Are you going to make ..... cake?
2 A: Would you like ..... apple?
B: No, thank you.
3 A: What did you have for lunch today?
B: ..... piece of cheese and ..... bread.
4 A: I've lost my socks. Have you seen them?
B: Actually, I found ..... socks on the floor this morning. They must be yours.
5 A: I need ..... information for my history project.
B: Why don't you go to the library?
6 A: I'm going to the post office. Do you need anything?
B: Could you get me ..... stamps and ..... envelope, please?

# The Definite Article "The"

**The definite article *the* is used with singular and plural nouns.** *e.g.* ***the*** *horses,* ***the*** *farm,* ***the*** *man*

## We use "the":

- **with nouns when we are talking about something specific, that is, when the noun is mentioned for a second time or is already known. In other words, when we can answer the question 'Who?' or 'Which?'.**

***The*** *elephants in the picture are in a circus. (Which elephants? The elephants we can see in the picture.)*

- **with nouns which are unique.**

***the*** *Colosseum,* ***the*** *earth,* ***the*** *sky,* ***the*** *sun*

- **before the names of rivers** *(**the** Amazon)*, **seas** *(**the** Baltic Sea)*, **oceans** *(**the** Pacific)*, **mountain ranges** *(**the** Rocky Mountains)*, **deserts** *(**the** Gobi)*, **groups of islands** *(**the** Dodecanese)* **and countries when they include words such as 'state', 'kingdom', etc.** *(**the** United States)*.
- **before the names of musical instruments.**
  ***the*** *piano,* ***the*** *guitar,* ***the*** *saxophone.*
- **before the names of hotels** *(**the** Hilton Hotel)*, **theatres/cinemas** *(**the** Apollo Theatre)*, **ships** *(**the** Titanic)*, **organisations** *(**the** EU)*, **newspapers** *(**The** Guardian)*, **and museums** *(**the** Louvre)*.
- **before nationality words** *(**the** French)* **and families** *(**the** Taylors)*.
- **before titles when the person's name is not mentioned.**
  ***the*** *Queen,* ***the*** *Prince of Wales*
- **before the words morning, afternoon and evening.**
  *He goes to work in* ***the morning****.*

## We don't use "the":

- **with plural nouns when we talk about them in general, that is, when we cannot answer the question 'Who?' or 'Which?'.**

*Elephants live in the jungle.*
*(Which elephants? Elephants in general.)*

- **before proper names.**
  *This is Helen.*
- **before the names of countries** *(England)*, **cities** *(Paris)*, **streets** *(Mason Avenue)*, **parks** *(Central Park)*, **mountains** *(Everest)*, **islands** *(Santorini)*, **lakes** *(Lake Michigan)* **and continents** *(Europe)*.
- **before the names of meals** *(breakfast, lunch, dinner, etc.)* **and games/sports** *(golf, tennis, basketball, etc.)*.
  *Golf is a relaxing sport.*
- **with the words *this/that/these/those*.**
  ***this*** *bag,* ***those*** *cars* (**NOT:** ~~the~~ *this bag)*
- **with possessive adjectives or the possessive case.**
  *That isn't* ***my*** *car – it's* ***Keith's****.*
- **before titles when the person's name is mentioned.**
  *Queen Elizabeth, President Clinton*
- **with the words school, church, bed, hospital, prison or home when we refer to the purpose for which they exist.**
  a) *Mary goes to* ***school*** *at 8:30 in the morning. (=Mary is a student.)*
  *Mary's mother went to* ***the school*** *to get Mary's school report. (=Mary's mother went to the school as a visitor, not as a student.)*
  b) *Grandpa is in* ***hospital****. (=He is a patient.)*
  *Grandma went to* ***the hospital*** *to see Grandpa. (=Grandma visited Grandpa. She isn't a patient.)*

## Pronunciation

***The* is pronounced /ðə/ before words which begin with a consonant sound.** *e.g.* ***the*** *book,* ***the*** *phone*

***The* is pronounced /ðɪ/ before words which begin with a vowel sound.** *e.g.* ***the*** *orange,* ***the*** *elephant*

### 14 First, put the nouns in the correct boxes, then, read them out.

*key, apple, box, boy, table, octopus, artist, ship, helicopter, umbrella, antenna, spoon, egg, carpet, ant, object*

| The /ðə/ | | The /ðɪ/ | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .....key..... | ..... | ...apple... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |

### 15 Fill in *the* where necessary.

1 Have ...the... Browns gone on holiday?
2 I think this bag is ..... Brenda's.
3 The hotel is called ..... Park Hotel.
4 Come on, Ben, ..... dinner is ready!
5 Let's play ..... football on Saturday.
6 I'm going to ..... hospital to visit my aunt.
7 ..... new shopping centre was opened by ..... Queen.
8 I'm learning to play ..... piano.

### 16 Fill in *a* or *the*.

At (1) ...the... weekend, Roy's parents took him to (2) ..... funfair. They parked their car in (3) ..... big field and then went off to have some fun. Roy bought (4) ..... hot dog and (5) ..... doughnut from (6) ..... stall at (7) ..... entrance to (8) ..... funfair.

Roy went on lots of (9) ..... rides, but his favourite was (10) ..... roller-coaster. It was very scary! They talked to fortune-tellers and they went into rooms full of strange mirrors. They stayed until Roy was exhausted.

That night, Roy dreamed about (11) ..... wonderful time he'd had at (12) ..... funfair that day.

### 17 Fill in *a* or *the*.

A: Have you made all **(1)** ...the... arrangements for our holiday yet?
B: Yes, I think so. I've booked **(2)** ..... flight to Paris.
A: Did you find **(3)** ..... good hotel?
B: Well, it isn't **(4)** ..... luxurious hotel, but it's near **(5)** ..... centre of **(6)** ..... city and each bedroom has **(7)** ..... private bathroom.
A: Good. Did you go to **(8)** ..... bank to change **(9)** ..... money into French francs?
B: Yes, I've done that. Is there anything else?
A: I don't think so. I'll pack **(10)** ..... suitcases tomorrow night.
B: I'll book **(11)** ..... taxi to take us to **(12)** ..... airport, so we can leave our car at home.
A: Good idea. I think we're going to have **(13)** ..... very good holiday.

### 18 Underline the correct form.

1 ***Thompsons/The Thompsons*** live on a farm.
2 This is my friend, ***the Melanie/Melanie***.
3 We went on a tour of ***Europe/the Europe*** last summer.
4 ***The President Clinton/President Clinton*** made an interesting speech.
5 John is staying at ***home/the home*** tonight.
6 The new shopping centre was opened by ***Mayor/the Mayor***.
7 The baby sleeps in ***the afternoon/afternoon***.
8 That ***the cat/cat*** belongs to my sister.
9 Do you know how to play ***violin/the violin***?
10 ***The swimming/Swimming*** is my favourite sport.
11 When we went to Rome, we visited ***Colosseum/the Colosseum***.
12 They stayed at ***the Bridgeford/ Bridgeford*** Hotel.

### 19 Correct the mistakes.

1 We go to the bed at 9 o'clock every night.
2 Can you give me some advices, please?
3 These trousers is very expensive.
4 The police is here.
5 Jonathan went to the Brazil on holiday last year.
6 There are a lot of sheeps in that field.
7 The news about the accident were shocking.
8 My car is the red ones which is parked outside.
9 Aunt Lucy gave me a pair of glove for my birthday.
10 They play golf once the week.

# Revision Box

**20** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 They ...A... by 7 o'clock.
**A** had already eaten **B** were eating **C** eat
2 I ..... for an hour before he came home.
**A** am sleeping **B** had been sleeping **C** sleep
3 You ..... buy some bread.
**A** ought **B** must **C** shall
4 The house ..... in 1901. It is very old.
**A** is built **B** built **C** was built
5 She is ..... young to stay up late.
**A** – **B** too **C** enough
6 I have toothache. I ..... see my dentist soon.
**A** mustn't **B** need **C** must
7 I ..... a book when the door bell rang.
**A** am reading **B** read **C** was reading
8 That's the man ..... son is a famous actor.
**A** whose **B** who **C** where
9 She ..... a new book at the moment.
**A** writes **B** is writing **C** was writing

**21** **Look at the pictures and say what each item *can't be* and what each item *must be*.**

e.g. *It can't be a camel. It must be a lion.*

1 lion or camel?

2 star or starfish?

3 umbrella or coat-hanger?

4 violin or guitar?

5 chair or table?

6 TV or computer?

## ORAL Activity

**Simon tidied the attic a few days ago and came across some old objects. Look at the pictures and say what Simon found, using *a, an* or *some*.**

*e.g. Simon found an old black telephone.*

1 old black telephone

2 pair of woollen gloves

3 old books

4 hourglass

5 mask

6 green radio

7 old coins

8 old typewriter

## WRITING Activity

**Simon is writing a letter to his sister. He is telling her what he found in the attic. Complete the letter.**

Dear Emma,

You can't imagine what I found while I was tidying the attic a few days ago.

I found the old black telephone that we used to have in the hall twenty years ago. I also found the pair of woollen gloves which Grandma gave me when I was five. .....
.....

# UNIT 18
# Some/Any/No - A lot of/Much/Many - (A) little/(A) few

## Some/Any/No

*There is **some** cheese. There isn't **any** flour.*
*Is there **any** bread? No, there isn't.*
*There is **no** bread.*

*There are **some** potatoes. There aren't **any** eggs.*
*Are there **any** bananas? No, there aren't.*
*There are **no** bananas.*

- **We use some, any and no with uncountable nouns (tea, water, etc.) and plural countable nouns (books, trees, etc.).**
  *e.g. some tea, some books*
- **Some means a little or a few. We use some in positive statements.**
  *e.g. He's got **some** money. (=He's got **a little** money.)*
  *She's got **some** books. (=She's got **a few** books.)*
- **We use any in questions and not any in negations.**
  *e.g. Have you got **any** coffee? No, I haven't got **any** coffee.*
- **We can use no instead of not any in negations.**
  *e.g. They haven't **got any** friends. / They've **got no** friends.*
- **We use some in questions when we are making an offer or a request.**
  *e.g. Would you like **some** tea? (offer)*
  *Can I have **some** water, please? (request)*

| | Affirmative | Interrogative | Negative |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Countable** | some | any | not any/no |
| **Uncountable** | some | any | not any/no |

**1** **Look at the picture. In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts, as in the example.**

*e.g. SA: Are there any clouds in the picture?*
*SB: No, there aren't.*

**2** **Fill in the gaps with *some, any* or *no*.**

A: I'm very tired. I haven't had **(1)** ...*any*... sleep.
B: If I were you, I'd go to bed and get **(2)** ..... sleep.
A: I haven't got **(3)** ..... time. I have to do **(4)** ..... shopping, because there is **(5)** ..... food left in the fridge.
B: Don't worry. I've got **(6)** ..... free time. I'll go shopping, so you can get **(7)** ..... rest.

# Someone/Something/Somewhere

*The woman is* ***somewhere*** *in the countryside.*
*There is* ***nobody*** *with her.*
*She isn't carrying* ***anything*** *in her hands.*

- **Someone/somebody (a person), something (a thing) and somewhere (in/to/at a place) are used in positive statements.**
  *e.g. There is* ***somebody*** *in the garden.*
  *He lives* ***somewhere*** *near Park Road.*
- **Anyone/anybody, anything and anywhere are used in questions and negations.**
  *e.g. Is there* ***anything*** *in your bag?*
  *There* ***isn't anything*** *in my bag.*
- **No one/nobody, nothing and nowhere can be used in negations instead of not anyone/anybody, not anything and not anywhere.**
  *Compare: There* ***isn't anybody*** *in the room.*
  *There* ***is nobody*** *in the room.*

| | Affirmative | Interrogative | Negative |
|---|---|---|---|
| **People** | someone<br>somebody | anyone<br>anybody | no one / not anyone<br>nobody /not anybody |
| **Things** | something | anything | nothing / not anything |
| **Places** | somewhere | anywhere | nowhere/not anywhere |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Who?** | someone/anyone/no one<br>somebody/anybody/nobody |
| **What?** | something/anything/nothing |
| **Where?** | somewhere/anywhere/nowhere |

**3** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 Does ...A... know where Peter is?
**A** anyone **B** someone **C** anywhere
2 It's very dark in here. I can't see ..... .
**A** any **B** nothing **C** anything
3 I'm going to buy ..... oranges.
**A** no **B** any **C** some
4 'Who was at the door?' '..... .'
**A** No one **B** Something **C** Anyone
5 There is ..... milk left in the fridge.
**A** not **B** no **C** any
6 I'm bored. There is ..... to do here.
**A** something **B** anything **C** nothing
7 Please can I have ..... water?
**A** some **B** any **C** no
8 There's ..... at the door. Go and open it.
**A** somebody **B** nobody **C** anybody
9 I'm afraid there is ..... tea left.
**A** some **B** any **C** no
10 I must buy ..... for Pam's birthday.
**A** nothing **B** anything **C** something

**When we use any, anyone/anybody, anything and anywhere in affirmative statements, there is a difference in meaning.**

a) *You can call me* ***any*** *time you like.*
*(It doesn't matter when.)*
b) ***Anyone/Anybody*** *can go to the new sports centre.*
*(It doesn't matter who goes.)*
c) *You can ask me* ***anything*** *you want.*
*(It doesn't matter what.)*
d) *We can go* ***anywhere*** *you wish.*
*(It doesn't matter where.)*

**4** **Fill in the gaps with *any, anyone/anybody, anything* or *anywhere*.**

1 A: What time do you want dinner?
B: Oh, ...*any*... time you like.
2 A: What shall I wear for the party?
B: Wear ..... you like. It's up to you.
3 A: When can we meet for lunch?
B: Oh, ..... day next week. I haven't made any plans.
4 A: Where can I find this magazine?
B: At ..... shop in the town centre.
5 A: Where shall we go for our holidays?
B: ....., as long as it's hot!
6 A: Who can drive the company car?
B: ..... who has a driver's licence.

- **We use every before singular countable nouns.**
  *e.g.* ***Every student*** *must come to school on time.*

- **We use the pronouns everyone/everybody/everything and the adverb everywhere in affirmative, interrogative and negative sentences. We use a singular verb with these words.**
  *e.g.* ***Is everybody/everyone*** *here?*
  *(NOT: ~~Are everybody ...~~)*
  ***Everything*** *you need* ***is*** *on that desk.*

**5** **Fill in the gaps with *every, everyone/everybody/everything* or *everywhere*.**

1 ...*Every*... person in my family has their own car.
2 My uncle knows ..... about gardening.
3 Your desk is untidy. There are papers ..... .
4 When I arrived home, ..... had gone out.
5 I like walking, so I go ..... on foot.
6 My grandmother goes shopping ..... day.

**6** **Fill in each gap with a suitable verb from the list in the singular.**

*be - know - live - smell - feel*

1 It's a beautiful day. Everybody ...*is*... in the garden.
2 Everybody I know ..... near my house.
3 Everyone ..... the answer to that question. It's easy.
4 Everything ..... ready for the party this evening.
5 Everyone ..... happy when summer comes.
6 Everything ..... delicious!

**7** **Fill in the gaps with the derivatives of *some, any* or *every*.**

1 A: What's the matter, John?
  B: There's ...*something*... in my shoe, Mum. My foot hurts.
2 A: Did ..... see you go into the house?
  B: I don't think so. The street was empty.
3 A: Look at this mess!
  B: Oh! There are toys ..... .
4 A: Are you going ..... this weekend?
  B: No, I'm staying at home.
5 A: Are you hungry?
  B: Yes, I want ..... to eat.
6 A: Who gave you this book?
  B: ..... at work.
7 A: Is there ..... good on television tonight?
  B: Not really.

## A lot of - Much - Many

*There is* ***a lot of*** *bread in the picture.*
*Is there* ***much*** *flour? No, there isn't* ***much****.*
*Are there* ***many*** *mushrooms? No, there aren't* ***many****.*

- **We usually use a lot of/lots of in positive statements with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns. We omit of when a lot/lots is not followed by a noun.**
  *e.g. Helen's got* ***a lot of/lots of friends****.*
  *There's* ***a lot of sugar*** *in that bowl.*
  ***But*** *Have you got many photos? Yes, I've got* ***a lot****.*

- **We usually use much and many in questions and negations. Much is followed by uncountable nouns and many is followed by plural countable nouns.**
  *e.g. Is there* ***much milk*** *in the fridge? There* ***isn't much tea*** *left. Have you got* ***many friends****?*
  ***I haven't got many friends****.*

- **We use how much and how many in questions and negations.**

  **How much + uncountable noun → amount**
  **How many + countable noun → number**
  *e.g.* ***'How much sugar*** *do you take in your tea?'*
  *'Just* ***a spoonful****.'*
  ***'How many students*** *are there in your class?'*
  *'There are* ***fifteen****.'*

| | Affirmative | Interrogative | Negative |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Countable nouns** | a lot (of)<br>lots (of) | (how) many | many |
| **Uncountable nouns** | a lot (of)<br>lots (of) | (how) much | much |

**8** **Fill in the gaps with *how much* or *how many* and then answer the following questions about yourself.**

1 ...*How many*.. apples do you eat every day? *About three.*
2 ..... milk do you drink every day?
3 ..... books do you buy every month?
4 ..... pocket money do you get every week?
5 ..... people did you meet on your last holiday?
6 ..... films do you watch every month?
7 ..... sugar do you take in your tea?

**9** **Fill in *many, much* or *a lot of*.**

1 A: I've got ...*a lot of*... spare time today.
B: Great! Let's go shopping together.
2 A: Are there ..... cinemas in this town?
B: No, there's only one.
3 A: There isn't ..... snow on the ground.
B: No, the sun has melted it.
4 A: There are ..... flowers in the garden.
B: Yes, they're beautiful, aren't they?
5 A: How ..... times did you have a shower yesterday?
B: Three! It was a very hot day.
6 A: I've got ..... things to do today.
B: I'm busy today, too.
7 A: There isn't ..... water in that vase. The flowers will die.
B: I'll put some more in.
8 A: Helen is always alone.
B: No she isn't. She's got ..... friends.
9 A: Are there ..... fish in this river?
B: No, not any more.
10 A: Can you lend me some money?
B: No, sorry – I haven't got ..... money with me.

**10** **Complete the answers with *a lot, much* or *many*.**

1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, .....*a lot*.....'
2 'Is there any milk in the fridge?' 'Yes, but not .....'
3 'Have you got any vegetables?' 'Yes, but not .....'
4 'How many letters have you typed?' 'Not .....'
5 'Are there any eggs in the basket?' 'Yes, .....'
6 'How much salt did you put in the soup?' 'Not .....'
7 'Did you get any presents for your birthday?' 'Yes, .....'
8 'How much did your dress cost?' 'Not .....'
9 'Are there many children in your class?' 'Yes, .....'
10 'How much homework do you have each day?' 'Not .....'

## Too many / Too much

◆ **Too many can be used with plural countable nouns and has a negative meaning. It shows that there is more of something than is wanted or needed.**

*There are **too many cars** on the road. We won't get to the reception on time. (=There are so many cars on the road that we won't get to the reception on time.)*

◆ **Too much can be used with uncountable nouns and has a negative meaning. It shows that there is more of something than is wanted or needed.**

*She spent **too much money** last month. She can't pay her bills now. (=She spent so much money last month that she can't pay her bills now.)*

**11** **Fill in the gaps with *too much* or *too many*.**

1 A: If you eat ...*too much*... chocolate, you'll get fat.
B: Then I'll only eat a little bit!
2 A: You bought ..... oranges at the market yesterday.
B: Never mind, we can use some for juice.
3 A: Don't spend ..... money tonight.
B: I won't. I want to save some for another day.
4 A: There are ..... flowers in that vase.
B: I know, but I couldn't find another one.
5 A: All the students failed the exam.
B: I know. ..... of the questions were difficult.
6 A: How did you spoil the soup?
B: I put ..... salt in it.
7 A: I don't like this coffee.
B: Why not?
A: There's ..... sugar in it.

## A few/few - A little/little

*Liz has got **a few** apples. She can make an apple pie.*

*Mary has got **(very) few** apples. She can't make an apple pie.*

*Tom has got **a little** money. He can go to the restaurant.*

*Peter has got **(very) little** money. He can't go to the restaurant.*

- **We use a few/few with plural countable nouns (cars, cassettes, etc.).**

  **A few means 'not many, but enough.'**
  *e.g. We've got **a few** oranges. We can make some juice. (= We've got enough oranges.)*

  **Few means 'hardly any, almost none' and can go with very for emphasis.**
  *e.g. There are **(very) few** biscuits in the box. It is almost empty. (=There are only one or two biscuits.)*

- **We use a little/little with uncountable nouns (ice, honey, flour, etc.).**

  **A little means 'not much, but enough.'**
  *e.g. She's got **a little** time. She can go shopping.*

  **Little means 'hardly any, almost nothing' and can go with very for emphasis.**
  *e.g. We've got **(very) little** coffee. There's not enough for all of us.*

**12** **Use *a few* or *a little* for each of the nouns in the list.**

e.g. *a few plates* *a little coffee*

*plates, coffee, honey, cars, ice-cream, milk, women, sheep, water, cups, flour, forks, babies, apple juice, pepper, dolls, marmalade, dresses*

**13** **Fill in *few, a few, little* or *a little*.**

1 Shall I make ...*a few*... cakes for tea on Sunday?
2 I hope there are ..... people I know at the party.
3 Could I have ..... milk in my cup, please?
4 The train drivers are on strike. Very ..... people came to work.
5 I hope you've almost finished. There is very ..... ..... time left.
6 It's cold. That's why there are very ..... children in the park today.
7 Do you need ..... more days to think about my proposal?
8 We must go shopping. There's very ..... ..... food in the fridge.
9 I'm bored. There's very ..... to do on Wednesday evenings.
10 I'm sorry. I'll be ..... late. We're having ..... problems at work.

**14** **Underline the correct word.**

1 A: When will you be back?
  B: Soon. I'm only going away for ***a few/a little*** days.
2 A: How do you like your coffee?
  B: I think you've put ***too many/too much*** milk in it.
3 A: When can I come and visit you?
  B: Come on ***every/any*** Tuesday. I'm free on that day.
4 A: What would you like to eat?
  B: Can I have ***some/any*** of that cake, please? It looks delicious.
5 A: Who's coming to the party?
  B: I've invited ***everyone/anyone*** from the office.
6 A: Do you know ***many/much*** foreign people?
  B: No. Actually, I know ***very few/a few***.
7 A: I've lost my keys. I can't find them ***anywhere/nowhere***.
  B: Don't worry. I'm sure they're ***everywhere/somewhere*** in this room.
8 A: I asked ***everyone/someone***, but ***nobody/anybody*** wants to help me with my project.
  B: Okay, I'll give you ***no/some*** help.
9 A: Did you buy the biscuits I wanted?
  B: No, they didn't have ***any/no*** in the supermarket.

**15** **Correct the mistakes.**

1 Could you lend me any money, please?
2 How many time have we got left?
3 There aren't too much chocolates in the box.
4 I don't know nothing about chemistry.
5 I'm looking for anything in the cupboard.
6 I want to go nowhere nice and quiet for my holidays.
7 I don't need some help with my homework.
8 You can have something you want. Just ask for it.
9 Did you catch some fish in the river?
10 Everybody know that the Earth is round.

## Revision Box

**16** **Choose the correct answer.**

The Titanic was a luxurious large passenger ship **(1)** ...A... everyone thought was unsinkable. It set sail from Southampton, England on **(2)** ..... first voyage. It **(3)** ..... to New York, in the USA. **(4)** ..... were over two thousand people on board the ship for the journey. On April 14th, 1912, the Titanic hit an iceberg and water started **(5)** ..... into the ship. Nothing **(6)** ..... be done to stop it and so, eventually, at 2.20 am on April 15th, the ship **(7)** ..... into the icy water. About 1,500 people died on that terrible night. On September 1st, 1985, experts **(8)** ..... the wreck of the Titanic on the ocean floor.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | **A** which | **B** it | **C** who |
| 2 | **A** it | **B** its | **C** it's |
| 3 | **A** went | **B** had gone | **C** was going |
| 4 | **A** There | **B** They | **C** These |
| 5 | **A** to flow | **B** flow | **C** flows |
| 6 | **A** can | **B** could | **C** couldn't |
| 7 | **A** sunk | **B** sank | **C** had sunk |
| 8 | **A** had discovered | **B** have discovered | **C** discovered |

## ORAL Activity

**You are going camping by the sea with a friend. Look at the items in the box and decide which you need to take with you and which you don't. Then, make sentences using *some* or *any*, as in the example.**

*e.g. S1: We needn't take **any** tools.*
*S2: We must take **some** string.*

## WRITING Activity

**You're writing a letter to another friend who would like to go camping by the sea. Using your notes from the Oral Activity, tell them what they must and needn't take. Begin like this:**

*Dear ....., (your friend's name)*

*I was happy to hear that you want to go camping too. I hope you have given it a lot of thought, because it's not going to be easy. There are some things you must take with you. First of all, you must take some .....*
*.....but you needn't take any .....*
*.....*

# UNIT 19
# Questions

## Questions with Yes/No answers

*A:* ***Have you*** *been here before?*
*B:* ***No, I haven't.***
*A:* ***Do you think*** *we'll catch many fish?*
*B:* ***Yes, I do.*** *It looks like a good spot.*

- **Questions with *Yes/No* answers begin with an auxiliary or modal verb (is, are, do, does, can, etc.) which is followed by the subject. We usually answer these questions with *Yes* or *No*.**
  *e.g.* ***Are you*** *writing a letter?* ***Yes, I am.***
  ***Can you*** *play the piano?* ***No, I can't.***
- **When the main verb is in the present simple, we form the question with the auxiliary verb do or does.**
  *e.g.* ***Does Jack*** *live in a flat?* ***Yes, he does.***

  **When the main verb is in the past simple, we form the question with the auxiliary verb did.**
  *e.g.* ***Did it*** *rain last night?* ***No, it didn't.***

### 1 Make questions, as in the example.

1 I have got black hair. (you)
*Have you got black hair, too?*
2 I can swim. (he)
3 I like playing tennis. (Sharon)
4 I read a book last week. (Mike)
5 I have bought a new car. (Anne)
6 I am wearing a red dress. (you)

### 2 Fill in the gaps with the correct *auxiliary* or *modal verb*.

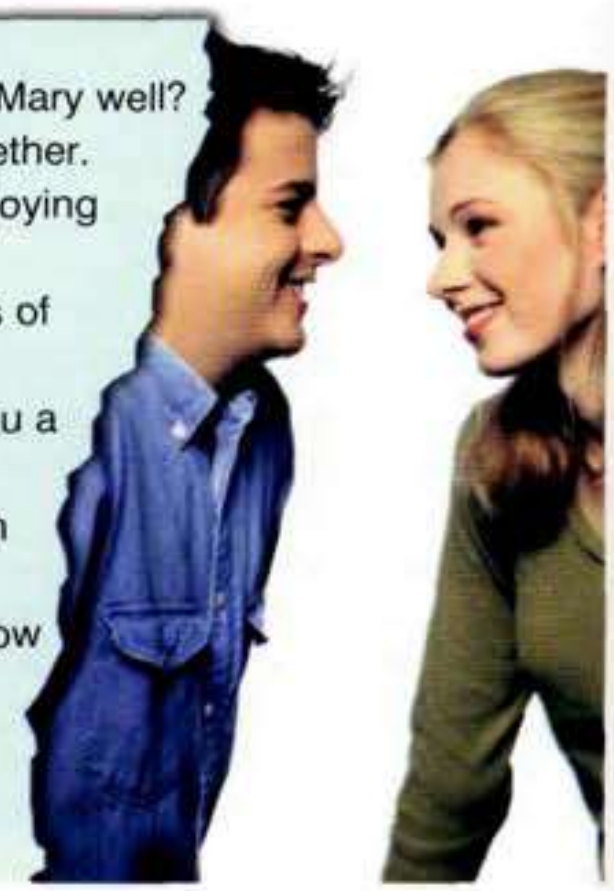
1 A: ...*Is*... John coming home tomorrow?
B: No, he isn't.
2 A: ..... your father own a car?
B: Yes, he does.
3 A: ..... you got a pair of gloves?
B: No, I haven't.
4 A: ..... they speak French?
B: Yes, they can.
5 A: ..... you been waiting long?
B: No, I haven't.
6 A: ..... the children enjoy the play?
B: Yes, they did.

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

1 Jonathan / when / could / he / swim / three / was?
*Could Jonathan swim when he was three?*
2 you / this / tomorrow / will / finish?
.....
3 eggs / buy / you / some / to / did / remember?
.....
4 has / house / yet / George / moved?
.....
5 help / clean / me / can / the / you / kitchen?
.....

### 4 *Tony and Erica are at a party. They have just been introduced.* Read the dialogue and fill in the gaps with the correct *auxiliary* or *modal* verb.

T: ...*Do*... you know Mary well?
E: Yes, we work together.
T: ..... you enjoying the party?
E: Yes, there are lots of people here.
T: ..... I get you a drink?
E: No, thank you. I'm not thirsty.
T: ..... you know everyone here?
E: No, only Mary. She invited me.



## Negative Questions

A: ***Don't you*** *think he looks like me?*
B: *Yes, I think he does.*
A: ***Isn't he*** *quiet?*
B: *Yes, he doesn't cry very much.*

- **Negative questions are formed with not, but there is a difference in the word order between the full form and the short form.**

  **Full form: auxiliary + subject + not + verb**
  *e.g.* ***Do you not want*** *to watch that film?*

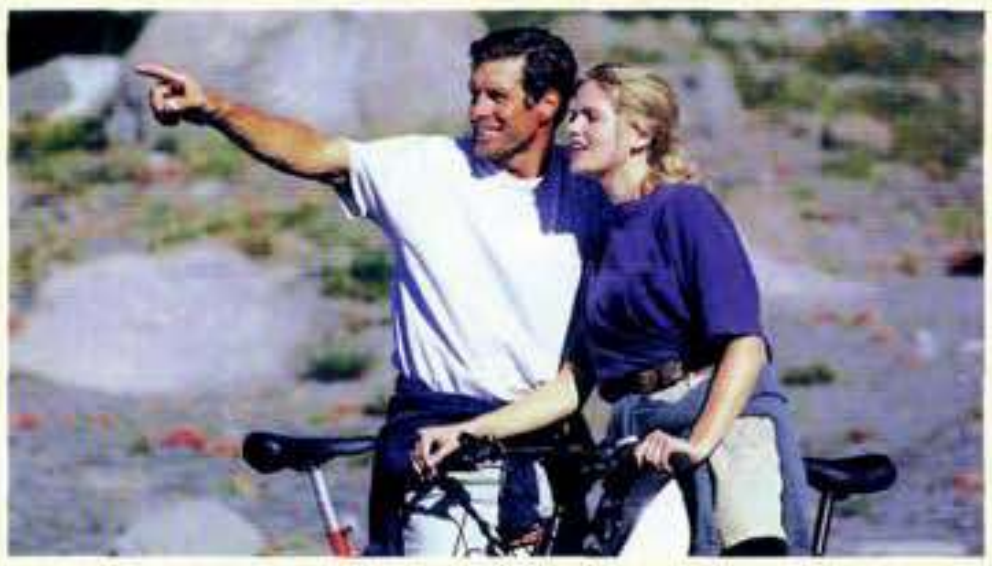
  **Short form: auxiliary + n't + subject + verb**
  *e.g.* ***Don't you want*** *to watch that film?*

- **We use negative questions in everyday speech a) to ask for confirmation** *e.g.* ***Didn't you*** *see James yesterday?* **and b) to express:**
  - **surprise.** *e.g.* ***Can't you*** *ride a bicycle?*
  - **admiration.** *e.g.* ***Doesn't he*** *speak English well!*
  - **annoyance.** *e.g.* ***Can't you*** *stop talking?*

**5** **Write the short form of the following negative questions.**

1 Have I not told you to be careful with the knife?
*Haven't I told you to be careful with the knife?*
2 Do you not know what the capital of Italy is?
.....
3 Do you not find him handsome?
.....
4 Have you not ever swum in the sea?
.....
5 Can you not keep quiet while I'm on the phone?
.....
6 Did they not know that the meeting was cancelled?
.....
7 Have you not paid the bill yet?
.....
8 Are you not taking the children with you?
.....

## Wh- Questions



A: *Look at that.*
B: ***What is it****?*
A: *I think it's a castle.*
B: ***How can we*** *get there?*
A: *I don't know. There must be a path.*

**Wh- questions begin with a question word such as who, what, where, when, etc. We put the auxiliary or modal verb before the subject.**

**question word + auxiliary/modal + subject**

**people: who/whose**
*e.g.* *'**Who** did you ask for help?' 'My sister.'*
*'**Whose** is that umbrella?' 'It's Kate's.'*
**things: what/which**
*e.g.* *'**What** do you need?' 'A pencil.'*
*'**Which** bag does Helen like?' 'The black one.'*
**place: where**
*e.g.* *'**Where** did Father go?' 'To the market.'*
**time: when/how long (ago)/how often**
*e.g.* *'**When** did Peter sign the contract?' 'Yesterday.'*
*'**How long** have they been married?' 'Three years.'*
*'**How long ago** did you get your degree?' 'Four years ago.'*
*'**How often** does Annette travel abroad?' 'Once a month.'*
**quantity/number: how much/how many**
*e.g.* *'**How much** money have you got?' 'Very little.'*
*'**How many** books did you buy?' 'Two.'*
**manner: how**
*e.g.* *'**How** did Tom come home?' 'By bus.'*
**reason: why**
*e.g.* *'**Why** does Sharon want to leave?' 'She's bored.'*
**age: how old**
*e.g.* *'**How old** is your brother?' 'Thirty-two.'*
**distance: how far**
*e.g.* *'**How far** is it to the cinema?' 'About ten minutes' walk.'*

# What-Which-How

***What** stories do you like?*

***Which** dress shall I buy?*

- **What + noun/auxiliary/modal**
  **This structure is usually used when we ask about things and there is an unlimited choice.**
  *e.g.* ***What films** do you like? (There are many kinds of films such as westerns, comedies, adventure films, etc., so the choice is unlimited.)*
  ***What can** I get you?*
- **Which + noun/auxiliary/one/ones**
  **This structure is used when we ask about things or people and there is a limited choice.**
  *e.g.* ***Which author** do you like best – Agatha Christie or Ian Fleming? (You have to choose between these two authors, so the choice is limited.)*
  ***Which would** you prefer to buy - a car or a bike?*
  *'**Which one** did you buy?' 'Neither.'*
- **How + adjective/adverb/much/many/auxiliary**
  **This structure is used when we want to ask 'In what way?', the amount or the number.**
  *e.g. '**How tall** is he?' 'About 1.70m.'*
  *'**How fast** can you run?' 'Not very fast.'*
  *'**How much** money did you spend?' 'A lot.'*
  *'**How many** sisters have you got?' 'Two.'*
  *'**How do** you get to work?' 'By bus.'*

## 6 Fill in the gaps with *what* or *which*.

1 A: ...*What*... countries have you been to so far?
B: I've been to France, Spain and Portugal.
A: ..... would you like to visit again some day?
B: Um, Spain, I think.

2 A: I've got three red blouses. ..... do you like best?
B: The one with the white collar.

3 A: ..... can I do for you?
B: I'd like some chocolates, please.
A: ..... ones?
B: Those in the red box, please.

4 A: ..... are you looking for?
B: My shoes. Have you seen them?
A: ..... pair do you mean?
B: My new blue suede ones.

5 A: ..... do you like doing in your free time?
B: I like reading Agatha Christie's novels.
A: ..... is your favourite?
B: 'Murder on the Orient Express.'

## 7 Fill in the gaps with *how* or *what*.

1 .....*How*..... old are your grandparents?
2 ..... number did you dial?
3 ..... can I get you to drink?
4 ..... are you?
5 ..... many people were at the wedding?
6 ..... can I do to help you?
7 ..... colour hair has Jane got?
8 ..... long is she going to stay here?

## 8 Fill in the gaps with *many, much, far, often* or *long*.

1 A: How ...*far*... is it from your house to the airport?
B: About an hour's drive.

2 A: How ..... did you stay in the US?
B: Not very long, a couple of weeks.

3 A: How ..... do you go shopping?
B: Every Saturday morning.

4 A: How ..... people have you invited to the party?
B: Just a few.

5 A: How ..... sugar did you put in my coffee?
B: Not much. Why?
A: It's too bitter.

6 A: How ..... is it from the capital to the border?
B: About a day's journey, I'd say.

7 A: How ..... times have I asked you to knock before coming into my office?
B: I'm sorry. I won't do it again.

8 A: How ..... does your husband take you out to dinner?
B: Only once a year – on our anniversary!
A: Oh!

9 A: How ..... will I have to wait before the doctor can see me?
B: He'll be with you in a few minutes.

## 9 Fill in the gaps with the correct question word(s). Then, choose the correct answer to each question.

**HOW MUCH DO YOU KNOW ABOUT SWITZERLAND?**

1 ...*Where*... is Switzerland?
**A** In eastern Europe.
**B** In central Europe.
**C** In northern Europe.

2 ..... is the capital of Switzerland?
**A** Bern **B** Zürich **C** Geneva

3 ..... countries surround Switzerland?
**A** France, Italy, Austria and Germany
**B** France, Germany and Austria
**C** France, Italy, Austria, Germany and Lichtenstein

4 ..... was Johanna Spyri?
**A** A Swiss inventor who designed the first watch.
**B** A Swiss writer who wrote 'Heidi.'
**C** A Swiss skier who won four Olympic medals.

5 ..... official languages are spoken in Switzerland?
**A** Two **B** Three **C** Four

## 10 Fill in *who, whose, what, which, where, when, how long, how often, what time, why, how much* or *how many*.

1 '...*When*... did you move house?' 'Last month.'
2 '..... do you go to bed?' 'At 11 o'clock.'
3 '..... bag is this?' 'Tara's.'
4 '..... dogs have you got?' 'Three.'
5 '..... didn't she phone?' 'Because she forgot.'
6 '..... is your cup?' 'The white one.'
7 '..... did you eat for breakfast?' 'Toast.'
8 '..... do you go swimming?' 'Twice a week.'
9 '..... did your jumper cost?' '£32.'
10 '..... did you live in Germany?' 'Ten years.'
11 '..... do you live?' 'Next to the school.'
12 '..... did you phone this morning?' 'Uncle John.'

## 11 Fill in *what, how long, when, how, how much, how many, why* or *where*.

Travel Agent: Good morning, sir. **1)** ...*What*... can I do for you?
Customer: I'd like to go on holiday.
Travel Agent: Certainly. **2)** ..... do you want to go?
Customer: I'd like to go somewhere hot and sunny.
Travel Agent: **3)** ..... do you want to go for?
Customer: Two weeks.
Travel Agent: **4)** ..... do you want to leave?
Customer: On 2nd August.
Travel Agent: **5)** ..... people will be going?
Customer: Four people.
Travel Agent: Good. I suggest two weeks in the south of France.
Customer: **6)** ..... will it cost?
Travel Agent: Two hundred pounds per person.
Customer: **7)** ..... will we get there?
Travel Agent: By plane. **8)** ..... do you ask?
Customer: Because I hate travelling by boat.

## 12 Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

1 *Did you feed the baby?*
**Yes,** I fed him an hour ago.

2 .....
Jane buys new clothes **twice a year**.

3 .....
This is **Michael's** desk.

4 .....
**No,** I'm not going to his party.

5 .....
It's only **a ten-minute walk** from my house to the cinema.

6 .....
I started work **on Monday**.

7 .....
I go to bed **at 11 o'clock.**

8 .....
I closed the door **because I was cold**.

9 .....
**No,** I didn't go shopping yesterday.

10 .....
My sunglasses cost **£45**.

11 .....
**Fifty** people were invited to Helen's wedding.

12 .....
Jonathan works in **a bank**.

## Subject/Object Questions

- **Subject questions are questions we ask when we want to find out who or what did something; that is, when we want to know the subject of the sentence. These questions usually begin with the words who, what or which. In subject questions, the verb is in the affirmative form.**
  *e.g.* ***Who sent*** *you this postcard?*
  *(NOT: ~~Who did send you this postcard~~?)*
  ***What happened*** *while I was away?*
  *(NOT: ~~What did happen while I was away~~?)*

| subject | verb | object |
|---|---|---|
| Mary | loves | Tom. |
| Who | loves | Tom? |

- **Object questions are questions we ask when we want to know the object of the sentence. These questions usually begin with the words who, what or which. In object questions, the verb is in the interrogative form.**
  *e.g.* ***Who did you meet*** *at the theatre?*
  ***What do you have*** *to tell me?*

| subject | verb | object |
|---|---|---|
| Mary | loves | Tom. |
| Who | does Mary love? | |

**13** **Choose the correct answer.**

1 Who spoke to Paul? .....B.....
  **A** Paul spoke to Mary.
  **B** Mary spoke to Paul.
2 What did Helen give you? .....
  **A** Helen gave me a book.
  **B** I gave Helen a book.
3 Who invited Sheila to the party? .....
  **A** Sheila invited Bob to the party.
  **B** Bob invited Sheila to the party.
4 Who was Jane looking for? .....
  **A** Jane was looking for Peter.
  **B** Peter was looking for Jane.
5 What was in the box? .....
  **A** The dress was in the box.
  **B** The box was in the dress.
6 Who likes children? .....
  **A** I like children.
  **B** Children like me.

**14** **Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.**

1 *Who works with Ken?*
  **Larry** works with Ken.
2 .....
  Paul met **George**.
3 .....
  James is seeing **the doctor** tomorrow.
4 .....
  **Peter** has found a new job.
5 .....
  Mum is **cooking lunch**.
6 .....
  **Sarah** phoned Richard.
7 .....
  She is reading **a book**.
8 .....
  They welcomed **the President**.
9 .....
  **Nicola** went on holiday with Joanne.
10 .....
  They are building **a house**.
11 .....
  Helen likes **Ron**.
12 .....
  **Jenny** lives with Bill.

**If a verb is followed by a preposition, in object questions the preposition comes at the end.**
*e.g. Who shall I* ***give*** *it* ***to****? What is Bill* ***waiting for****?*

**15** **Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.**

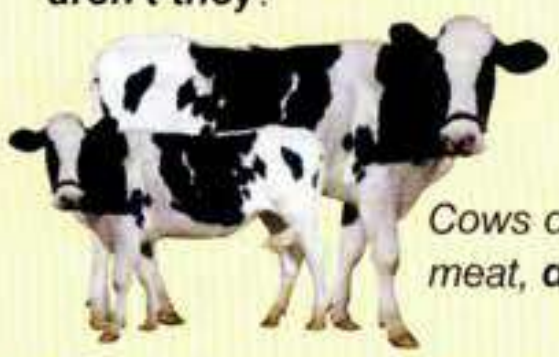
1 *Who did you get a message from?*
  I got a message from **Jack**.
2 .....
  Linda is talking to **Paul**.
3 .....
  He's looking at **some old photos**.
4 .....
  Sandra bought a present for **her parents**.
5 .....
  Paul comes from **Britain**.
6 .....
  The children went to the park with **their nanny**.
7 .....
  She borrowed this dress from **Ann**.
8 .....
  Tim is looking for **his pen**.

## Question Tags

- **Question tags are short questions at the end of statements. We mainly use them in speech when we want to confirm something or when we want to find out if something is true or not.**

*They're binoculars,* ***aren't they****?*

*She has got a lot of bags,* ***hasn't she****?*



*Cows don't eat meat,* ***do they****?*

- **We form a question tag with the auxiliary or modal verb of the main sentence and the appropriate subject pronoun.**
  *e.g.* ***Don is*** *leaving tomorrow,* ***isn't he****?*
  ***Tina can't*** *knit,* ***can she****?*

- **When the verb of the sentence is in the present simple, we form the question tag with the auxiliary verb do/does and the subject pronoun. When the verb is in the past simple, we form the question tag with the auxiliary verb did and the subject pronoun.**
  *e.g.* ***Sharon doesn't like*** *dancing,* ***does she****?*
  ***They paid*** *the bill,* ***didn't they****?*

- **When the sentence is positive, the question tag is negative.**
  *e.g. He* ***robbed*** *the bank,* ***didn't he****?*

- **When the sentence is negative, the question tag is positive.**
  *e.g. She* ***won't leave*** *without us,* ***will she****?*

- **When the sentence contains a word with a negative meaning like never, hardly, seldom or rarely, the question tag is positive.**
  *e.g. She* ***hardly*** *goes anywhere,* ***does she****?*

- **Some verbs/expressions form question tags differently. Study the following examples.**

| | |
|---|---|
| I am → aren't I? | *I am tall,* ***aren't I****?* |
| Imperative → will/won't you? | *Stop talking,* ***will/ won't you****?* |
| Don't → will you? | *Don't move,* ***will you****?* |
| Let's → shall we? | *Let's sit here,* ***shall we****?* |
| I have (got) → haven't I? *(=I possess)* | *He has got a car,* ***hasn't he****?* |
| I have → don't I? (other meanings) | *You have a big breakfast every day,* ***don't you****?* |
| There is/are → isn't/aren't there? | *There is a woman in the room,* ***isn't there****?* |
| This/That is → isn't it? | *This is Tom's coat,* ***isn't it****?* |

## Intonation

- **When we are sure of the answer and expect agreement, the voice goes down in the question tag.**

*e.g. These are penguins,* ***aren't they****?*

- **When we aren't sure of the answer and we want to check information, the voice goes up in the question tag.**

*e.g. He isn't working at the moment,* ***is he****?*

## 16 Underline the correct answer.

1 A: You're going on holiday soon, ***aren't you/are you***?
B: Yes, I am. You've been to Spain before, ***have you/haven't you***?
A: Yes. It was great. You'll enjoy it. You'll send me a postcard, ***will you/won't you***?
B: Of course!

2 A: Your brother has got a dog, ***hasn't he/has he***?
B: Yes, he has. You don't want a puppy, ***do you/don't you***?
A: Well, actually I do. You haven't got any, ***haven't you/have you***?
B: Yes, you can have one if you want.

3 A: Tom bought you these flowers, ***didn't he/did he***?
B: Yes, he did. They're beautiful, ***are they/aren't they***?

## 17 Fill in the correct question tag.

1 You don't like cheese, ...*do you*.....?
2 She is tired, .....?
3 We have got enough money, .....?
4 He doesn't live with his parents, .....?
5 They haven't got a dog, .....?
6 He likes eggs, .....?
7 She isn't a teacher, .....?
8 They are married, .....?
9 We aren't late, .....?
10 Paul can swim, .....?
11 That jacket isn't too small, .....?
12 Bessie did her homework, .....?
13 I am early, .....?
14 You didn't eat all of it, .....?

## 18 Fill in the correct question tags and short answers.

1 'Patrick is a soldier, ...*isn't he*...?' 'Yes, ...*he is*... .'
2 'She has broken her leg, .....?' 'Yes, unfortunately .....'
3 'He's very rich, .....?' 'Yes, that's right, .....'
4 'He doesn't draw very well, .....?' 'No, .....'
5 'They often go on holiday, .....?' 'Yes, .....'
6 'You've been to Egypt, .....?' 'Yes, .....'
7 'You live in England, .....?' 'No, ..... . I live in Scotland.'
8 'He's having lunch now, .....?' 'No, ..... He's in a meeting.'
9 'Penny lives with Ruby, .....?' 'Yes, ..... .'
10 'The bathroom is at the end of the hall, .....?' 'No, ..... . It's at the top of the stairs.'
11 'You and Martin have the same birthday, .....?' 'Yes, ..... .'
12 'She wears glasses, .....?' 'Yes, ..... .'

## 19 Fill in the question tags and then read the sentences aloud with the correct intonation.

| sure | not sure | |
|---|---|---|
| ✓ | | 1 You'll phone me, *won't you*? |
| | ✓ | 2 She goes to bed early, ..... ? |
| | ✓ | 3 He didn't use to live alone, ..... ? |
| | ✓ | 4 We aren't going home yet, ..... ? |
| ✓ | | 5 He plays well, ..... ? |
| ✓ | | 6 She's very tidy, ..... ? |
| | ✓ | 7 Alan went home, ..... ? |
| ✓ | | 8 They have got two daughters, ..... ? |
| | ✓ | 9 Andrea's very beautiful, ..... ? |
| ✓ | | 10 Ted will cook dinner, ..... ? |

## 20 Correct the mistakes.

1 Did she returned from her trip to Paris?
2 What one do you like best?
3 Who did phone last night?
4 Did not they enjoy their journey?
5 You never drive at night, don't you?
6 Let's go shopping, will we?
7 There are lots of flowers, aren't they?
8 Do he know the answer?
9 Who are you going?
10 Who do you with live?

# Revision Box

## 21 Turn from *direct* into *reported* speech.

1 Sandra said to him, 'I have arranged everything for the wedding.'
*Sandra told him that she had arranged everything for the wedding.*

2 He said to me, 'Can you give me directions to the post office, please?'
.....

3 The boy said, 'I'm going to the park today.'
.....

4 Father said to me, 'I'll tidy the garden tomorrow.'
.....

5 'Turn off the light, please,' John said to me.
.....

## 22 Choose the correct answer.

1 She told me ...*B*... home.
**A** go **B** to go **C** going

2 If we ..... now, we will reach the airport in an hour.
**A** leave **B** will leave **C** are leaving

3 I wish she ..... talking in class.
**A** is stopping **B** has stopped **C** would stop

4 Susan told me she ..... the following morning.
**A** left **B** would leave **C** will leave

5 This is the house ..... I was born.
**A** when **B** that **C** where

6 ..... money did you save last year?
**A** How much **B** How many **C** How long

7 This is my ..... car.
**A** mother's **B** mothers' **C** mothers

8 Dinner ....., yet.
**A** is served **B** has been served
**C** hasn't been served

9 Help me carry these bags, .....?
**A** wouldn't you **B** will you **C** don't you

10 My hair was wet. I ..... in the rain.
**A** had been walking **B** had walking
**C** have been walking

## ORAL Activity

**Use the question words from the list and the prompts below to ask and answer questions, as in the example.**

**how many, when, who, where, how, how long, which**

*e.g. SA: When did it start?*
*SB: It started in 1939.*

**HOW MUCH DO YOU KNOW ABOUT THE SECOND WORLD WAR?**

1 it / start? In 1939.
2 it / last? Six years.
3 countries / be involved? Almost every country in the world.
4 be / British Prime Minister? Sir Winston Churchill.
5 most of the battles / take place? In Europe.
6 people / be killed? More than forty million people.
7 it / end? The Americans dropped atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

## WRITING Activity

**Imagine that one of your relatives fought during the Second World War. Write the questions you want to ask him.**

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

# UNIT 20
# Prepositions - Linking Words

## Prepositions of Time

*They go for long walks **at** the weekend.*

*Flowers look lovely **in** spring.*

*Sharon has ballet lessons **on** Wednesdays and Fridays.*

**We use prepositions of time to say when something happened, happens or will happen. The most common ones are at, in and on.**

*e.g. He wakes up **at** seven o'clock **in** the morning.*

| AT | | IN | | ON | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| the time: | at 4 o'clock | months: | in April, in June, etc. | days: | on Friday, on New Year's Day |
| holidays: | at Christmas<br>at Easter<br>at the weekend | seasons: | in (the) winter/spring/autumn, etc. | dates: | on July 4th |
| | at the moment<br>at present | years: | in 1994, in 1998, etc. | specific part of a day: | on Monday evening |
| in the expressions: | at dawn<br>at noon<br>at night<br>at midnight | centuries: | in the 20th century | | |
| | | in the expressions: | in the morning/afternoon/evening<br>in an hour<br>in a minute<br>in a week/few days/month/year | adjective + day: | on a cold day |

**NOTE:**

1) **We use the prepositions from ... to to show duration.**

   *e.g. He goes to school **from** Monday **to** Friday.*
   *She works **from** 9 **to** 5 every day.*

2) **We do not use prepositions of time:**

   a) **with the words today, tomorrow, tonight and yesterday.**

   *e.g. I saw him **yesterday evening**.*

   b) **before the words this, last, next, every, all, some, each, one and any.**

   *e.g. You can visit me **any** Sunday.*

**1** **First, fill in the gaps with the correct preposition, then answer the questions.**

1 What time do you get up ...*in*... the morning?
*I usually get up at half past seven.*
2 What do you like doing ..... the weekend?
3 Where do you usually go ..... Easter?
4 What do you usually do ..... Friday evenings?
5 What do you wear ..... a cold winter day?
6 What are you doing ..... the moment?
7 What time do you go to bed ..... night?
8 Did you go on holiday ..... July?
9 Do you eat lunch ..... noon?
10 What do you usually do ..... Christmas Day?

## 2 Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

1 A: What time shall we meet?
B: Let's meet ...*at*... 8 o'clock.
2 A: When is the next meeting?
B: It's ..... Wednesday, next week.
3 A: What time do you want to have your appointment?
B: Oh, any time ..... the morning.
4 A: They got married ..... 1992, you know.
B: Really? I thought it was 1991.
5 A: Do you go to bed early?
B: No, I usually go to bed ..... midnight.
6 A: What time shall we have lunch?
B: I'd like to eat ..... noon, if that's all right.
7 A: When are you going shopping?
B: Probably ..... the weekend.
8 A: When was her baby born?
B: ..... July 27th.
9 A: I love summer holidays.
B: I prefer to go on holiday ..... winter.
10 A: When is your next exam?
B: ..... Tuesday afternoon.

## 3 Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

A: Hello Hannah. I hear you're married now.
B: That's right. I got married last year, **1)** ...*at*... Easter.
A: Congratulations! And when did you have your baby?
B: **2)** ..... Christmas. Actually, he was born **3)** ..... Christmas Day.
A: Well, I'm getting married **4)** ..... the summer. Will you come to the wedding?
B: Of course. When exactly is it?
A: It's **5)** ..... July 31st. It will be at the village church in Sunnyside.
B: Oh, that's lovely. Listen, can we meet for coffee next week?
A: I go to the gym **6)** ..... Wednesdays, but I don't do anything **7)** ..... Friday mornings.
B: Great! I'll meet you **8)** ..... eleven o'clock in the new café on the High Street.
A: Okay. See you **9)** ..... Friday, then.

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1 My birthday is ...*on*... November 10th.
**A** at **B** on **C** in
2 Let's go swimming ..... tomorrow afternoon.
**A** at **B** on **C** –
3 Farmers usually get up ..... dawn.
**A** in **B** at **C** on
4 We went to Spain ..... last summer.
**A** at **B** – **C** on
5 We always buy chocolate eggs ..... Easter.
**A** in **B** at **C** on
6 My parents are moving house ..... May.
**A** in **B** on **C** at
7 The plane leaves ..... twenty minutes.
**A** at **B** in **C** on
8 The last train to London leaves ..... midnight.
**A** in **B** at **C** on

## 5 How good is your knowledge of history? Look at the pictures and the list of answers given. In pairs, ask and answer questions, as in the example.

| | |
|---|---|
| August 5th, 1962 | 1876 |
| 5th century BC | 16th century |
| 1492 | July 20th, 1969 |
| January 27th, 1756 | March 10th, 1922 |

e.g. *SA: When was America discovered?*
*SB: It was discovered in 1492.*

1
When was America discovered?

2
When was Gandhi first put in prison?

3
When was the Acropolis built?

4
When was the Mona Lisa painted?

5
When was the telephone invented?

6
When was Mozart born?

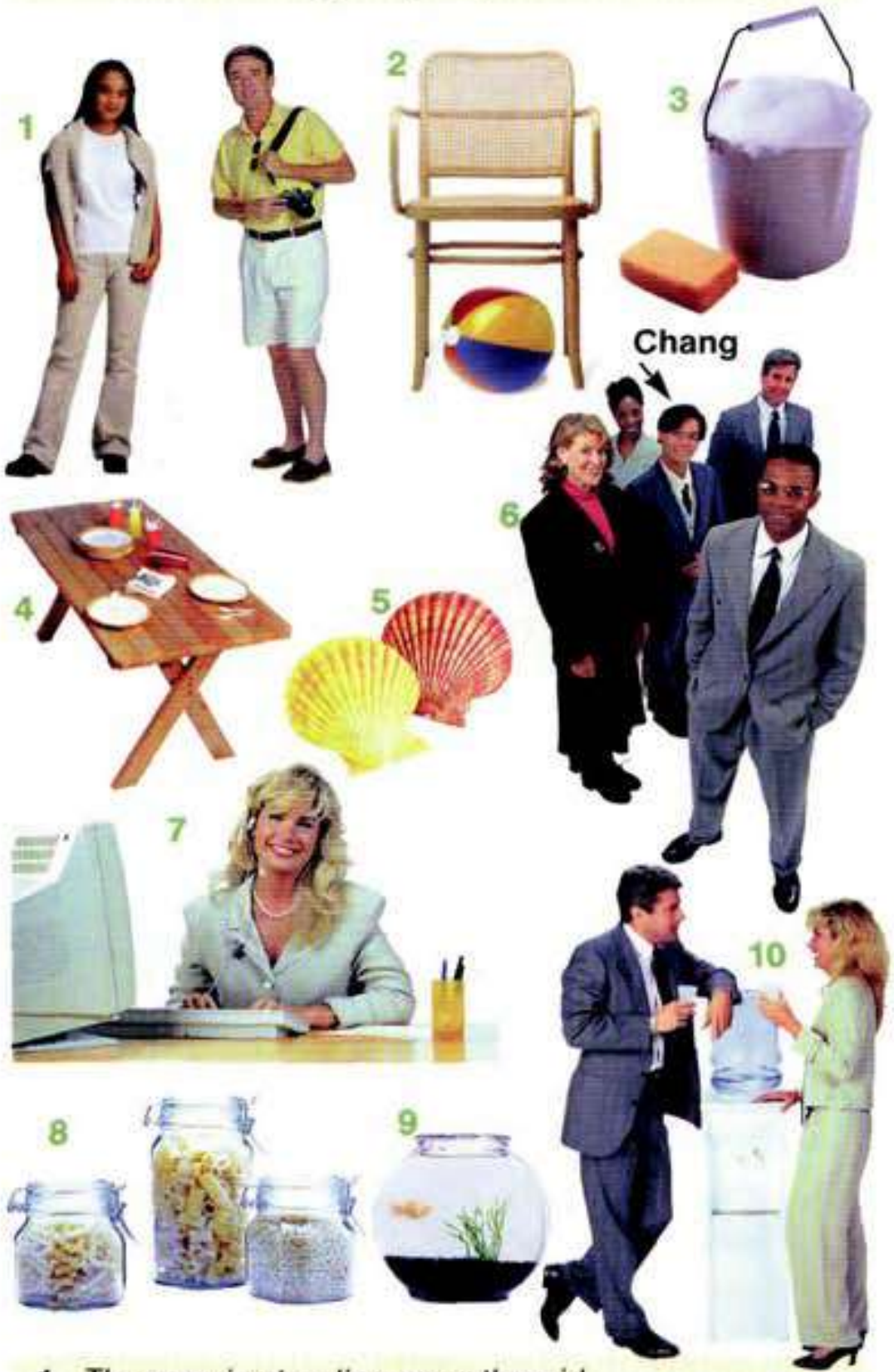
7
When did Marilyn Monroe die?

8
When did Neil Armstrong land on the moon?

# Prepositions - Linking Words

## Prepositions of Place

We use prepositions of place to say where somebody or something is. These include: **on**, **under**, **in front of**, **behind**, **beside/next to**, **near**, **at**, **in**, **between**, **among** and **opposite**. We use **between** to say that somebody or something is in the middle of two other things or people. We use **among** to say that somebody or something is in the middle of three or more things or people.




1 *The man is standing* ***near*** *the girl.*
2 *The ball is* ***under*** *the chair.*
3 *The sponge is* ***beside/next to*** *the bucket.*
4 *The plates are* ***on*** *the table.*
5 *The yellow shell is* ***in front of*** *the orange shell.*
*The orange shell is* ***behind*** *the yellow one.*
6 *Chang is standing* ***among*** *his friends.*
7 *She is sitting* ***at*** *her desk.*
8 *The big jar is* ***between*** *the two small ones.*
9 *The goldfish is* ***in*** *the bowl.*
10 *They're standing* ***opposite*** *each other.*

### We use *at*:

- **in the expressions:**
  **at school/university/college, at work, at home, at the top of ..., at the bottom of ...**
- **with addresses when we mention the house number.**
  **at 15**, Rose Street **but in** Rose Street

### We use *in*:

- **in the expressions:**
  **in the middle, in the air, in the sky, in bed, in hospital, in prison, in a newspaper/magazine/book, in a picture, in a street, in the world**
- **with the names of cities, countries and continents.**
  **in** Paris, **in** Turkey, **in** Europe, **in** Africa

### We use *on*:

- **in the expressions:**
  **on the left/right ,**
  **on the first/second, etc. floor,**
  **on a chair but in an armchair**

**6** **Underline the correct word(s).**

1 There is a nice picture of our town ***on/at/in*** this magazine.
2 The dog is hiding ***in/under/on*** the chair.
3 Let's go shopping ***in/at/opposite*** Oxford Street.
4 Read the note ***at/under/in*** the bottom of the page.
5 The Jacksons live ***at/in/on*** the second floor.
6 John is ***in/near/behind*** bed at the moment. He's not feeling very well.
7 The bakery is ***at/opposite/on*** the park.
8 Grandmother loves sitting ***on/at/in*** her favourite armchair by the fire.
9 Sarah sits ***under/beside/in*** me at school.
10 There is a playground ***at/under/near*** the bank.
11 Look at the stars ***between/in/at*** the sky.
12 My house is ***between/on/among*** the bank and the post office.
13 After the party, there was rubbish ***in/at/on*** the floor.
14 Let's meet ***on/between/at*** the theatre.
15 There's a very interesting article about UFOs ***in/on/at*** the newspaper today.

**7** **Fill in the gaps with** *at, on, in, behind* **or** *next to*. **Some of them can be used more than once.**

This is Mrs Jacobs. She's a teacher. This is her classroom. There are some shelves **(1)** ...*on*... the wall. There are lots of books **(2)** ..... the shelves. There are some tables **(3)** ..... the classroom. Some children are sitting **(4)** ..... a table. **(5)** ..... the table there is a small basket. The children keep their crayons and pencils **(6)** ..... this basket. Mrs Jacobs is standing **(7)** ..... the table, **(8)** ..... John. John is standing up, but the other children are sitting **(9)** ..... their chairs.

**8** **Fill in the gaps with an appropriate preposition.**

1 A: Where are my keys?
B: Probably ...*in*... your pocket.
2 A: I like to sit ..... the window on planes.
B: So do I. I like to see the clouds.
3 A: Where shall I put the cups?
B: .....the table, please.
4 A: Where is the cat? I can't see it.
B: It's ..... the table.
5 A: Where is your house?
B: It's ..... the supermarket and the greengrocer's.
6 A: Where's the newspaper?
B: It's ..... the floor.
7 A: Where's the post office in this town?
B: It's ..... Mill Street.
8 A: Were you born ..... England?
B: No, I was born ..... Italy.
9 A: Where does your dog sleep?
B: .....the garden.
10 A: Where shall I put this table?
B: ..... the sofa and the armchair.

**9** **Fill in the gaps with** *on, in front of, under, in, opposite, between, near* **or** *behind*.

There is a lot of furniture **(1)** ...*in*... the room. There is a fire-guard **(2)** ..... the large fireplace. **(3)** ..... the fireplace there is a table. There's a rug **(4)** ..... the table. There is a small round table **(5)** ..... two armchairs. There is a piano **(6)** ..... the armchairs. There is a small yellow sofa **(7)** ..... the green sofa. There are some pictures **(8)** ..... the walls.

**10** **Choose the correct item.**

1 I'm going to a party ...*C*... the weekend.
**A** in **B** – **C** at
2 We have a big garden ..... our house.
**A** among **B** behind **C** between
3 I'm going to the dentist's ..... tomorrow morning.
**A** at **B** on **C** –
4 Sit ..... the fire. It will keep you warm.
**A** beside **B** in **C** under
5 I found a gold coin ..... some shells on the beach.
**A** among **B** at **C** in
6 Joan sits ..... Mary and Anne at school.
**A** at **B** among **C** between
7 Put the chicken ..... the oven.
**A** at **B** behind **C** in

# Prepositions of Movement

**We use prepositions of movement to show the direction in which somebody or something is moving. These include: along, across, up, down, into, out of, over, from ... to ..., round, onto and through.**

*The lorry is going **along** the road.*

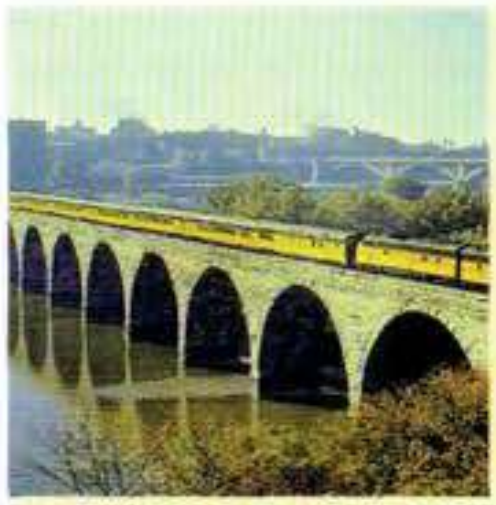
*They're walking **across** the street.*

*They're going **up** the steps.*

*They're coming **down** the steps.*

*He's getting **into** the taxi.*

*He's coming **out of** the building.*



*The train is going **over** the bridge. It's going **from** London **to** York.*

*The Big Wheel is going **round**.*

*He's jumping **over** the hurdle.*

*She's getting **onto** the bus.*

*The planes are going **through** the clouds.*

**Note:**

**When we talk about a means of transport, we use the preposition by.**

*e.g.* ***by car*** / ***bus*** / ***train*** / ***taxi*** / ***plane*** / ***boat*** **but on** foot

**When there is an article (a/an/the), a possessive adjective (my, your, etc.) or the possessive case before the means of transport, we do not use the preposition by.**

*e.g.* ***on the*** *train (NOT: ~~by the train~~)*
***in my*** *car (NOT: ~~by my car~~)*
***on the*** *6 o'clock bus* / ***in a*** *taxi* / ***on the*** *plane* / ***in Ted's*** *car*

## 11 Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition.

1 A: Where is Mr Brown?
B: He has just gone...*into*... his office.
2 A: Why are you looking at the map?
B: Because I want to see if there's another way of getting to the village instead of going ..... the forest.
3 A: What's that noise?
B: There's a plane flying ..... the house.
4 A: Where does this train go?
B: It goes ..... Newcastle ..... Edinburgh.
5 A: How do I get to the post office from here?
B: Just walk ..... the corner and you'll see it.
6 A: Where is your football?
B: It rolled ..... the hill and fell into the river.
7 A: When did you see Betty?
B: I saw her when I came ..... the office this morning.
8 A: Why are you tired?
B: Because I just ran ..... the hill.

## 12 Underline the correct preposition.

The two men are **(1)** ***on/over*** the floor. They have been fighting and they have just fallen **(2)** ***up/down*** the stairs together. One of them is crawling **(3)** ***along/through*** the floor. He is trying to escape. The other man, who is **(4)** ***between/behind*** him, is also **(5)** ***on/at*** the floor. They are both quite **(6)** ***near/in*** the door. The first man wants to get **(7)** ***out of/through*** the room. **(8)** ***Near/Over*** the two men there is a table which has a plant **(9)** ***onto/on*** it.

## 13 Correct the mistakes.

1 The car is going over the street.
2 Uncle Jim fell through the stairs yesterday.
3 I live in 14, South Grove.
4 The Eiffel Tower is on Paris.
5 Let's have a party on next Saturday.

# Revision Box

## 14 Choose the correct item.

1 Diana ...*C*... her house at the moment.
**A** had painted **B** paints **C** is painting
2 Bob ..... fishing every weekend, but he doesn't any more.
**A** used to go **B** goes **C** has gone
3 The sun ..... yesterday, so we went to the beach.
**A** shines **B** was shining **C** is shining
4 I ..... for two hours when I decided to stop for a rest.
**A** had been driving **B** drove **C** was driving
5 ..... we invite Tom and Mary to the party on Saturday?
**A** Shall **B** Will **C** Do
6 My parents ..... buy me a computer for my birthday.
**A** shall **B** are going to **C** should
7 This table ..... by my father.
**A** has made **B** made **C** was made
8 They ..... dinner and then they went for a walk.
**A** are eating **B** ate **C** had eaten
9 The party ..... when I arrived.
**A** had already started **B** is starting **C** starts
10 The man ..... to hospital in an ambulance.
**A** was taken **B** is taken **C** has taken

## 15 Complete each sentence with two to five words including the word in bold.

1 The plants will die if you don't water them.
**unless** The plants ...*will die unless you water*... them.
2 I think you should move to a bigger house.
**would** If I ..... move to a bigger house.
3 Sandra regrets not going to university.
**had** Sandra ..... to university.
4 Why don't you tidy your room?
**wish** I ..... your room.
5 Unless I have a ladder, I won't be able to paint the ceiling.
**if** I won't be able to paint the ceiling ..... ..... a ladder.
6 I was late because I didn't set the alarm clock.
**had** If I ..... the alarm clock, I wouldn't have been late.

## Linking Words

**We usually use linking words to join two sentences together. They express time, contrast, reason, result, etc.**

**The part of the new sentence which contains the linking word is called a clause of time/reason, etc. (depending on the kind of linking word used) and the rest of the sentence is the main clause.**

*e.g. I was angry. I didn't say anything.* ***Although*** *I was angry, I didn't say anything.*

**clause of contrast** **main clause**

## Expressing Reason/Result

- **The word because introduces a clause of reason. When the clause of reason comes before the main clause, they are separated with a comma. When the clause of reason follows, no comma is used.**
  *e.g.* ***Because*** *it was hot, I opened the window.*
  *I opened the window* ***because*** *it was hot.*

- **The word so introduces a clause of result. The clause of result always comes after the main clause and is separated with a comma.**
  *e.g. It was hot,* ***so*** *I opened the window.*

**16** **Rewrite the sentences using** so **or** *because*, **as in the examples.**

1 Simon was put in prison because he robbed a bank.
*Simon robbed a bank, so he was put in prison.*
2 Lisa was cold, so she put on a sweater.
*Lisa put on a sweater because she was cold.*
3 Because I was hungry, I made a sandwich.
.....
4 It was my birthday, so I had a party.
.....
5 I went to bed late last night, so I feel tired today.
.....
6 I washed my clothes because they were dirty.
.....
7 She forgot to turn off the oven, so the food was burnt.
.....
8 Because we were bored, we went for a walk.
.....
9 The boss was angry because Jenny was late.
.....
10 Frank's hair was too long, so he went to the hairdresser's.
.....

## Expressing Time

**We express time with the following words: when, while, before, after, till/ until, etc.**

- **When the time clause comes before the main clause, they are separated with a comma. When the time clause comes after, no comma is used.**
  *e.g.* ***Before*** *you leave for Paris, please phone me.*
  *Please phone me* ***before*** *you leave for Paris.*

- **Time clauses follow the rule of the sequence of tenses. When the verb in the main clause is in a present/future tense or the imperative, then the verb in the time clause is in a present tense. We do not use future tenses in time clauses.**
  **Present tenses: present simple/continuous, present perfect simple/continuous.**
  *e.g. You* ***can*** *stay here* ***as long as*** *you* ***like****.*
  *He* ***will give*** *us the money* ***after*** *he* ***is/has been*** *paid.*
  ***Tidy*** *your room* ***before*** *you* ***go*** *out.*
  ***Keep*** *quiet* ***while I'm working****.*

  **When the verb in the main clause is in a past tense, then the verb in the time clause is in a past tense.**
  **Past tenses: past simple/continuous, past perfect simple/continuous.**
  *e.g. She* ***had*** *breakfast* ***after*** *she* ***had taken*** *a shower.*
  ***Before*** *he* ***left****, he* ***called*** *a taxi.*
  *He* ***had been reading*** *a novel for two hours* ***before*** *he* ***went*** *out.*

**Study the following table:**

| Main clause | | Time clause |
|---|---|---|
| present / future / imperative | → | present / present perfect |
| past simple / past perfect | → | past simple / past perfect |

**17** **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

1 I won't leave until you ...*are*... **(be)** ready.
2 She was playing the piano while I ..... **(read)** a book.
3 The guests arrived after she ..... **(clean)** the house.
4 He thought about my proposal carefully before he ..... **(make)** a decision.
5 When I ..... **(see)** him, I will recognise him.

## Expressing Contrast

**We express contrast with the following linking words: but, although/even though/though, despite/in spite of, however, etc.**

- **but**
  *e.g. He was tired,* ***but*** *he went to the party.*

- **although/even though/though + subject + verb**
  **Even though is more emphatic than although. Though is used in everyday speech.**
  *e.g.* ***Although/Even though/Though she had*** *a cold, she went to work.*
  *She went to work* ***although/even though/though*** *she had a cold.*
  **Though can also go at the end of a sentence where it means 'however'.**
  *e.g. He is old. He is energetic,* ***though****.*

- **in spite of/despite + noun/-ing form**
  *e.g.* ***In spite of/Despite the rain,*** *we went for a walk.*
  *Mary didn't hurry* ***in spite of/despite being*** *late.*
  **in spite of/despite + the fact that...**
  *e.g.* ***In spite of/Despite the fact that*** *it was raining, we went for a walk.*

- **however**
  **However usually goes at the beginning of a sentence to introduce a contrasting idea and is followed by a comma.**
  *e.g. I was sleepy.* ***However,*** *I watched the film.*

**18** **Fill in the gaps with *although/even though* or *in spite of/despite*.**

1 ...*Although/Even though*... we were late, we caught the bus.
2 The plate broke, ..... it landed on the carpet.
3 ..... her rudeness, she's actually a nice person.
4 They didn't find the ring ..... looking everywhere for it.
5 He's got grey hair ..... he's only twenty-five.
6 He wasn't wearing a coat ..... the cold weather.
7 ..... being old, my grandmother loves playing tennis.
8 ..... they are brothers, they don't look alike.

**19** **Complete the sentences.**

1 They like going on holiday, but they don't like flying.
Although they *like going on holiday, they don't like flying.*
2 The car is old, but it's in good condition.
Though the car ..... .
3 It was snowing, but we went out for a walk.
In spite of the fact ..... .
4 Danny is tall, but Sandra is short.
Danny is tall. However, ..... .
5 It was a hot day, but he wore a warm coat.
Although it ..... .
6 Bill was busy. He helped me with my homework.
Even though Bill was ..... .
7 She fell over, but she didn't hurt herself.
Despite falling ..... .

**20** **Match column A with column B in order to make correct sentences.**

| Column A | Column B |
|---|---|
| 1 Bob phoned Ed, | a after she had packed everything. |
| 2 Kate called a taxi | b so they lit a fire. |
| 3 Tom was fired | c but he wasn't at home. |
| 4 They were cold, | d I don't think she's suitable for the job. |
| 5 Although I like Joan, | e because he was late for work every day. |

# Revision 4 (Units 1 - 20)

## 1 Choose the correct item.

1 They ...B... for a new house at the moment.
A have been looking B are looking
C look

2 She ..... her driving test.
A has just passed B is passing C passes

3 I think I ..... shopping on Saturday afternoon.
A to go B have been C will go

4 Be careful! You ..... that plate!
A are dropping B are going to drop C drop

5 Ben looks tired. He ..... hard all day long.
A had been working B has been working
C is working

6 When I left home this morning, it ..... .
A was raining B is raining C rains

7 By the time I got there, Bill ..... .
A had already left B left C is leaving

8 I ..... three years old when my sister was born.
A am B was being C was

9 Miss Jones ..... two cups of tea today.
A has drunk B is drinking C drinks

10 Sarah ..... my best friend since 1992.
A was B is being C has been

## 2 Fill in the gaps with *must*, *mustn't* or *needn't*.

1 A: You ...*needn't*... hurry at the shop. I won't start cooking until you get back.
B: Alright. I'll take my time.
A: You ..... remember to buy eggs. You ..... forget because I need them for the cake.

2 A: Can I use the scissors?
B: Yes, but you ..... use them unless there is an adult with you, and you ..... be very careful. You might hurt yourself.

3 A: ..... I tidy my room today, Mum?
B: No, you ..... do it today, but you ..... do it before your friends come on Saturday.

4 A: Dinner is ready. You ..... wash your hands before you eat.
B: Okay, but first I ..... take off my boots.
A: It's alright. You ..... do that because I haven't cleaned the floor yet.
B: No, really, I ..... take them off because they're very dirty.

5 A: I'm going to the supermarket. Are you coming with me?
B: ..... I come?
A: You ..... come if you don't want to. I'll go by myself.

## 3 Complete the sentences with an appropriate modal verb.

1 **Why don't we buy** some new furniture for the house?
*Shall we buy* some new furniture for the house?

2 **You aren't allowed to use** the office computers.
..... the office computers.

3 **It is possible that Kelly is** at her brother's.
..... at her brother's.

4 **Would you like me to call** your parents for you?
..... your parents for you?

5 **I advise you to go** to university.
..... to university.

6 **Richard managed to buy** a new car after saving for months.
..... a new car after saving for months.

7 **I'm sure Alex isn't** at work.
..... at work.

8 **Perhaps Eric will have** time to come shopping with us.
..... time to come shopping with us.

9 **It isn't necessary for you to do** the washing-up now.
..... the washing-up now.

10 **I'm sure he is** French.
..... French.

## 4 Fill in the gaps with the correct *relative adverb* or *pronoun* where necessary.

Yesterday, Amanda met a very interesting man in the library **1)** ...*where*... she works. He was looking for a book **2)** ..... he needed for some research he was doing about ancient Egypt. He told her that he worked for a director **3)** ..... was making a TV programme about ancient civilizations. Amanda showed him the books **4)** ..... he was looking for. She asked him for the date **5)** ..... the programme would be shown on TV. When she watched it the following month, the presenter said, 'I'd like to thank the lady **6)** ..... help in the library was very useful.' Amanda was very pleased and that's **7)** ..... she's decided to start watching that programme more often.

## 5 Rewrite the sentences in the *passive*.

1 They must prepare the food tonight.
*The food must be prepared tonight.*
2 Someone attacked Sam on Saturday night.
.....
3 The maid makes the beds every morning.
.....
4 He will write the letter next week.
.....
5 Gary had finished the project.
.....
6 Catherine is baking the birthday cake.
.....
7 Did Alison inform the police?
.....
8 The police were watching the burglars.
.....
9 We have to wash the dishes before we go out.
.....
10 You must complete your homework tonight.
.....
11 They may paint their house this summer.
.....
12 They teach three languages at that school.
.....
13 Tara was driving the car.
.....
14 Who wrote that poem?
.....
15 Mrs Jefferson was tidying the kitchen.
.....
16 The boss is going to offer Andrew a better post.
.....

## 6 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1 I will help you with the shopping later if I ...*have*... (have) time.
2 Unless you ..... (leave) now, you'll miss the train.
3 If I were you, I ..... (not/buy) a second-hand car.
4 If only it ..... (stop) snowing, we could go outside.
5 Paul had a car accident yesterday. He wishes he ..... (be) more careful.
6 If William ..... (pay) the electricity bill, it wouldn't have been cut off.
7 Sarah wishes she ..... (not/have to) work so hard every day.
8 I wish you ..... (not/make) a mess in the kitchen every time you cook something.

## 7 Turn the following into reported speech.

1 'I'll cook dinner tonight,' Mary said to Anna.
*Mary told Anna that she would cook dinner that night.*
.....
2 'Why are you crying?' Mother asked Tommy.
.....
3 'Please, please lend me some money,' the woman said to the rich man.
.....
4 'Don't knock on the door so loudly,' Mr Smith said to the children.
.....
5 'Coffee is grown in Brazil,' the teacher said to the students.
.....
6 'Can you come at four instead of five tomorrow afternoon?' Rick asked me.
.....
7 'I have never seen that woman before,' the man said to the policemen.
.....
8 'I'll buy you a new toy train for your birthday,' Grandpa said to Alex.
.....
9 'What time is Paul coming?' I asked.
.....
10 'Call me as soon as you hear about the results,' the boss said to me.
.....

## 8 Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers.

**Doris Alder** is Peter's neighbour. She lives **in the house which is opposite his**. She is **67 years old**, but she still does many things for herself. Her favourite hobbies are **knitting and swimming**. She goes swimming **twice a week**. Every Saturday morning, Doris and Peter **go shopping** together. They take the bus into town and they come home **by taxi**. Peter admires Doris **because she is a very active person**.

1 *Who is Peter's neighbour?*
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....

## 9 Choose the correct item.

1 Don't take that money from the table. It's ...*B*... .
A me B mine C my

2 Dora is crying. She has cut ..... .
A she B her C herself

3 Is that ..... book?
A your B yours C you

4 ..... William and Thomas enjoy playing cricket.
A Both B All C Neither

5 That's my pencil. Please give it to ..... .
A I B my C me

6 Sam, Paul and Terry are ..... in the same class at school.
A both B all C neither

7 There's the shopping. Please put ..... away in the kitchen.
A itself B its C it

8 Enjoy ..... at the party, Beth. Have a good time!
A your B you C yourself

9 ..... Ruth nor Wendy has got curly hair.
A All B Both C Neither

10 Jeff, Alice and Rosie are all young. ..... of them are old.
A None B All C Both

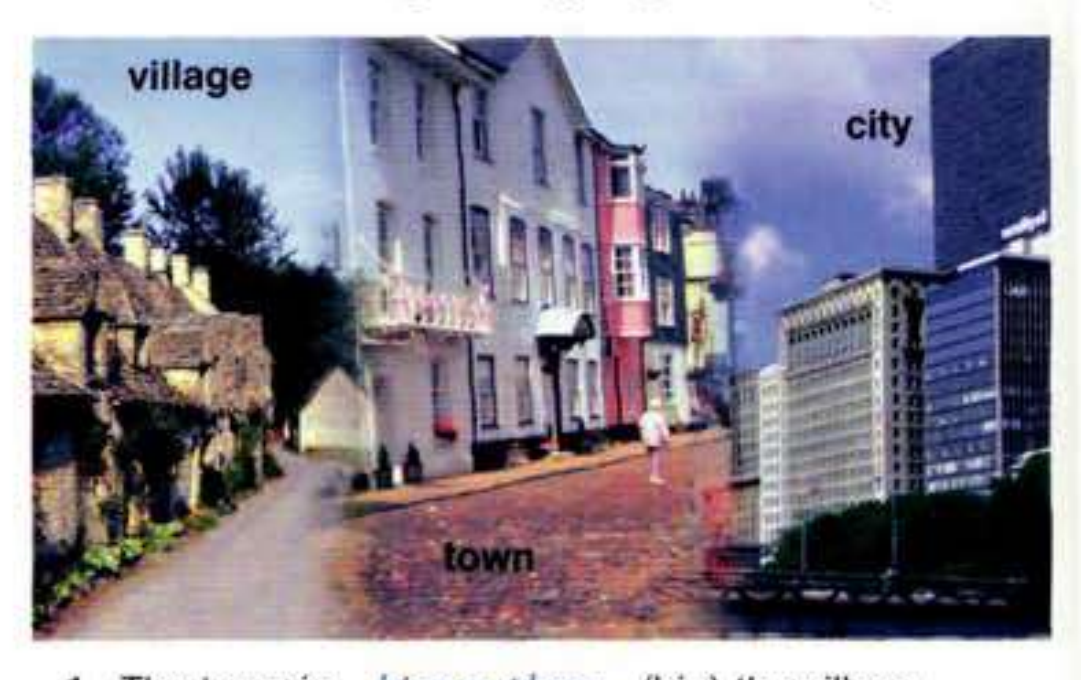
## 10 Put in *a/an* or *the*.

1 This is ...*a*... very boring book. I don't want to read it.
2 ..... film was very exciting – I enjoyed it.
3 Tom is ..... teacher at ..... school I used to go to.
4 Do you know ..... answer to this question?
5 I watched ..... interesting programme on TV last night.
6 ..... bakery is closed every Saturday afternoon.
7 Simon hasn't got ..... job at ..... moment, but he's going for ..... interview next week.
8 ..... amazing thing happened to me the other day; I won ..... lottery!
9 ..... man who lives next door to me is ..... vet. He's ..... really nice man.
10 My father is ..... doctor and he works at ..... hospital which is near our house.
11 Don't forget to lock ..... door when you leave.
12 Terry sold his old bicycle so that he could buy ..... new one.
13 I found ..... old coin on the beach the other day.
14 Mr Willis is ..... only person I know in this area.

## 11 Complete the sentences with comparatives/superlatives adding any necessary words.

1 Danny is clever, but Melanie is ...*more clever/cleverer than*... he is.
2 Russia is a big country. In fact, it is ..... ..... country ..... the world.
3 Many fruits are sweet, but I think that grapes are ..... fruit ..... all.
4 I'm tall, but my sister is ..... I am.
5 My grandfather is a very generous man. He is ..... ..... anyone else I know.
6 Chocolate ice-cream tastes good, but strawberry ice-cream tastes even ..... chocolate.
7 I am young, but my brother is ..... person ..... our family.
8 Pamela's parents are rich, but Brian's parents are ..... Pamela's.
9 Apple pie is delicious, but cherry pie is ..... ..... all.
10 Billy and Steven are funny. They are ..... ..... boys ..... my class.

## 12 Fill in the gaps with the *comparative* or *superlative* form of the adjectives in brackets, adding any necessary words.




1 The town is ...*bigger than*... (big) the village.
2 The village is ..... (small) all.
3 The city is ..... (big) all.
4 There is ..... (much) traffic in a city ..... in a village.
5 The city has ..... (many) offices ..... the town.
6 The village is ..... (quiet) all.
7 The city is ..... (noisy) all.
8 There are ..... (many) people in the city ..... in the village.
9 There are ..... (few) shops in the village ..... in the city.
10 There are ..... (good) cinemas in the city ..... in the town.

## 13 Underline the correct answer.

A: Why are you crying, William?
B: Because I've lost my favourite toy car. I left it **(1) *nowhere/somewhere/anywhere*** but I can't remember where.
A: Have you looked for it?
B: Yes, but I can't find it **(2) *anywhere/everywhere/nowhere***.
A: Did you ask **(3) *someone/no one/anyone*** if they had seen it?
B: I asked **(4) *everyone/someone/no one*** in my class and **(5) *any/no/some*** teachers too, but **(6) *anybody/nobody/somebody*** had seen it.
A: Well, never mind, I'll buy you **(7) *anything/everything/something*** else.
B: I don't want **(8) *nothing/anything/everything*** else – I want my favourite toy car!
A: William, what's that in your pocket?
B: It's my car! It was here all the time!

## 14 Fill in the gaps with *some, any, no, every* or one of their derivatives.

1 A: I would like ...*some*... jam on my toast.
B: I'm sorry, I haven't got ..... .
2 A: Mum, there's ..... toothpaste left.
B: There's a new tube in the bathroom cupboard.
3 A: Can I do ..... to help?
B: No, thank you.
4 A: Would you like ..... cheese?
B: No, thank you. Don't put ..... on my plate.
5 A: Did you know many people at the party?
B: Yes! I knew ..... !
6 A: Do you often go to the gym?
B: Yes. I go ..... day.
7 A: Do you know where the new café is?
B: It's ..... in the shopping centre.
8 A: Sorry, what did you say?
B: ..... . I only coughed.
9 A: This exercise is very difficult.
B: It's easy Jack! ..... could do it!
10 A: Who told you about it?
B: ..... . I found out myself.
11 A: Mum, I've baked a cake!
B: I know. The kitchen's a mess. There's flour ..... !
12 A: Where did you go on holiday last year?
B: ..... . I stayed at home.

## 15 Put the verbs in brackets into *the infinitive* or *the -ing form*.

1 A: Did you enjoy ...*travelling*... (travel) around Europe?
B: Yes, but it's nice ..... (be) back home.
2 A: Where's Mum?
B: She's gone to the shop ..... (buy) some eggs and milk.
3 A: Have you finished your letter yet?
B: No. I only started ..... (write) it five minutes ago.
4 A: What did you do on Saturday afternoon?
B: I went ..... (cycle) with my family.
5 A: We must ..... (go) in a minute.
B: I know. I'm almost ready.
6 A: I don't like ..... (do) all the housework by myself.
B: I'll help you with it.
7 A: Was Uncle John pleased ..... (see) you?
B: Yes. He was very surprised.
8 A: Can I ask you something?
B: I'm busy ..... (work) at the moment. Ask me later.

## 16 Correct the mistakes.

1 Neither John and Sally likes swimming.
2 I don't want nothing to eat at the moment.
3 You needn't run across the road. It's dangerous.
4 Have you never been to Italy?
5 I was running very fast when I was young, but I can't now.
6 Tom was the man which helped me paint my house.
7 Sandra had visited the zoo with her friends yesterday.

# Irregular Verbs

| Infinitive | Past | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|
| be | was | been |
| bear | bore | born(e) |
| beat | beat | beaten |
| become | became | become |
| begin | began | begun |
| bite | bit | bitten |
| blow | blew | blown |
| break | broke | broken |
| bring | brought | brought |
| build | built | built |
| burn | burnt (burned) | burnt (burned) |
| burst | burst | burst |
| buy | bought | bought |
| can | could | (been able to) |
| catch | caught | caught |
| choose | chose | chosen |
| come | came | come |
| cost | cost | cost |
| cut | cut | cut |
| deal | dealt | dealt |
| dig | dug | dug |
| do | did | done |
| draw | drew | drawn |
| dream | dreamt (dreamed) | dreamt (dreamed) |
| drink | drank | drunk |
| drive | drove | driven |
| eat | ate | eaten |
| fall | fell | fallen |
| feed | fed | fed |
| feel | felt | felt |
| fight | fought | fought |
| find | found | found |
| fly | flew | flown |
| forbid | forbade | forbidden |
| forget | forgot | forgotten |
| forgive | forgave | forgiven |
| freeze | froze | frozen |
| get | got | got |
| give | gave | given |
| go | went | gone |
| grow | grew | grown |
| hang | hung (hanged) | hung (hanged) |
| have | had | had |
| hear | heard | heard |
| hide | hid | hidden |
| hit | hit | hit |
| hold | held | held |
| hurt | hurt | hurt |
| keep | kept | kept |
| know | knew | known |
| lay | laid | laid |
| lead | led | led |
| learn | learnt (learned) | learnt (learned) |

| Infinitive | Past | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|
| leave | left | left |
| lend | lent | lent |
| let | let | let |
| lie | lay | lain |
| light | lit | lit |
| lose | lost | lost |
| make | made | made |
| mean | meant | meant |
| meet | met | met |
| pay | paid | paid |
| put | put | put |
| read | read | read |
| ride | rode | ridden |
| ring | rang | rung |
| rise | rose | risen |
| run | ran | run |
| say | said | said |
| see | saw | seen |
| sell | sold | sold |
| send | sent | sent |
| set | set | set |
| sew | sewed | sewn |
| shake | shook | shaken |
| shine | shone | shone |
| shoot | shot | shot |
| show | showed | shown |
| shut | shut | shut |
| sing | sang | sung |
| sit | sat | sat |
| sleep | slept | slept |
| smell | smelt (smelled) | smelt (smelled) |
| speak | spoke | spoken |
| spell | spelt (spelled) | spelt (spelled) |
| spend | spent | spent |
| spill | spilt | spilt |
| spoil | spoilt (spoiled) | spoilt (spoiled) |
| spread | spread | spread |
| stand | stood | stood |
| steal | stole | stolen |
| stick | stuck | stuck |
| sting | stung | stung |
| strike | struck | struck |
| swear | swore | sworn |
| sweep | swept | swept |
| swim | swam | swum |
| take | took | taken |
| teach | taught | taught |
| tear | tore | torn |
| tell | told | told |
| think | thought | thought |
| throw | threw | thrown |
| understand | understood | understood |
| wake | woke | woken |
| wear | wore | worn |
| win | won | won |
| write | wrote | written |

# Key to the Exercises

# UNIT 1: Present Continuous - Present Simple

**1**

| |
|---|
| **+ ing**<br>studying, mending, trying, cooking, sleeping |
| **~~ie~~ ➡ y + ing**<br>lying, dying |
| **~~e~~ ➡ ing**<br>diving, writing, taking |
| **double consonant + ing**<br>swimming, shopping, stopping, sitting |

**2**

2 am/'m not doing
3 Is Dad painting
4 is/'s running
5 are playing
6 is/'s studying
7 are making
8 Are you listening

**3**

2 are having
3 are wearing
4 is wearing
5 are smiling
6 are talking
7 are listening
8 is drinking
9 is eating
10 are enjoying

**4**

2 SA: Are the four people having dinner?
SB: Yes, they are.
3 SA: Are the children talking?
SB: No, they aren't. They are listening.
4 SA: Is the girl drinking some juice?
SB: No, she isn't. She's drinking some Coke.
5 SA: Is the boy eating some ice-cream?
SB: No, he isn't. He's eating some bread.

**5**

| -s | -es | -ies |
|---|---|---|
| opens<br>prays<br>puts<br>likes<br>says<br>plays<br>begins | mixes<br>misses<br>does<br>catches<br>washes<br>watches<br>passes | dries<br>cries<br>copies |

**6**

2 Do you come
3 play
4 leave
5 does not/n't know

**7**

| | |
|---|---|
| / s / | looks, speaks, kicks, puts, walks, jumps, coughs, helps, writes, eats |
| / ɪz / | catches, brushes, dances, closes, watches, washes, loses, changes |
| / z / | drives, rides, opens, plays, knows, sees, listens, travels, rains |

**8**

2 dances
3 is/'s working
4 do you do
5 are you packing, am/'m flying
6 doesn't know
7 is/'s taking

**9**

2 Is he always on time for work?
3 Karen sometimes has cereal for breakfast.
4 Paul doesn't usually listen to music in the evening.
5 The children rarely help with the housework.
6 Must you always play your music so loud?
7 Sheila can never park her car properly.

**10**

2 always gets up
3 starts
4 is not/n't
5 is packing
6 is going
7 is singing
8 is looking for
9 is calling
10 leaves/is leaving
11 is Charlie going

**11**

3 SA: Does Charlie start work at 4 o'clock every morning?
SB: Yes, he does.
4 SA: Is Charlie going on holiday next week?
SB: No, he isn't. He's going on holiday today.
5 SA: Is Charlie singing to himself?
SB: Yes, he is.
6 SA: Is Charlie looking for his tickets right now?
SB: Yes, he is.
7 SA: Is the plane leaving/Does the plane leave in an hour?
SB: Yes, it is/does.
8 SA: Is Charlie going to Tahiti?
SB: No, he isn't. He's going to Hawaii.

**12**

2 What does the nurse do?
She looks after patients.
Is she looking after patients now?
No, she isn't. She's reading a book.
3 What does the maid do?
She cleans the house.
Is she cleaning the house now?
No, she isn't She's talking on the phone.
4 What does the vet do?
He treats animals.
Is he treating animals now?
No, he isn't. He's listening to music.
5 What does the mechanic do?
He repairs cars.
Is he repairing cars now?
No, he isn't. He's eating a sandwich.
6 What does the waiter do?
He serves customers.
Is he serving customers now?
No, he isn't. He's reading a newspaper.

**13**

2 Do I know
3 think
4 is starring
5 is/'s
6 is he coming
7 need
8 loves
9 enjoys
10 is he staying
11 wants
12 doesn't like
13 is/'s staying

**14**

2 does this sign mean
3 usually meet
4 is/'s training
5 owns
6 are playing
7 doesn't usually have
8 buys
9 are not/n't going
10 Does Pièrre speak, speaks

**15**

2 'm writing
3 am/'m repairing
4 usually ride
5 start
6 finish
7 have
8 'm working
9 'm
10 is leaving
11 worry

**16**

1 Steve **is going** fishing tomorrow.
2 Rebecca **washes** her hair every day.
3 **I visit** my grandparents every week.
4 Tim doesn't **want** to do his homework.
5 He **is sitting** on the floor at the moment.
6 Do you **always** watch TV in the evenings?
7 Sarah **drinks** coffee every morning.
8 They don't **usually** go on holiday in May.
9 Does she work late? No, she **never** does.
10 Peter **is looking** for a new house at the moment.

**17**

1 are/'re always leaving
2 Do you like, does it cost
3 is, is/'s snowing

## Oral Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

A Mrs Henderson usually cooks.
The children usually watch TV.

B Mrs Henderson is sitting under a tree. She is reading a magazine.
Tom is riding his bicycle.
Mary is drawing a picture.

## Writing Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

... usually cooks and Tom and Mary usually watch TV.

... is sitting under a tree. She is reading a magazine. Tom is riding his bicycle and Mary is drawing a picture.

# UNIT 2: Past Simple - Used to

**1**

| | |
|---|---|
| **+ ed** | prayed, called, missed, enjoyed, looked |
| **+ d** | closed, loved, danced, phoned, lived |
| **-y ➡ ied** | studied, cried, tidied, tried, carried |
| **double consonant + ed** | travelled, stopped, robbed, dropped, referred |

**2**

2 She turned it off half an hour ago.
3 He stopped six months ago.
4 She baked it half an hour ago.
5 She arranged it two weeks ago.
6 He moved three days ago.
7 He tidied it two hours ago.

**3**

| | |
|---|---|
| / ɪd / | arrested, visited, needed, loaded, accepted, persuaded |
| / t / | washed, worked, helped, cooked, finished, watched, laughed, passed, typed |
| / d / | opened, carried, cleaned, lived, stayed, arranged, rubbed |

**4**

2 A Did you watch
B didn't enjoy
3 A Did your neighbours move
B helped
4 A crashed
B survived
5 A didn't play
6 A Did you see
B had

**5**

2 didn't go (definite/stated time)
3 didn't sing (definite/stated time)
4 fought (repeated past action)
5 helped (people who are no longer alive)
6 baked (definite/stated time)
7 Did Sam enjoy (definite/stated time)
8 fell, hurt (actions happening immediately one after the other)

**6**

A 2 decided
3 needed
4 decorated
5 planted
6 made
7 moved

B 2 painted
3 took
4 loved
5 created
6 died

**7**

2 wanted
3 gave
4 left
5 began
6 discovered
7 died
8 took
9 set off
10 survived
11 arrived
12 were

**8**

3 SA: Did they leave Spain in 1619?
SB: No, they didn't. They left Spain in 1519.
4 SA: Was the journey long and dangerous?
SB: Yes, it was.
5 SA: Did Magellan discover the Pacific Ocean?
SB: Yes, he did.
6 SA: Did Magellan die with soldiers in a battle?
SB: Yes, he did.
7 SA: Did a Spanish sailor complete the voyage?
SB: Yes, he did.
8 SA: Did the remaining ship reach Spain in 1523?
SB: No, it didn't. It reached Spain in 1522.

**9**

2 worked
3 did you do
4 took
5 Did you earn
6 spent
7 did you spend
8 went
9 Did you have
10 was

**10**

**(Suggested answer)**

2 SA: Who did you go with?
SB: I went with my parents and my sister.
3 SA: Did you have a good time?
SB: Yes, we did. It was wonderful.
4 SA: Did you stay at a camp-site?
SB: No, we didn't. We stayed at a hotel.
5 SA: Was the weather good?
SB: Yes, it was. It was hot almost every day.

6 SA: What did you do every day?
SB: We drove around the countryside and visited the town.
7 SA: Did you eat at restaurants?
SB: No, we didn't. We usually ate at the hotel, or we went on picnics.
8 SA: Did you go to the beach?
SB: Yes, we did. We often went to the beach in the morning.

**11**

2 Peter used to go to work by bus, but now he goes to work by car.
3 Peter used to eat at home, but now he eats out.
4 Peter used to watch TV, but now he goes to the theatre.
5 Peter used to spend his holidays at a camp-site, but now he spends his holidays travelling.

**12**

2 used to drink
3 used to live
4 Did you use to go
5 didn't use to like
6 didn't use to eat
7 used to play
8 used to spend

**13** **(Ss' own answers)**

**14**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 B | 4 A | 6 A | 8 C | 10 B |
| 3 C | 5 B | 7 B | 9 A | |

### Oral Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

SA: Did people use to dress differently sixty years ago?
SB: Yes, they did.
SA: Did people use to spend more time together sixty years ago?
SB: Yes, they did.
SA: Did people use to talk to each other a lot sixty years ago?
SB: Yes, they did.
SA: Did people use to go out at night much sixty years ago?
SB: No, they didn't.
SA: Did people use to read more sixty years ago?
SB: Yes, they did.

### Writing Activity

1 didn't have/didn't use to have
2 didn't watch / didn't use to watch
3 talked / used to talk
4 don't talk
5 spend
6 dressed / used to dress
7 wore / used to wear
8 wore / used to wear

...Now, everyone wears different clothes. Women don't usually wear long dresses any more and men don't always wear a suit and tie.

Sixty years ago people used to spend/ spent more time together. They used to talk/ talked to each other a lot. They didn't use to go out at night much, but nowadays they do. Sixty years ago people used to read/read more, but nowadays they don't.

# UNIT 3: Past Continuous

**1**

2 SA: What were Jim and Robert doing?
SB: They were checking some reports.
3 SA: What was Sarah doing?
SB: She was talking on the phone.
4 SA: What were the directors doing?
SB: They were having a meeting.
5 SA: What was Mary doing?
SB: She was working on the computer.
6 SA: What was Kim doing?
SB: She was reading a letter.

**2**

2 was sitting
3 was talking
4 were putting
5 were doing
6 was standing
7 were wearing
8 were holding
9 were shouting
10 was waiting

**3**

2 c 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 f

**4**

2 As/When/While Laura was making some tea, she dropped the kettle. Laura was making some tea when she dropped the kettle.
3 As/When/While Mrs Jason was sitting in the garden, it started raining. Mrs Jason was sitting in the garden when it started raining.
4 As/When/While Peter was driving his car, he got a flat tyre. Peter was driving his car when he got a flat tyre.
5 As/When/While she was walking in the park, a dog attacked her. She was walking in the park when a dog attacked her.

**5**

2 were walking, began – "Walking" is the longer action.
3 was repairing, arrived – "Repairing" is the longer action.
4 was eating, rang – "Eating" is the longer action.
5 was riding, dropped – "Riding" is the longer action.
6 saw, were driving – "Driving" is the longer action.
7 was watching, broke down – "Watching"is the longer action.
8 were talking, came – "Talking" is the longer action.

**6**

**(Suggested answer)**
The young man was listening to music.
The two women were talking.
The older man was reading his newspaper.
Two Japanese tourists were drinking soft drinks.

**7**

2 SA: Was the young man listening to music?
SB: Yes, he was.
3 SA: Was the older man reading a book?
SB: No, he wasn't. He was reading a newspaper.
4 SA: Were the women knitting?
SB: No, they weren't. They were talking.
5 SA: Were the Japanese tourists taking pictures?
SB: No, they weren't. They were drinking soft drinks.

**8**

**A**
2 was walking
3 was throwing
4 were running
5 was planting
6 were sitting

**B**
1 were wearing
2 were all carrying
3 was taking
4 was crying
5 was shining
6 were smiling

**9**

**(Suggested answer)**
2 SA: What were you doing at two o'clock this morning?
SB: I was sleeping.
3 SA: What were you doing at half past nine last Sunday evening?
SB: I was watching television.
4 SA: What were you doing an hour ago?
SB: I was playing tennis.
5 SA: What were you doing at noon last Saturday?
SB: I was eating lunch.

**10**

2 was dancing
3 were you laughing
4 drank
5 rode
6 was writing
7 was raining
8 played
9 sang
10 was cleaning

**11**

**A**
2 was driving
3 flew
4 tried
5 crashed
6 was not/wasn't

**B**
1 went
2 was talking
3 arrived
4 gave
5 was
6 ended

**C**
1 tidied
2 was tidying
3 found
4 had
5 did not/didn't want
6 put
7 stored

**12**

2 decided
3 was shining
4 were singing
5 felt
6 was
7 climbed
8 were admiring
9 heard
10 looked
11 did not/didn't see
12 thought
13 saw
14 decided
15 was examining
16 heard
17 said
18 did not/didn't close
19 turned
20 saw
21 knew
22 was watching

**Right order:** C, A, B

**13**

2 was
3 were having
4 was
5 was shining
6 was
7 hit
8 fell
9 was not/wasn't
10 got

**14**

1 Philip was washing the car **when** the fire started.
2 Neil was studying **while** his sister was listening to music.
3 Harriet **opened** the door and walked into the house.
4 We **had** lunch at a lovely restaurant every day when we were on holiday.
5 Brian **was drinking** tea at five o'clock yesterday afternoon.
6 Dad was repairing the TV while Mum **was cooking** dinner.
7 I **went to** the cinema last Saturday.
8 I **bought** a new dress for my party yesterday.
9 While Jeff **was building** the garden shed, he hurt himself.
10 While the teacher **was** speaking, the students were listening to him.

**15**

1 rang
2 is repairing
3 was reading, called
4 Are, do you want
5 were singing, were playing
6 works

**16**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 C | 5 C | 8 A | 11 B |
| 3 C | 6 C | 9 A | 12 C |
| 4 A | 7 C | 10 B | |

### Oral Activity

SA: What was the cashier doing?
SB: He was counting some money.
SA: What did he do when he saw the robbers?
SB: He put his hands up.
SA: What was the child doing?
SB: She was sitting on a chair.
SA: What did she do when she saw the robbers?
SB: She started to cry.
SA: What was the old lady doing?
SB: She was waiting in the queue.
SA: What did she do when she saw the robbers?
SB: She fainted.

### Writing Activity

**(Suggested Answer)**

Dear Martha,

... The manager was talking on the phone. When he saw the robbers he stood up. The cashier was counting some money. When he saw the robbers he put his hands up. A young child was sitting on a chair and she started to cry. An old lady who was waiting in the queue near me fainted. The robbers took some money and left. The police arrested them later that day. It was a terrible experience. I hope I won't have another adventure like that too soon! I'll finish my letter here so that I can post it today. Please write when you have time.

Love,
Jennifer

# UNIT 4: Present Perfect Simple

**1**

2 I haven't had a break since this morning.
3 I haven't travelled abroad since last summer.
4 I haven't watched TV since last night.
5 I haven't bought a present since December.
6 I haven't written a letter since Christmas.
7 I haven't eaten dinner at a restaurant since last month.

**2**

SA: Have you bought a bigger car?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: Have you moved house?
SB: No, I haven't.
SA: Have you got married?
SB: No, I haven't.
SA: Have you finished your studies?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: Have you started taking karate lessons?
SB: Yes, I have.

**3**

2 since
3 since
4 for
5 for
6 for
7 since
8 since
9 for

**4**

2 f
3 a
4 b
5 d
6 e

**5**

1 Since
2 recently
3 yet
4 yet, already
5 always
6 ever, never

**6**

2 has just left
3 haven't eaten
4 have already done
5 haven't dried
6 have already eaten

**7**

2 have... been
3 have gone
4 has gone to
5 have... been
6 has been to
7 have gone to

**8**

2 has been to
3 have been to
4 has gone to
5 have been

**9**

1 have gone
2 Have you written, wrote
3 have you been, got
4 haven't seen, saw
5 Have you typed, finished
6 has known, did they meet, were
7 Have you ever played, played
8 wrote, have read

**10**

**Suggested answer)**

SA: Have you ever planted a tree?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: Where did you plant it?
SB: I planted it in my garden.

SA: Have you ever sung in a choir?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: When did you sing in it?
SB: I sang in a choir when I was at school.

SA: Have you ever saved your money?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: Why did you save it?
SB: Because I wanted to buy a new bicycle.

SA: Have you ever met a politician?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: Who did you meet?
SB: I met the Prime Minister.

SA: Have you ever travelled by boat?
SB: Yes, I have.
SA: When did you travel?
SB: I travelled by boat last summer.

**11**

2 was
3 got
4 have had
5 started
6 asked
7 was
8 broke out
9 was
10 managed
11 made
12 have met
13 have had
14 have bought
15 broke down
16 have just informed
17 hit

**12**

2 have been
3 have done
4 saw
5 got
6 moved
7 did you move
8 haven't unpacked
9 phoned
10 was
11 was
12 wanted

**13**

2 brushed, went
3 Have you ever seen, went
4 haven't seen
5 has gone
6 hasn't played
7 have already seen
8 fell, broke
9 have never heard
10 has always wanted

**14**

2 first time they have visited
3 have not eaten out for
4 Roger played
5 has not been on holiday
6 went to his country house

**15**

1 We **bought** a new sofa last month.
2 Jim **has lived** in Germany for three years.
3 My father has **gone/been** fishing.
4 She **has** just moved house.
5 We **ate** lunch at one o'clock.
6 Sophie has **done** her homework.
7 Ann and Tim **got** married ten years ago.
8 I **have been** at school since nine o'clock.

**16**

2 had
3 didn't come
4 took
5 were
6 were waiting
7 saw
8 had
9 found
10 waited
11 have recently recorded
12 has become
13 lasted
14 am sending
15 took
16 were
17 have heard
18 are giving

### Oral Activity

- He always wanted to be a runner.
- He started running at the age of seven.
- He won the school championship when he was 15 years old.
- He joined the national team four years ago.
- He has won several medals so far.
- He has recently received the *"Athlete of the Year"* award.
- He got married last month.
- He has already taken part in two international championships.

### Writing Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

He always wanted to be a runner. He started running at the age of seven. He won the school championship when he was 15 years old. He joined the national team four years ago and he has won several medals so far. He has recently received the *"Athlete of the Year"* award and he got married last month. He has already taken part in two international championships.

# UNIT 5: The Future

**1**

2 Robots will do most of the work.
3 People won't use electric cars.
4 Pollution will disappear.
5 People won't die of serious diseases.
6 Children won't stop going to school.
7 People will go on holiday to the moon.

**2**

2 Shall we go for a walk?
3 Shall I make some tea?
4 Shall I turn on the radio?
5 Shall we visit them?
6 Shall I get a plaster?

**3**

2 prediction
3 offer
4 on-the-spot decision
5 request

**4**

2 Shall I go to the supermarket for you?
3 Will you pick up the children from school for me, please?
4 Shall we listen to that new CD?
5 Shall I book the tickets for you?
6 Will you take my jacket to the dry-cleaner's for me, please?

**5** **(Ss' own answers)**

**6** **(Ss' own answers)**

**7**

1 are
2 will/'ll call, leave
3 will/'ll write, is
4 will/'ll do, get
5 will/'ll fix, comes
6 will you pack
7 will not/won't do, are
8 will you phone
9 will buy, return
10 passes, will/'ll buy

**8**

2 is going to fall
3 is going to explode
4 is going to rescue

**9**

SA: Is Jennifer going to travel by train?
SB: No, she isn't.
SA: Is Mark going to travel by train?
SB: Yes, he is.
SA: Is Jennifer going to buy any souvenirs?
SB: Yes, she is.
SA: Is Mark going to buy any souvenirs?
SB: Yes, he is.
SA: Is Jennifer going to spend much money?
SB: Yes, she is.
SA: Is Mark going to spend much money?
SB: No, he isn't.
SA: Is Jennifer going to hire a car?
SB: Yes, she is.
SA: Is Mark going to hire a car?
SB: No, he isn't.

**10**

2 am/'m going to help
3 Will you help
4 shall I come
5 will/'ll probably phone
6 will/'ll be
7 Shall we go
8 is/'s going to rain

**11**

2 Shall
3 will/'ll
4 will/'ll
5 Shall
6 are/'re going to

**12**

**A**
- He is going to sell his car.
- He is going to buy a bigger house.
- He is going to marry Susan.
- He is going to apply for a job with a law firm.

**B**
- Mr Brown is coming to collect the car on Tuesday, 9th April.
- He's signing the contract for a new house on Wednesday, 10th April.
- He's having an interview with Mr Ford at 10 o'clock on Friday, 12th April.
- He's getting married on Sunday, 20th June.

**13**

2 is going
3 does the play start
4 is having
5 is singing
6 leaves
7 are moving
8 does the ferry reach

**14**

1 will/'ll post
2 is/'s going to walk
3 is coming

**15**

1 **Shall** I take the children to the playground for you?
2 I'll call you when I **finish** work.
3 Will you **clean** the carpet, please?
4 The film **starts** at 8 o'clock.
5 Wait here until he **comes**.
6 The Queen **won't attend** the parade tomorrow.

**16**

2 have/'ve saved
3 am/'m going to open
4 owned
5 has/'s given
6 thinks
7 will/'ll be
8 has/'s already painted
9 is/'s going to paint
10 need
11 wants
12 am/'m still thinking
13 will like
14 am/'m starting
15 will/'ll probably phone
16 have

## *Oral Activity*

SA: Is Rob going to go to India in the summer?
SB: Yes, he is. Is Molly going to go to India in the summer?
SA: No, she isn't. Is Rob going to appear in a TV show in the summer?
SB: No, he isn't. Is Molly going to appear in a TV show in the summer?
SA: Yes, she is. Is Rob going to go on holiday in August?
SB: Yes, he is. Is Molly going to go on holiday in August?
SA: Yes, she is. Is Rob going to take part in charity events in the summer?
SB: Yes, he is. Is Molly going to take part in charity events in the summer?
SA: Yes, she is. Is Rob going to sing at the Queen Mother's birthday celebrations in the summer?
SB: No, he isn't. Is Molly going to sing at the Queen Mother's birthday celebrations in the summer?
SA: No, she isn't. Is Rob going to make a record in the summer?
SB: Yes, he is. Is Molly going to make a record in the summer?
SA: No, she isn't. Is Rob going to sing in a rock opera in the summer?
SB: No, he isn't. Is Molly going to sing in a rock opera in the summer?
SA: Yes, she is.

## *Writing Activity*

**(Suggested answer)**

... is going to go to India, but Molly isn't. Molly is going to appear in a TV show, but Rob isn't. Rob and Molly are going to go on holiday in August, and they are going to take part in charity events. Rob and Molly aren't going to to sing at the Queen Mother's birthday celebrations. Rob is going to make a record, but Molly isn't. Molly is going to sing in a rock opera, but Rob isn't.

# Revision 1 (Units 1 - 5)

**1**

2 I don't often drink tea in the morning.
3 She usually washes the dishes after dinner.
4 I rarely eat in restaurants.
5 Do they often go for a walk on Sunday afternoons?
6 Do you usually visit your grandparents on Saturdays?
7 Mary is never late for meetings.
8 They don't usually go abroad on holiday.

**2**

2 leaves
3 Are you going
4 am/'m visiting
5 lives
6 live
7 am/'m doing
8 are you studying
9 come
10 am/'m working
11 think
12 Do you like
13 love

**3**

2 was cleaning, was working
3 found, was playing
4 was having, came
5 was knitting, was smoking
6 arrived, was painting
7 were walking, started
8 were you talking, came
9 was reading, knocked
10 was washing, cut
11 broke, was dusting
12 was building, was swimming

**4**

2 began
3 recorded
4 went
5 had
6 stayed
7 made
8 thanked
9 has been
10 have started
11 signed
12 has already written
13 has just announced
14 has started

**5**

1 have been
2 Have ... been to, has been
3 have gone
4 has gone to

**6**

2 since
3 for
4 so far/already
5 already
6 yet
7 yet
8 already/just
9 always
10 ever
11 never
12 just/already

**7**

1 go
2 will not/won't be, have
3 will go, finishes
4 arrive, will/'ll go
5 will/'ll buy, sell
6 get, will/'ll move

**8**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 C | 4 B | 6 B | 8 A |
| 3 A | 5 A | 7 C | 9 B |

**9**

1 Peter **is playing** football at the moment.
2 My parents **bought** a new fridge yesterday.
3 Sarah **has written** three letters so far today.
4 I **go** to the gym every Tuesday.
5 I expect I **will go** shopping on Saturday.
6 **Will you come** with us tomorrow morning?
7 **Have you seen** my dog? He's run away.
8 Mandy will buy a car as soon as she **passes** her driving test.

# UNIT 6: Relatives

**1**

2 SA: Who was Volta?
SB: He was the man who/that invented the electric battery.
3 SA: Who was Columbus?
SB: He was the man who/that discovered America.
4 SA: Who was Von Zeppelin?
SB: He was the man who/that built the first airship.
5 SA: Who were the Kelloggs?
SB: They were the men who/that made the first cornflakes.
6 SA: Who was Cleopatra?
SB: She was the woman who/that ruled Egypt.

**2**

3 A lawnmower is a machine which/that you use to cut grass.
4 A typewriter is a machine which/that you use to type letters.
5 A lion is an animal which/that lives in the jungle.
6 A photocopier is a machine which/that you use to make photocopies.

**3**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | a | 4 | b | 6 | g |
| 3 | f | 5 | e | 7 | c |

**4**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | who/that | **S** | not omitted |
| 3 | which/that | **O** | omitted |
| 4 | who/that | **S** | not omitted |
| 5 | which/that | **O** | omitted |
| 6 | which/that | **S** | not omitted |
| 7 | who/that | **S** | not omitted |
| 8 | who/that | **S** | not omitted |
| 9 | which/that | **O** | omitted |
| 10 | who/that | **S** | not omitted |
| 11 | which/that | **O** | omitted |
| 12 | which/that | **O** | omitted |

**5**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | whose | 7 | who's (has) |
| 3 | who's (has) | 8 | whose |
| 4 | whose | 9 | whose |
| 5 | whose | 10 | who's (has) |
| 6 | who's (is) | | |

**6**

2 a) who/that Max talked to was from Canada.
b) Max talked to was from Canada.
3 a) which/that Debbie is looking at is mine.
b) Debbie is looking at is mine.
4 a) which/that Anna is looking for belonged to her grandmother.
b) Anna is looking for belonged to her grandmother.
5 a) which/that Bob has gone to is near the Town Hall.
b) Bob has gone to is near the Town Hall.
6 a) who/that Sharon had dinner with was her lawyer.
b) Sharon had dinner with was her lawyer.
7 a) which/that they invited me to wasn't very exciting.
b) they invited me to wasn't very exciting.
8 a) who/that I was talking to lives next door.
b) I was talking to lives next door.

**7**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | where | 4 | who | 6 | whose |
| 3 | why | 5 | when | | |

**8**

2 why 3 who 4 which 5 where

**9**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | when | 5 | when | 8 | which |
| 3 | where | 6 | where | | |
| 4 | why | 7 | why | | |

**10**

2 man whose dog often
3 church where we got
4 shop where I bought
5 man who lives in
6 the people whose daughter
7 dog whose owner
8 girl who speaks
9 magazine that I bought
10 boy who ran away
11 hospital where I was
12 that Sophie found

**11**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | who/that | **I** | not omitted |
| 3 | , who is called Sarah, | **NI** | not omitted |
| 4 | which/that | **I** | not omitted |
| 5 | whose | **I** | not omitted |
| 6 | which/that | **I** | omitted |
| 7 | , who is older than me, | **NI** | not omitted |
| 8 | , which is very old, | **NI** | not omitted |
| 9 | which/that | **I** | not omitted |
| 10 | , who is thirty years old, | **NI** | not omitted |
| 11 | who/that | **I** | not omitted |
| 12 | , which is very expensive, | **NI** | not omitted |

**12**

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | B | 4 | C | 6 | C | 8 | C |
| 3 | A | 5 | C | 7 | A | 9 | B |

**13**

1 He's the man **who/that** writes songs for a lot of famous singers.
2 Where's the book I bought last week?
3 That's the woman **whose** house is made of glass.
4 My sister, who is 10 years old, is called Betty.
5 The reason **why** I was late was that I overslept.
6 The man I was talking to is my uncle.
7 That's the hotel **where** I spent my holidays last year.
8 London, **which** is a big city, is the capital of England.

**14**

2 ordered
3 were watching
4 were sleeping
5 were getting
6 appeared
7 were carrying
8 threatened
9 landed
10 managed

**15**

2 A 3 C 4 B 5 A

## Oral Activity

2 Erica met Claire whose husband owns the chalet.
3 Erica met Jack whose son is only three but he can already ski.
4 Erica met Jessie who works for a sports magazine.
5 Erica met Peter who is a famous writer from New York.

## Writing Activity

1 why 2 when 3 where

**(Suggested Answer)**

... is a ski-instructor and a woman called Claire whose husband owns the chalet. I also met Jack whose son is only three but he can already ski. I met Jessie who works for a sports magazine and Peter who is a famous writer from New York.

# UNIT 7: Present Perfect Continuous

**1**

2 SA: How long has Mary been teaching French?
SB: She has been teaching French since 1990.
3 SA: How long have the robbers been hiding in a farmhouse?
SB: They have been hiding in a farmhouse for a week.
4 SA: How long has Peter been making model planes?
SB: He has been making model planes since 1992.
5 SA: How long has Julie been playing the guitar?
SB: She has been playing the guitar for four years.
6 SA: How long have the children been watching TV?
SB: They have been watching TV for two hours.

**2**

2 Has Jim been repairing
3 have been reading
4 Has Ben been swimming
5 has been talking
6 have been writing
7 has not been doing
8 has been staying
9 have been working
10 has been learning

**3**

2 a 4 b 6 d 8 g
3 h 5 c 7 e

**4**

2 My mum has been cooking for three hours.
3 The teams have been playing football for twenty minutes.
4 The headmaster has been speaking for two hours.
5 Bill has been building his house for six months.
6 I have been doing my homework for three hours.

**5**

**(Suggested answer)**

2 SA: Who is/'s your best friend?
SB: Alison.
SA: How long have you known her?
SB: I've known her for ten years.
3 SA: What is/'s your favourite TV programme?
SB: The Travel Show.
SA: How long have you been watching it?
SB: I have been watching it for three years.
4 SA: What is/'s your address?
SB: 21, South Grove.
SA: How long have you lived/been living there?
SB: I have lived/been living there since I was five years old.

5 SA: What is/'s your favourite magazine?
SB: Teenclub.
SA: How long have you been reading it?
SB: I have been reading it for two years.

**6**

2 has/'s been exercising
3 have/'ve been playing
4 has/'s been working

**7**

2 have/'ve been helping
3 has/'s been reading
4 have/'ve been writing
5 have/'ve been training
6 Have you been lifting
7 Has she been studying
8 has/'s been going

**8**

2 SA: Have people been listening to the radio since 1824?
SB: No, they haven't. They've been listening to the radio since 1894.
3 SA: Have people been riding bicycles since 1771?
SB: No, they haven't. They've been riding bi-cycles since 1791.
4 SA: Have people been travelling by plane since 1903?
SB: Yes, they have.
5 SA: Have people been printing books since 1450?
SB: Yes, they have.
6 SA: Have people been using fridges since 1836?
SB: No, they haven't. They've been using fridges since 1856.
7 SA: Have people been using light bulbs since 1868?
SB: No, they haven't. They've been using light bulbs since 1878.
8 SA: Have people been storing food in tins since 1709?
SB: No, they haven't. They've been storing food in tins since 1809.

**9**

2 has/'s just gone
3 has/'s been learning
4 have/'ve known
5 has/'s painted
6 has/'s been sleeping

**10**

A 2 have/'ve looked
3 have not/haven't found

B 1 have/'ve been learning
2 have/'ve already learned

C 1 has/'s been
2 has/'s painted
3 has not/hasn't started

**11**

2 have/'ve finished
3 has/'s just come out
4 have given
5 Have you decided
6 have/'ve been reading *
7 have not/haven't decided
8 have/'ve recently started
9 have/'ve been studying
10 have/'ve visited

*(*"over the last few weeks" – indicates duration)*

**12**

2 yet
3 just
4 always
5 for
6 How long
7 already
8 so far
9 since
10 ever

**13**

2 has been
3 still have not/haven't finished
4 since you last decorated
5 still have not/haven't called

**14**

1 I have **been looking** for him all day. I can't find him.
2 He has **been** trying to fix the car all morning.
3 I have **bought** lots of food this week.
4 I **haven't/have not** brought any shampoo.
5 It has been **snowing,** but it's stopped now.
6 How long **have they** been cleaning the house?
7 I've **known** Lilian for two years.
8 Have you **been crying**? Your eyes are red.

**15**

2 don't know
3 is cooking
4 has been cooking
5 has been mowing
6 always works
7 is doing
8 has been studying
9 never plays
10 is reading
11 is knitting
12 has been knitting
13 hate
14 have been sitting

**16**

A 2 are having/going to have
3 doesn't know
4 phoned
5 asked
6 will/is going to be

B 1 writes
2 is writing
3 will/is going to write

C 1 have had
2 was
3 escaped
4 found
5 was
6 has not/hasn't done

## Oral Activity

2 SA: How long have you been painting pictures?
SB: I've been painting pictures since 1993.
SA: How many pictures have you painted so far?
SB: I've painted 10 pictures.

3 SA: How long have you been taking photos?
SB: I've been taking photos for nine months.
SA: How many photos have you taken so far?
SB: I've taken 300 photos.

4 SA: How long have you been climbing mountains?
SB: I've been climbing mountains since 1992.
SA: How many mountains have you climbed so far?
SB: I've climbed 4 mountains.

5 SA: How long have you been making pots?
SB: I've been making pots for six months.
SA: How many pots have you made so far?
SB: I've made 40 pots.

6 SA: How long have you been writing books?
SB: I've been writing books since 1985.
SA: How many books have you written so far?
SB: I've written 4 books.

## Writing Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

...painting pictures. She has been painting pictures since 1993. She has painted ten pictures so far. Amanda Price's hobby is taking photos. She has been taking photos for nine months. She has taken 300 photos so far. Darren Mason's hobby is climbing mountains. He has been climbing mountains since 1992. He has climbed four mountains so far. Jim Brown's hobby is making pots. He has been making pots for six months. He has made forty pots so far. Fiona Carson's hobby is writing books. She has been writing books since 1985. She has written four books so far.

# UNIT 8: Pronouns-Both/Neither-All/None-Possessives

**1**

2 themselves
3 herself
4 himself
5 yourself
6 himself
7 herself

**2**

2 j
3 a
4 g
5 c
6 b
7 d
8 f
9 h
10 i

**3**

2 each other
3 each other
4 themselves
5 yourself/ yourselves

**4**

2 myself
3 herself
4 ourselves
5 themselves

**5**

2 himself
3 themselves
4 himself
5 herself
6 themselves

**6**

2 myself
3 himself
4 himself
5 herself
6 themselves
7 myself
8 yourselves
9 ourselves
10 themselves
11 herself
12 yourself

**7**

2 These are both rabbits. Both of them are rabbits. They are both rabbits.
3 These are all coins. All of them are coins. They are all coins.
4 These are all shopping bags. All of them are shopping bags. They are all shopping bags.
5 These are all candles. All of them are candles. They are all candles.
6 These are both keys. Both of them are keys. They are both keys.
7 These are both boys. Both of them are boys. They are both boys.

**8**

2 Both of us
3 neither of us
4 neither of them
5 Both of them
6 both of them

**9**

2 both
3 all
4 none
5 both
6 Neither

**10**

2 neither, both
3 none
4 All
5 both
6 all
7 both, neither

**11**

2 Both Jenny and Mark are from Ireland.
3 Neither Marie nor I like bananas./Neither I nor Marie likes bananas.
4 Neither Jane nor her sister goes to school any more.
5 Both my mother and I enjoy skiing.
6 Neither Lucy nor Bob spent their holidays at home.
7 Both Susan and Emily went on holiday to Spain last year.
8 Neither Fred nor Stuart has got long hair.

**12**

- Neither businessmen nor pilots spend much time with their families.
- Both businessmen and pilots earn a lot of money.
- Neither businessmen nor pilots have much free time.
- Both businessmen and pilots meet a lot of people.
- Both businessmen and pilots make important decisions.
- Both businessmen and pilots have stressful jobs.

**13**

**(Suggested answer)**

**Both** businessmen **and** pilots earn a lot of money, but **neither** businessmen **nor** pilots spend much time with their families or have much free time. **Both** businessmen **and** pilots meet a lot of people and make important decisions. **Both** businessmen **and** pilots have stressful jobs.

**14**

2 the top of the hill
3 the roof of the car
4 the owner of the shop
5 the boys' caps
6 the manager of the hotel
7 the man's trousers
8 the children's toys
9 the name of the street
10 the baby's clothes

**15**

2 hours'
3 today's
4 yesterday's
5 week's
6 year's
7 five minutes'
8 month's

**16**

2 it's (it is)
3 it's (it has)
4 its
5 It's (It is)
6 it's (it has)
7 It's (It is)
8 its

**17**

2 Julie and Helen's pencils
3 Mary's and Doug's hats
4 Tom and Jill's toys
5 Paul's shirts
6 Susan's shoes

**18**

1 I, We, our, us
2 they, mine
3 They, They, my, them
4 We, you, it, it, us, it
5 I, I, I, you, my, I, your, I, you, It, yourself
6 them, they, you, they
7 you, us, I
8 himself, He, him

**19**

2 Our, hers
3 My
4 theirs
5 their
6 mine
7 Hers
8 her
9 yours
10 your

**20**

1 Neither Nora nor Peter **enjoyed** the party.
2 This is **our** dog.
3 Neither Andy **nor** Jane lives in Scotland.
4 This is **Fred's** watch.
5 We enjoyed **ourselves** on holiday last year.
6 Is this **his** suitcase?
7 These are **John's** slippers.
8 Jim, Bob and Tim are **all** doctors.

**21**

2 liked
3 lived
4 was looking
5 found
6 became
7 has just retired
8 is enjoying
9 works
10 does
11 was working

**22**

2 B 3 A 4 A 5 C 6 B

## Oral Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre cost less than £40 a month. Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre have aerobics classes. Neither the Body Club nor the Fitness Centre has got a large car park. Both the Body Club and the Fitness Centre are near the city centre. Neither the Body Club nor the Fitness Centre has got a swimming-pool.

*Writing Activity*

**(Suggested answer)**

Neither of them has got a sauna. Both of them cost less than £40 a month and both of them have aerobics classes. Neither the Body Club nor the Fitness Centre has got a large car park, but both of them are near the city centre. Neither the Body Club nor the Fitness Centre has got a swimming-pool.

# UNIT 9: Modal Verbs I

**1**

- You mustn't go to the office for three days.
- You must take some medicine.
- You must drink a lot of water.
- You mustn't eat any ice-cream.
- You must take your temperature twice a day.
- You must call me if you have a high temperature.

**2**

2 SA: Why did she go to the post office yesterday?
SB: Because she had to post some letters.
3 SA: Why did they call the babysitter yesterday?
SB: Because they had to attend a meeting.
4 SA: Why did he call a taxi yesterday?
SB: Because he had to go to the airport.
5 SA: Why did she buy a dictionary yesterday?
SB: Because she had to translate a novel.
6 SA: Why did they go to a restaurant yesterday?
SB: Because they had to entertain some clients.

**3**

2 won't have to
3 didn't have to
4 don't have to
5 doesn't/won't have to
6 doesn't have to
7 didn't have to
8 doesn't have to
9 don't/won't have to
10 doesn't have to

**4**

2 needn't/don't have to
3 mustn't
4 needn't/don't have to
5 mustn't
6 mustn't
7 needn't/don't have to
8 needn't/don't have to

**5**

2 must not/mustn't take pictures
3 you have to leave
4 needn't go
5 must not/mustn't keep pets
6 do not/don't have to water

**6**

- SA: They can't go out in the evenings now.
  SB: When the children grow up, they'll be able to go out in the evenings.
- SA: They can't do lots of sports now.
  SB: When the children grow up, they'll be able to do lots of sports.
- SA: They can't visit their friends often now.
  SB: When the children grow up, they'll be able to visit their friends often.
- SA: They can't go to the theatre with their friends now.
  SB: When the children grow up, they'll be able to go to the theatre with their friends.

**7**

2 were able to
3 can
4 Could
5 was able to
6 couldn't
7 were able to
8 can't

**8**

2 could
3 couldn't
4 was able to
5 was able to
6 could/was able to

**9**

2 C
3 B
4 B
5 C
6 C
7 A
8 C
9 C
10 B

**10**

2 lack of ability
3 asking for permission
4 suggestion
5 request
6 request
7 request

**11**

2 You can't smoke here.
3 You can park here.
4 You can cross the road here.
5 You can't ride a bicycle here.
6 You can have coffee here.

**12**

1 can't (refusing permission)
2 can (giving permission)
3 could (ability in the past)
4 can't (lack of ability), can/could (suggestion)

5 Could (request)
6 can (ability), can (ability)
7 can/could (suggestion)
8 Can/Could (request)
9 Can/Could (request)

**13**

2 must
3 must
4 can't
5 must
6 can't

**14**

1 You **can't** go out until you finish eating.
2 Dad, **can** I borrow the car, please?
3 I haven't **been** able to write the letter yet.
4 He **couldn't** run long distances when he was a boy.
5 You **needn't** wake up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.
6 He drives a Porsche. He **can't** be poor.

**15**

2 is looking
3 has lived
4 wants
5 has decided
6 has looked
7 didn't like
8 is going to see/ is seeing
9 will like
10 has already seen
11 is/was

### *Oral Activity*

**(Suggested Answer)**

- Alan doesn't have to drive to work because a chauffeur picks him up.
- Alan sometimes has to work overtime now.
- He will be able to send the children to a better school next year.
- Mary needn't/doesn't have to work any more because they have enough money now.
- They will be able to move to a bigger house next month.
- They won't be able to take a family holiday this year because Alan has too much work.

### *Writing Activity*

**(Suggested Answer)**

I don't have to drive to work because a chauffeur picks me up. I have to work overtime sometimes, but I will be able to send the children to a better school next year. Mary needn't/doesn't have to work any more because we have enough money now. We will be able to move to a bigger house next month, but we won't be able to take a holiday this year because I have too much work.

# UNIT 10: Infinitive - Too/Enough - The "-ing form"

**1**

2 T.I.
3 B.I.
4 B.I.
5 T.I.
6 T.I.
7 T.I.
8 T.I.
9 B.I.
10 T.I.
11 T.I.
12 B.I.
13 T.I.
14 T.I.
15 B.I.
16 T.I.

**2**

**(Ss' own answers)**

**3**

2 to post
3 help
4 to climb
5 wash
6 to stay
7 to open
8 go
9 ask
10 take

**4**

2 ... want them to leave now.
3 ... her to eat her dinner.
4 ... him to visit Aunt Linda.
5 ... you to talk to strangers.
6 ... Fiona to go on holiday by herself.
7 ... them to do their homework now.
8 ... you to go to bed now.

**5**

2 tell
3 make
4 to be
5 leave
6 to meet

**6**

2 to come
3 ask
4 to help
5 to decorate
6 have
7 to make
8 know

**7**

2 d
3 a
4 b
5 h
6 e
7 c
8 g

**8**

2 it isn't cheap enough.
3 it's too small.
4 they're too heavy.
5 it's loud enough.
6 he's too short.

**9**

2 hot enough to go to the beach.
3 too early to go to the party.
4 tall enough to touch the ceiling.
5 cheap enough (for you) to buy.
6 old enough to walk to school alone.
7 rich enough to buy a luxury yacht.
8 is light enough (for you) to lift.

**10**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 c | 4 g | 6 b |
| 3 a | 5 d | 7 f |

**11**

| | |
|---|---|
| 2 playing | 7 wash |
| 3 to sleep | 8 learning/to learn |
| 4 get up | 9 to see |
| 5 spending | 10 to stop |
| 6 running | |

**12**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 to try | 6 to go | 10 to go |
| 3 starting | 7 to try | 11 visiting |
| 4 riding | 8 to do | 12 returning |
| 5 being | 9 coming | |

**13**

1 helping, to do
2 to get, to find, looking after, working
3 to catch, stealing, to hear
4 go, ice-skating, roller-skating
5 having/to have, go, to go, love, arrange
6 to marry, looking
7 going, planning, visiting, to ask, to do

**14**

2 (for you) to exercise
3 too late to catch
4 interesting enough (for me) to

**15**

1 I'm **too short/not tall enough** to reach the top cupboard.
2 He is **fast enough** to win the race.
3 I'm old enough **to travel** alone.
4 You must **get** up now.
5 She suggested **going** to the cinema on Friday night.
6 He promised **to send** me a postcard.
7 It's no use **trying** to change her mind.
8 She knocked before **opening** the door.
9 He is **too tired** to come to the party.
10 I am **too poor/not rich enough** to buy a new sports car.

**16**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 A | 4 B | 6 C | 8 A | 10 A |
| 3 A | 5 C | 7 B | 9 A | |

### *Oral Activity*

**(Suggested answer)**

- He makes people trust him.
- He is clever enough to disguise himself.
- He enjoys going to bars and cafés.
- The police suggest looking out for him in these places.
- The police are continuing to look for him.
- The police advise people to keep away from him and to avoid talking to him.
- Anyone who sees him should contact the police on 263419.

### *Writing Activity*

**(Suggested answer)**

... trust him and he is clever enough to disguise himself. He enjoys going to bars and cafés, so the police suggest looking out for him in these places. The police are continuing to look for him and they advise people to keep away from him and to avoid talking to him. Anyone who sees him should contact the police on 263419.

# Revision 2 (Units 1 - 10)

**1**

2 A washing-machine is a machine which washes clothes.
3 Bell was the man who invented the telephone.
4 Zebras are animals which have got stripes.
5 A vacuum cleaner is a machine which cleans carpets.
6 Jackie Kennedy was the woman who married Aristotle Onassis.

**2**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 B | 4 B | 6 C | 8 A |
| 3 A | 5 B | 7 C | |

**3**

| | |
|---|---|
| 2 I, them | 6 hers |
| 3 his | 7 herself |
| 4 yourselves | 8 yours |
| 5 They, us | |

**4**

2 Both Samantha and Eric go shopping on Saturdays.
3 Neither Brian nor Simon plays football.
4 Both Peter and Sally are good dancers.
5 Neither David nor Linda knows how to drive.
6 Neither Jane nor I like carrots.

**5** 2 A 3 C 4 C 5 B 6 C

**6**
2 to have
3 to go
4 to put up
5 to see
6 putting up
7 making/ to make
8 swimming
9 walking
10 Camping

**7**
2 enough
3 too
4 too
5 enough
6 too

**8**
2 are not/aren't old enough to
3 not cheap enough for him
4 too shocked to say
5 tall enough
6 always nice to meet
7 was too excited to

**9**
1 haven't seen
2 Are you doing, am/I'm staying, am/'m
3 Did Steve phone, didn't phone, will/'ll probably give
4 Are, am, are you doing, am/'m studying
5 have/'ve been working
6 Have you ever been, went, have/'ve never been
7 have you lived, have/'ve been living/have/'ve lived
8 Have you posted, did
9 have/'ve just cut
10 went, Was, enjoyed

**10**
1 He is the man **whose** daughter won the competition.
2 I want **him** to help me in the garden.
3 Did you hear him **shout**?
4 We went to the bakery **to buy** some bread.
5 Would you like me **to do** the washing-up?
6 When **did you meet** her?
7 He is tired because he **has been painting** the gate since this morning.
8 It's not worth **waiting** any more.

# UNIT 11: Past Perfect Simple - Past Perfect Continuous

**1**
2 Had Lucy packed
3 had finished
4 Had Julie typed
5 had not/hadn't finished
6 had done
7 had not/hadn't repaired
8 had not/hadn't been

**2**
2 She had put up the decorations.
3 She had baked a cake.
4 She had cleaned the house.
5 She had sent the invitations.
6 She had borrowed some CDs.

**3**
2 a (first action: her husband had forgotten her birthday)
3 e (first action: the bank robbers had escaped)
4 b (first action: we had bought the tickets)
5 d (first action: she had won the prize)

**4**
- a) **After/When** Bob **had eaten** the meal, he **paid** the bill.
  b) Bob **had eaten** the meal **before** he **paid** the bill.
- a) **After/When** Mary **had read** the contract, she **signed** it.
  b) Mary **had read** the contract **before** she **signed** it.
- a) **After/When** the boys **had watched** the match, they **turned off** the TV.
  b) The boys **had watched** the match **before** they **turned off** the TV.
- a) **After/When** Peter **had borrowed** some money, he **bought** a car.
  b) Peter **had borrowed** some money **before** he **bought** a car.

**5**
2 When I had found a solution to my problem, I felt happier./I felt happier when I had found a solution to my problem.
3 The boys had finished their homework before they went out to play.
4 The phone rang after he had locked the door./After he had locked the door, the phone rang.
5 Sarah had washed the dishes by the time her husband arrived./By the time her husband arrived, Sarah had washed the dishes.

6 The fans left the stadium when the concert had finished./When the concert had finished, the fans left the stadium.
7 The play had already started when Henry arrived at the theatre./When Henry arrived at the theatre, the play had already started.

**6**

- SA: Had they locked the house before they left?
  SB: Yes, they had.
- SA: Had they left the car at the garage before they left?
  SB: No, they hadn't.
- SA: Had they booked a hotel room before they left?
  SB: No, they hadn't.
- SA: Had they set the burglar alarm before they left?
  SB: Yes, they had.
- SA: Had they fed the cat before they left?
  SB: Yes, they had.
- SA: Had they phoned the neighbours before they left?
  SB: No, they hadn't.

**7**

**1** 2 was
3 was watching
4 broke out
5 did it happen
6 had dropped

**2** 1 Did you go
2 went
3 Did you have
4 was sunbathing
5 started
6 left

**3** 1 lost
2 did you lose
3 went
4 realised
5 had left

**8**

2 Had you been waiting
3 had been looking
4 had been watching
5 had been sunbathing
6 had been working
7 had been living

**9**

2 had been playing
3 had been waiting
4 had been working
5 had been sitting
6 had been discussing

**10**

**1** 2 had been standing
3 had escaped

**2** 1 had done
2 had planned
3 had been waiting

**11**

**A** 2 took
3 sat
4 left
5 hadn't caught

**B** 1 was
2 had forgotten
3 got
4 was

**C** 1 had
2 got up
3 had finished
4 had

**D** 1 went
2 had
3 got
4 realised
5 had forgotten
6 went

**12**

2 had had
3 had eaten
4 had only been driving
5 had left
6 had locked
7 had been trying/had tried
8 had been calling/had called

**13**

1 she
2 to
3 been
4 to
5 did
6 not
7 it
8 blouse
9 not/never
10 not

**14**

2 B
3 A
4 B
5 B
6 A
7 C
8 A
9 A
10 B

## *Oral Activity*

Nick hadn't cooked anything.
Nick had done the shopping.
Nick hadn't made the beds.
Nick hadn't taken the rubbish out.
Nick had put the baby's toys away.
Nick had paid the phone bill.

## *Writing Activity*

**(Suggested Answer)**

...cooked anything. He had done the shopping, but he hadn't made the beds. He hadn't taken the rubbish out, but he had put the baby's toys away and he had paid the phone bill.

# UNIT 12: Modal Verbs II

**1**

2 may not cut
3 may be
4 may not buy
5 may not visit
6 may enjoy
7 may cook
8 may leave
9 may come

**2**

2 might
3 must
4 might
5 must
6 mustn't
7 Could
8 must

**3**

- You shouldn't talk all the time.
- You should wash the dishes.
- You should tidy your room.
- You shouldn't eat lots of chocolate.
- You shouldn't argue with your sisters.
- You should put your clothes away.
- You should take the dog for a walk.

**4**

2 How much shall we
3 How shall we
4 Who shall we
5 When shall we
6 What shall we
7 What shall we
8 Where shall we

**5**

- Will you take the rubbish out?
- Will you feed the baby?
- Will you water the plants?
- Will you put all the toys away?
- Will you iron the clothes?

**6**

2 You mustn't take ...
3 Mark may/might/could be ...
4 Shall I make ...
5 You should/ought to/must leave ...
6 Emily was able to find ...
7 Paul can't be ...
8 We have to/must take ...
9 The children can't be ...
10 We may/might/could go ...

**7**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 C | 5 B | 8 A | 11 A |
| 3 A | 6 A | 9 C | 12 A |
| 4 C | 7 C | 10 B | 13 B |

**8**

2 You have to/should/ought to be careful with the flowers.
3 You don't have to sign the paper now.
4 We could go to the cinema tonight.
5 You ought to call them now.
6 Could I talk to you for a minute?

**9**

2 f 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 d

**10**

2 must
3 haven't been able to
4 may
5 might
6 won't have to
7 Should
8 should
9 Could

**11**

2 Was ... able to
3 must
4 mustn't/shouldn't/ought not to
5 needn't/don't have to
6 ought to/should/have to/must, have to
7 may/might/could
8 shall, could/can
9 can, can
10 should/ought to
11 May

**12**

2 can't be
3 Shall we watch
4 must be
5 ought to stop eating
6 may be in the
7 must come from Spain./must be Spanish.

**13**

2 You ought to/should/must ...
3 Can/Could I ...
4 Could/Can you ...
5 He may/might/could ...
6 You/We could/can ...
7 Could/Can/Will you ...

**14**

1 **Shall** we visit Mary and Tony tonight?
2 I'm not sure where Ed is. He **might/may/could** be at work.
3 **Shall** I help you wash the dishes?
4 You **needn't/don't have to** get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.
5 Martha had a bad cold but she **was able to** do all her work at the office.
6 You **should** go to the dentist if you have toothache.
7 **Can/Could/May** I borrow your pen, please?
8 I **could** climb trees when I was young.

**15**

A 2 to swim
3 to go

B 1 to find
2 seeing

**16**

2 C 4 B 6A 8 C
3 A 5 B 7 B

### Oral Activity

- You shouldn't stay behind to collect your things.
- You should follow your teacher's instructions.
- You shouldn't use the lift.
- You shouldn't run down the stairs.
- You should go to a safe place.
- You shouldn't panic.

### Writing Activity

**What to do in case of fire**

- You should follow your teacher's instructions.
- You should go to a safe place.

**What not to do in case of fire**

- You shouldn't stay behind to collect your things.
- You shouldn't use the lift.
- You shouldn't run down the stairs.
- You shouldn't panic.

# UNIT 13: The Passive

**1**

2 A lot of rice is eaten in India.
3 Snails are eaten in France.
4 Coca Cola is produced in the USA.
5 Coffee is grown in Brazil.
6 Cricket is played in England.

**2**

2 a 4 b 6 c 8 h
3 f 5 e 7 g

A: Who was the 'Mona Lisa' painted by?
B: It was painted by Leonardo da Vinci.
A: Who was the Eiffel Tower built by?
B: It was built by Gustave Eiffel.
A: Who was 'Jurassic Park' directed by?
B: It was directed by Steven Spielberg.
A: Who was 'Carmen' composed by?
B: It was composed by Georges Bizet.
A: Who was Alexandria founded by?
B: It was founded by Alexander the Great.
A: Who was America discovered by?
B: It was discovered by Christopher Columbus.
A: Who was the telephone invented by?
B: It was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.

**3**

3 SA: Have they repaired the photocopier?
SB: Yes, it has already been repaired.
4 SA: Have you typed last month's reports?
SB: No, they haven't been typed yet.
5 SA: Have you placed the advertisement in the newspaper?
SB: No, it hasn't been placed yet.
6 SA: Have you paid the bills?
SB: Yes, they have already been paid.

**4**

c The plants had been watered.
d The carpet had been hoovered.
e The cat had not been fed.
f The dinner had not been cooked.
g The rubbish had been taken out.
h The windows had not been cleaned.

**5**

2 was recently asked/ have recently been asked
3 will be delivered
4 was informed
5 is being repaired
6 be typed
7 is looked after
8 were painted
9 are washed, are dried
10 is being serviced
11 had already been posted
12 will be punished
13 was given
14 have just been moved
15 has been promoted

**6**

2 Dinner hasn't been made by the chef.
3 A dinosaur egg has been found by an explorer.
4 The baby will be looked after by Mrs Gates.
5 He won't be taken home (by them) after the party.
6 The front door was left open.
7 The window wasn't broken by Jenny.
8 The computer is being used.
9 He was taught to drive by his brother.
10 English is spoken by many people.
11 He had already been told by the doctor to go on a diet/to go on a diet by the doctor.
12 A new book is being written by the author.

**7**

2 Will the bedroom be decorated by Susan tomorrow?
3 Was the ring found in the garden?
4 Is the picture being drawn by Tom?
5 Have the invitations been sent by Simon yet?
6 Had the door been repaired by Paul before he left for work?

**8**

3 Who is the party going to be organised by?
4 What was he stung by?
5 Who was this delicious turkey cooked by?
6 Who are these books published by?
7 What was the soldier killed by?

**9**

2 a Mary has been offered a watch by Fred.
b A watch has been offered to Mary by Fred.
3 a Tim is being sent an invitation by Lisa.
b An invitation is being sent to Tim by Lisa.
4 a I was brought some oranges.
b Some oranges were brought to me.
5 a I am going to be lent some money by Sonia.
b Some money is going to be lent to me by Sonia.
6 a I will be shown the new car by Jack.
b The new car will be shown to me by Jack.
7 a He was paid a lot of money for the job.
b A lot of money was paid to him for the job.

**10**

2 This saucepan can be used for cooking spaghetti.
3 My homework has to be finished tonight.
4 Your bedroom must be tidied.
5 These clothes ought to be put away.
6 The secretary was given some letters to type by the boss/by her boss to type.
7 This cake should be eaten immediately.
8 Peter was sent a birthday card by Sally.
9 The dog must be taken for a walk.
10 The mouse is not being chased by the cat.
11 Is oil produced in Spain?
12 Was he bitten by a dog?
13 A new song has not been recorded by Edward.

**11**

I was sent a bunch of flowers. They were delivered to my house by the man from the flower shop. I was told that they were a present. They had been ordered by a young man. No card had been put in the flowers. I still don't know who they were sent by.

**12**

A fire was started in the Courtney National Park early yesterday morning. A match and some petrol had been used to start the fire. A lot of trees had been burnt (by the fire) before the fire brigade was called. A man has been arrested (by the police). He is still being questioned.

**13**

2 are being planted
3 was being chased
4 has not/hasn't been cleaned
5 had been eaten
6 must be finished
7 was sent
8 should be informed

**14**

2 is taken
3 is driven
4 goes
5 are carried
6 buys
7 needs
8 has been invited
9 will be held/is being held
10 is looking forward

**15**

1 The dishes **have** been washed.
2 The letters **are opened** every morning in the office.
3 Your homework must **be** finished by Monday.
4 The woman **was** seen taking the children to school.
5 Mike has been **told** about the new job.
6 The cars **were stolen** from the car park.
7 The house **has** been decorated recently.
8 The centre will **be visited** by the King next month.

**16**

2 A
3 A
4 C
5 A
6 B
7 C
8 B

### Oral Activity

The windows have been replaced.
Garden lights are being put in.
The roof has been repaired.
Trees have been planted.
The sign has been put up.
The door is being fixed.

### Writing Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

... and the windows have been replaced. Garden lights have been put in and the roof has been repaired. Trees have been planted, the sign has been put up and the door has been fixed. I hope you'll come to the opening, which will be soon. I'll send you an invitation.

Best wishes,
Max

# UNIT 14: Reported Speech

**1**

**A** 2 said 4 said 6 tell
3 told 5 told

**B** 1 said 3 tell
2 said 4 said

**C** 1 said 2 said 3 said

**2**

2 he, his
3 they, their
4 his, him
5 he, his
6 he, me, his, him

**3**

2 He said (that) they were working in the garden.
3 She told us (that) they had got married six months before.
4 He said (that) he would go shopping the following/ next day.
5 He said (that) he had bought a new car the previous week/the week before.
6 They said (that) they weren't doing anything the next/following week.
7 She told me (that) she couldn't go out that night.
8 He said (that) he had forgotten to pay the bill.
9 She told me (that) they had brought me a present.
10 She told Peter (that) she would phone him the following/next day/the day after.

**4**

3, 6, 8 and 12 do not change tense because they are general truths.

5 does not change because the introductory verb is in the present simple.

2 Rose said (that) she had put the washing in the washing machine.
3 He said (that) a giraffe is bigger than a mouse.
4 She said (that) they hadn't seen Tom for two weeks.
5 She says (that) she hasn't phoned her uncle since last month.
6 The student said (that) birds can fly.
7 She said (that) he was studying for an exam then/at that time.
8 He said (that) leaves fall from the trees in autumn.
9 They said (that) they had visited the circus the previous weekend/the weekend before.
10 Tony said (that) she had dropped the vase on the floor.
11 She said (that) he had taken the money to the bank that morning.
12 The teacher said (that) the Earth moves round the sun.

**5**

2 She asked George when he would call her.
3 She asked if/whether I could play the piano.
4 He asked who was there.
5 She asked Jonathan if/whether he liked fish.
6 Mother asked what I had done that day.
7 Jim asked if/whether I had gone to work the previous day/the day before.
8 He asked how I had got there.
9 She asked if/whether I had seen her blue jacket anywhere.
10 He asked if/whether I would take him to work the following/next day/the day after.
11 She asked where I had been.
12 She asked if/whether they would visit us in the summer.

**6**

2 who had called the fire brigade.
3 if/whether we/they had asked people to leave the building.
4 if/whether anyone had been injured.

5 how many fire-fighters were there then/at that time.
6 if/whether any of the houses had been damaged.

**7**

2 told
3 asked
4 ordered
5 begged

**8**

2 The fire-fighter told/ordered them to stand back.
3 The fire-fighter told/ordered them to bring the light nearer.
4 The fire-fighter told/ordered them to pass him an axe.
5 The fire-fighter told/ordered them to go to the other side of the plane.

**9**

2 The shop assistant told the child not to touch anything.
3 The secretary asked me to wait there.
4 She suggested going swimming.
5 The park keeper told them not to walk on the grass.
6 He told them not to stay out late that night.
7 Annie begged Barry to help her.

**10**

2 He asked Jill to get him a glass of water.
3 She refused to help Jim.
4 Her mother promised to buy her something nice for her birthday.
5 He warned us not to play near the road because it was dangerous.
6 She offered to do the shopping.
7 She begged her parents not to leave her alone in the dark.
8 He suggested going to the cinema that night.
9 His father ordered him to go to bed at once/ immediately.
10 They suggested watching a video.

**11**

2 Alison offered to help organise the meeting.
3 Alex offered to give them copies of the plan.
4 Bob suggested doing some research on the subject.
5 Nick promised to give them all the details the following week.
6 Diana warned them not to decide until they knew the cost.

**12**

**(Suggested answers)**

2 Sarah said to me, 'I'm looking for a new job.'
3 Brian asked, 'What time does the train to Leeds leave?'
4 She said, 'I don't like jogging.'
5 'I'll be back tomorrow,' he said.
6 He asked, ' How much did your new car cost?'
7 'Can you do the shopping for me, please?' I asked Marie.
8 Jill said to Roy, 'Please close the window.'

**13**

**(Suggested answers)**

2 He asked her why she had done that.
3 '*Titanic* is the best film I've ever seen,' Susie said to her mother.
4 'Put the rubbish in the bin,' he said to them.
5 He asked her to answer the telephone.
6 'We're going to Hawaii for our honeymoon,' Alex said.
7 Ben asked me if/whether I was going out on Saturday night.
8 'I've never ridden a horse before,' said Adam.
9 Mother said that we would go to the circus the following day.
10 'Pick up the paper from the floor,' Mr Carter said to them.
11 'Please, please let me go to the party,' Julia asked her parents.
12 Greg suggested having a party on his birthday.

**14**

**(Suggested answers)**

'Can you give me your phone number, please?' she asked me.
'Call me very soon,' I said to her.

**15**

1 He asked me **where** the post office **was**.
2 She suggested **visiting** the zoo.
3 Mother said, 'You must always **tell** the truth.'
4 The doctor told me **not to** exercise a lot.
5 My parents offered **to give** me a lift to the railway station.
6 Our teacher **told us** that the test was quite easy.
7 She asked how **she could** contact me.
8 He said that Kate had left **the previous month/ the month before**.
9 The old man **said** good night and went to bed.
10 Jenny said **to** me, 'I hate Maths.'

**16**

2 Have you done, did
3 myself
4 enough
5 used to
6 needn't
7 have been washing
8 was written
9 whose
10 Shall, will
11 which
12 used to

### Oral Activity

SA: What else did Tim Stevens say?
SB: He said (that) he had already been to Venice and Florence.
SA: What else did Tim Stevens say?
SB: He said (that) he had been to France two months before.
SA: What else did Tim Stevens say?
SB: He said (that) he had starred in a film called 'L'amour'.
SA: What else did Tim Stevens say?
SB: He said (that) he would return with his wife in the summer.

### Writing Activity

**(Suggested Answer)**

...that he had already been to Venice and Florence and that he had been to France two months before. He said that he had starred in a film called 'L'amour' and that he would return with his wife in the summer.

# UNIT 15: Conditionals - Wishes

**1**

2 If you go to Rome, you can see the Colosseum.
3 If you go to New York, you can see the Empire State Building.
4 If you go to Paris, you can see the Eiffel Tower.
5 If you go to Egypt, you can see the Pyramids.
6 If you go to Sydney, you can see the Sydney Opera House.
7 If you go to Venice, you can see some gondolas.
8 If you go to Hawaii, you can see some palm trees.

**2**

2 a – If you are hungry, make a sandwich.
3 e – If you are bored, read a good book.
4 b – If you are thirsty, get something to drink.
5 d – If you are seasick, take one of these pills.

**3**

2 If
3 If
4 unless
5 unless
6 unless
7 if

**4**

2 does ... (exercise),
3 need
4 Will ... be
5 saves
6 rains,
7 work (hard),
8 Will ... give
9 (homework), ... won't let
10 pay
11 arrives (on time),

**5**

1 will/'ll make
2 leave, will/'ll get
3 wash, will/'ll cook
4 will/'ll go, have
5 finish, will/'ll give
6 look, will/'ll find

**6**

3 Sarah will be disappointed unless you send her a birthday card.
4 Maria won't go to the theatre unless Peter goes with her.
5 Unless you pay the electricity bill, it will be cut off.
6 If Kate doesn't come home soon, her parents will call the police.
7 Unless the children behave themselves, they won't go to the zoo.
8 If my mother doesn't offer to help me, I won't have time to make all the preparations.
9 If you don't tidy your room, I won't take you to the party.
10 Unless Dennis writes soon, I will be very upset.

**7**

2 If a shop assistant was/were rude to me, I would complain to the manager.
3 If I fell over and broke my arm, I would go to hospital.
4 If I burnt my dinner, I would order a pizza.
5 If there was a power cut in my house, I would light some candles.
6 If I caught a bad cold, I would stay in bed.

**8**

2 SA: Shall I order a salad or a sandwich?
SB: If I were you, I'd order a salad.
3 SA: Shall I have some coffee or some orange juice?
SB: If I were you, I'd have some orange juice.
4 SA: Shall I buy a dog or a goldfish?
SB: If I were you, I'd buy a goldfish.
5 SA: Shall I go to Japan or France?
SB: If I were you, I'd go to Japan.
6 SA: Shall I take up golf or baseball?
SB: If I were you, I'd take up golf.

**9**

2 had, would/could/might go
3 would/could/might buy, had
4 didn't cost, would/could buy
5 would/could/might lend, asked
6 would/could/might open, had
7 would/could/might paint, had
8 got, would/could/might go
9 was/were, would never work
10 would/could post, had

**10**

... he would have arrived in New York on time. If he had arrived in New York on time, he would have attended the meeting. If he had attended the meeting, he would have signed the contract. If he had signed the contract, his boss would have been pleased with him. If his boss had been pleased with him, she would have given him a promotion.

**11**

2 had remembered, would/could/might have sent
3 hadn't been, could/would/might have gone
4 would/might not have broken, had been
5 would/could/might have got, hadn't taken
6 had done, wouldn't/might not have shouted
7 would/could/might have passed, had studied
8 had closed, would/could/might not have run away
9 would/could/might have lost, hadn't picked
10 had saved, would/might/could have been able

**11**

2 ... he wouldn't have fallen off (it).
3 If he hadn't fallen off the ladder, he wouldn't have broken his leg.
4 If he hadn't broken his leg, he wouldn't have gone to hospital.
5 If he hadn't gone to hospital, he wouldn't have met Linda (there).
6 If he hadn't met Linda, they wouldn't have fallen in love.
7 If they hadn't fallen in love, they wouldn't have got married (six months later).

**13**

2 were, would talk
3 won, would/could buy, would buy
4 had studied, wouldn't/might not have failed
5 were/was, would go
6 hadn't left, wouldn't/couldn't/might not have escaped
7 hadn't been, wouldn't have missed
8 would you go, could, could, would go
9 were/was, would report
10 had been, wouldn't have cut

**14**

2 were/was
3 would/could/might have had
4 would give
5 leave
6 hadn't met
7 would/might/could have been
8 had
9 phones
10 would get

**15**

2 If I cut some wood, I will be able to/can make a fire. (1)
3 If I had some food, I wouldn't be hungry. (2)
4 If I sit under a tree, I won't get wet. (1)
5 If I get some water from the stream, I'll be able to/can have a drink. (1)
6 If anyone could hear me, I would shout for help. (2)/No one will be able to hear me if I shout for help. (1)/No one would be able to hear me if I shouted for help. (2)
7 If it wasn't/weren't dark, I would/might be able to/could find the path. (2)

**16**

- I wish I didn't have a sore throat.
- I wish I could play outside in the snow.
- I wish I didn't have to take medicine.
- I wish I didn't have to stay in bed.
- I wish I could go to my friend's party tonight.
- I wish some of my friends were here with me.

**17**

- I wish the beach hadn't been a long way from the hotel.
- I wish the hotel hadn't been dirty.
- I wish my hotel room hadn't been small.
- I wish I hadn't lost my luggage.
- I wish my wallet hadn't been stolen.

**18**

2 I wish Mrs Parker's dog wouldn't bark all day.
3 I wish Mr Fox wouldn't mow the lawn at 5 am.
4 I wish Mrs Edison wouldn't leave rubbish on the pavement.
5 I wish the Smiths wouldn't have a party every weekend.
6 I wish Miss Brown wouldn't pick my flowers.

**19**

2 had seen
3 had done
4 would remember
5 didn't have
6 was/were
7 hadn't cost
8 could

**20**

2 I wish I could remember the recipe.
3 I wish I could find my umbrella.
4 I wish I had remembered to lock the front door.
5 I wish I wasn't on a diet.
6 I wish I had studied.
7 I wish I had enough money to go on holiday.

**21**

2 wish you would stop
3 were you, I would go
4 wish you would

**22**

1 I wish I **could** go home now.
2 If I were you, I **would** ask my father's advice.
3 Unless you **ask** her, she won't come.
4 I wish you **would** listen to me.
5 I wish I **had seen** the play when it was on at the theatre.
6 I wish I **could** go on long holidays to hot places.
7 If I **have** time, I will tidy up before I go out.

**23**

2 The silver was polished (by the maid) yesterday.
3 The dog must be taken to the vet.
4 The new cinema will be opened (by the mayor) tomorrow (by the mayor) .
5 The fire couldn't be put out because of the wind.
6 Has the washing been done yet?

**24**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 A | 5 A | 8 A |
| 3 B | 6 A | 9 C |
| 4 C | 7 B | 10 A |

## Oral Activity

- He wishes his children wouldn't ask him for money all the time.
- He wishes he had some time for himself.
- Laura wishes she didn't feel lonely.
- She wishes she went out more often.
- She wishes she didn't have difficulty making friends.
- She wishes she had some hobbies.

## Writing Activity

1 were
2 wouldn't feel
3 would listen
4 were
5 took up

**(Suggested answer)**

Dear Miss Smithers,

Thank you for your letter asking for my advice.

To begin with, if I were you, I would try to find ways to change my life. If you met some new people, you wouldn't feel lonely. If you went out more often, you would feel much happier. If you joined a club, you would make friends more easily. Finally, if you took up some hobbies, you would feel a lot better and a lot more confident.

I hope my advice will help.

Best wishes,
Dorothy

# Revision 3 (Units 1 - 15)

**1**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | B | 5 | B | 8 | A |
| 3 | C | 6 | A | 9 | B |
| 4 | B | 7 | C | 10 | C |

**2**

2 must not/mustn't go out
3 may visit us
4 must be
5 Shall we go
6 needn't go to work
7 ought to look for

**3**

2 He is being taken to hospital now.
3 Who will the speech be made by?
4 The flowers have been destroyed by the cat.
5 'Hamlet' was written by Shakespeare.
6 Susan was sent a red rose./A red rose was sent to Susan.
7 The house had been burned down (by the fire) by the time the fire brigade arrived.
8 Who was the television invented by?

**4**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | had bought | 7 | have |
| 3 | am wearing | 8 | hadn't spent |
| 4 | could go | 9 | wouldn't play |
| 5 | had | 10 | am |
| 6 | had studied | | |

**5**

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | A | 4 | A | 6 | C | 8 | A |
| 3 | C | 5 | B | 7 | A | | |

**6**

2 Paul asked me to open the door for him.
3 Anna suggested going ice-skating that weekend.
4 He asked me what time it was.
5 Jonathan begged them not to go without him.
6 Amanda told me (that) she had found a new job.
7 Samantha promised to send Tim a postcard from Italy./Samantha told Tim (that) she would send him a postcard from Italy.
8 Mother said (that) she would bake a cake for the party./Mother promised to bake a cake for the party.
9 The fire-fighter warned/told the people not to go into the house.
10 Brian refused to type the report.
11 She asked her father to give her a lift./She asked her father if he could give her a lift.

**7**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | reading | 5 | arguing | 8 | seeing |
| 3 | to help | 6 | to keep | 9 | laugh |
| 4 | doing | 7 | borrow | | |

**8**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | why | 10 | me |
| 3 | yours | 11 | was able to |
| 4 | was built | 12 | which |
| 5 | hadn't forgotten | 13 | see |
| 6 | whose | 14 | where |
| 7 | it | 15 | Shall |
| 8 | has worked | 16 | who |
| 9 | is living | | |

# UNIT 16: Adjectives - Adverbs - Comparisons

**1**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | comfortable | 6 | lovely |
| 3 | bright | 7 | tall |
| 4 | fresh | 8 | quiet |
| 5 | excellent | | |

**2**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | oval | 5 | long |
| 3 | generous | 6 | careful |
| 4 | thick | | |

**3**

2 some beautiful round china plates
3 a blue Venetian crystal vase
4 an expensive gold ring
5 two old silver candlesticks
6 a lovely antique wooden radio

**4**

**-ly**
badly, quietly, carefully

**~~le~~ ➡ ly**
impossibly, horribly, simply

**consonant + ~~y~~ ➡ ily**
easily, noisily, lazily

**5**

| Adjective | Adverb | Adjective and Adverb |
|---|---|---|
| good | nicely | monthly |
| cheap | well | fast |
| tall | sadly | early |
| cold | strongly | late |
| wide | softly | hard |
| pretty | carefully | |
| | loudly | |

**6**

| how | where | when | how often |
|---|---|---|---|
| quickly | here | last month | always |
| slowly | there | tomorrow | never |
| cheerfully | somewhere | now | often |
| | anywhere | last week | sometimes |

**7**

2 carelessly
3 angrily
4 fluently
5 heavily
6 carefully
7 politely
8 quickly
9 proudly
10 seriously

**8**

2 good
3 easy
4 angrily, bad
5 cheerful, good

**9**

2 loudly
3 warm
4 nice
5 sincerely
6 happily
7 wonderful
8 successful

**10**

2 We went to Spain by plane.
3 She ran to work quickly.
4 My dog sleeps peacefully in the garden every afternoon.
5 They were talking quietly in the kitchen.
6 He played happily in his room all morning.
7 They crossed the street carefully.
8 I went to work by taxi yesterday.
9 They never go to the beach in winter.
10 He sometimes takes his children to the park.

**11**

| | Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | more expensive | most expensive |
| 3 | stronger | strongest |
| 4 | more difficult | most difficult |
| 5 | more intelligent | most intelligent |
| 6 | closer | closest |
| 7 | more popular | most popular |
| 8 | safer | safest |
| 9 | more important | most important |
| 10 | louder | loudest |
| 11 | weaker | weakest |
| 12 | tastier | tastiest |
| 13 | more comfortable | most comfortable |
| 14 | more delicious | most delicious |

**12**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | harder | hardest |
| 3 | faster | fastest |
| 4 | more noisily | most noisily |
| 5 | earlier | earliest |
| 6 | more satisfactorily | most satisfactorily |

**13**

2 Gold is more expensive than silver.
3 Canada is colder than Brazil.
4 Feathers are lighter than stones.
5 A car is faster than a bicycle.

**14**

2 Yes, it's the most frightening film I've ever seen.
3 Yes, she's the most beautiful girl/woman I've ever met.
4 Yes, it's the most delicious cheesecake I've ever tasted.
5 Yes, it's the worst record I've ever heard.

**15**

2 narrower/more narrow
3 quickest
4 sooner
5 taller
6 most beautiful
7 prettiest
8 tastiest

**16**

2 the most carelessly of
3 later than
4 the most beautifully of
5 the most clearly of
6 more generously, than
7 the hardest of
8 better than

**17**

2 larger than – The Sahara desert is larger than the Gobi desert.
3 the heaviest – The blue whale.
4 the longest – The Great Wall of China.
5 higher than – Mount Everest is higher than Kilimanjaro.

6 the smallest – Australia.
7 faster than – The cheetah runs faster than the lion.
8 louder ... than – The blue whale makes a louder sound than the polar bear.
9 the tallest – The Petronas Twin Towers in Malaysia.
10 better ... than – A falcon has got better eyesight than a human.

**18**

2 much
3 very
4 much
5 very
6 much

**19**

2 longer than
3 more elegant
4 the most expensive
5 cheaper
6 later than
7 the best
8 the most expensive

**20**

2 the most uncomfortable
3 the hottest
4 the biggest
5 more enjoyable
6 better

**21**

**(Suggested answers)**

2 The bicycle, the motorbike
3 The bicycle
4 The car, the bicycle
5 The motorbike, the car
6 The motorbike, the bicycle
7 The motorbike, the car
8 The motorbike, the bicycle
9 The motorbike
10 The bicycle
11 The bicycle, the motorbike
12 The car, the bicycle
13 The car
14 The car

**22**

2 have never seen such
3 the most beautiful song
4 healthier than
5 as old as
6 is newer than
7 speak French as well as
8 the warmest sweater
9 is as expensive as
10 less handsome than

**23**

1 B
2 A
3 C
4 B
5 A
6 C
7 A

**24**

2 The old bridge is being repaired at the moment.
3 The police had been informed about the planned robbery.
4 The results will be announced early tomorrow morning.
5 The film 'The Birds' was directed by Alfred Hitchcock.
6 Your room must be cleaned more often.
7 Clare was being followed while she was walking home.
8 The entrance to the embassy is guarded twenty-four hours a day.

## Oral Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

S1: The Red Dragon serves the healthiest food of all.
S2: The Regency Restaurant is more convenient than Roberto's Pizza.
S3: The Regency Restaurant is the largest of all.
S4: Roberto's Pizza isn't as/so expensive as the Red Dragon.
S5: The Red Dragon is less comfortable than the Regency Restaurant. etc.

## Writing Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

Roberto's Pizza is the least expensive of all. The Red Dragon serves healthier food than Roberto's Pizza, but it is more expensive. The Regency Restaurant is the most expensive of all, but also the largest. Roberto's Pizza is the least comfortable of all.

# UNIT 17: Nouns - Articles

**1**

2 babies
3 watches
4 tomatoes
5 chairs
6 keys
7 knives
8 feet
9 tall men
10 roofs
11 radios
12 fast cars
13 lives
14 parties
15 beautiful days
16 classes

**2**

| | |
|---|---|
| / s / | myths, desks, hats, skirts, clocks, cliffs, shirts, roofs |
| / ɪz / | cages, buses, churches, dresses, foxes, boxes, roses, dishes |
| / z / | keys, flowers, apples, dolphins, chairs, babies, cherries, bags, pianos, onions, birds, balls, radios, songs |

**3**

**A**
2 T-shirts
3 cups
4 glasses
5 candlesticks

**B**
1 lion
2 giraffes
3 deer
4 rhinos
5 monkeys

**4**

2 two tomatoes
3 one onion
4 two radishes
5 one cucumber

**5**

2 C
3 U
4 C
5 C
6 U
7 U
8 C
9 U
10 C
11 C
12 U

**6**

2 a
3 some
4 some
5 some
6 an
7 an
8 a
9 some
10 some
11 some
12 some

**7**

2 loaves/slices/pieces of bread
3 cups/packets of tea
4 bars of soap
5 pieces/slices of pie
6 kilos/slices/pieces of meat
7 packets/cups/spoons of sugar
8 glasses/bottles/cups/bowls/jars of water

**8**

2 cans
3 packet
4 jar
5 tins
6 bottle

**9**

2 do
3 is
4 were
5 are
6 are
7 are
8 needs
9 are
10 was
11 were
12 are
13 are
14 are
15 were

**10**

2 one
3 one
4 ones
5 ones
6 ones
7 one

**11**

2 a
3 an
4 a
5 a
6 an
7 a
8 an
9 an
10 a

**12**

2 Tim is a mechanic.
3 Bob is a pilot.
4 Peter is an electrician.
5 Fiona is an optician.
6 Sarah is a typist.
7 Rick is a basketball player.
8 Annie is a photographer.

**13**

1 some, a
2 an
3 A, some
4 some
5 some
6 some, an

**14**

| The /ðə/ | The /ðiː/ |
|---|---|
| box | octopus |
| boy | artist |
| table | umbrella |
| ship | antenna |
| helicopter | egg |
| spoon | ant |
| carpet | object |

**15**

2 –
3 the
4 –
5 –
6 the
7 The, the
8 the

**16**

2 the/a
3 a
4 a
5 a
6 a
7 the
8 the
9 the
10 the
11 the
12 the

**17**

2 the
3 a
4 a
5 the
6 the
7 a
8 the
9 the
10 the
11 a
12 the
13 a

**18**

2 Melanie
3 Europe
4 President Clinton
5 home
6 the Mayor
7 the afternoon
8 cat
9 the violin
10 Swimming
11 the Colosseum
12 the Bridgeford

**19**

1 We go **to bed** at 9 o'clock every night.
2 Can you give me some **advice**, please?
3 These trousers **are** very expensive.
4 The police **are** here.
5 Jonathan went **to Brazil** on holiday last year.
6 There are a lot of **sheep** in that field.
7 The news about the accident **was** shocking.
8 My car is the red **one** which is parked outside.
9 Aunt Lucy gave me a pair of **gloves** for my birthday.
10 They play golf once **a** week.

**20**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 B | 4 C | 6 C | 8 A |
| 3 B | 5 B | 7 C | 9 B |

**21**

2 It can't be a star. It must be a starfish.
3 It can't be a coat-hanger. It must be an umbrella.
4 It can't be a violin. It must be a guitar.
5 It can't be a table. It must be a chair.
6 It can't be a TV. It must be a computer.

### Oral Activity

2 Simon found a pair of woollen gloves.
3 Simon found some old books.
4 Simon found an hourglass.
5 Simon found a mask.
6 Simon found a green radio.
7 Simon found some old coins.
8 Simon found an old typewriter.

### Writing Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

...I found some old books and the hourglass which Dad used to have in his study. I also found a mask and the green radio that Mum had in the living-room. I found some old coins and the old typewriter which used to belong to Grandpa. It was very interesting looking at everything again.

Love,
Simon

# UNIT 18: Some / Any / No - A lot of / Much / Many - (A) little / (A) few

**1**

SA: Is there any traffic in the picture?
SB: No, there isn't.
SA: Are there any children in the picture?
SB: No, there aren't.
SA: Is there any snow in the picture?
SB: Yes, there is.
SA: Are there any trees in the picture?
SB: Yes, there are.
SA: Is there any ice in the picture?
SB: Yes, there is.
SA: Are there any houses in the picture?
SB: Yes, there are.
SA: Is there any fog in the picture?
SB: No, there isn't.

**2**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 some | 4 some | 6 some |
| 3 any | 5 no | 7 some |

**3**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 C | 5 B | 8 A |
| 3 C | 6 C | 9 C |
| 4 A | 7 A | 10 C |

**4**

2 anything
3 any
4 any
5 Anywhere
6 Anyone/Anybody

**5**

2 everything
3 everywhere
4 everyone/ everybody
5 everywhere
6 every

**6**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 lives | 4 is | 6 smells/is |
| 3 knows | 5 feels/is | |

**7**

2 anyone/anybody
3 everywhere
4 anywhere
5 something
6 Someone/ Somebody
7 anything

**8**

2 How much
3 How many
4 How much
5 How many
6 How many
7 How much

**9**

2 many
3 much
4 a lot of
5 many
6 a lot of
7 much
8 a lot of
9 many
10 much

**10**

2 much
3 many
4 many
5 a lot
6 much
7 a lot
8 much
9 a lot
10 much

**11**

2 too many
3 too much
4 too many
5 Too many
6 too much
7 too much

**12**

a little honey, a few cars, a little ice-cream, a little milk, a few women, a few sheep, a little water, a few cups, a little flour, a few forks, a few babies, a little apple juice, a little pepper, a few dolls, a little marmalade, a few dresses

**13**

2 a few
3 a little
4 few
5 little
6 few
7 a few
8 little
9 little
10 a little, a few

**14**

2 too much
3 any
4 some
5 everyone
6 many, very few
7 anywhere, somewhere
8 everyone, nobody, 0some
9 any

**15**

1 Could you lend me **some** money, please?
2 How **much** time have we got left?
3 There aren't **many** chocolates in the box.
4 I don't know **anything** about chemistry.
5 I'm looking for **something** in the cupboard.
6 I want to go **somewhere** nice and quiet for my holidays.
7 I don't need **any** help with my homework.
8 You can have **anything** you want. Just ask for it.
9 Did you catch **any** fish in the river?
10 Everybody **knows** that the Earth is round.

**16**

2 B
3 C
4 A
5 A
6 B
7 B
8 C

### Oral Activity

SA: We must take some camera film.
SB: We must take some sweatshirts.
SA: We must take some insect repellent.
SB: We must take some sunscreen.
SA: We must take some matches.
SB: We needn't take any boots.

### Writing Activity

**(Suggested Answer)**

...string but you needn't take any tools. You must also take some camera film and some sweatshirts, but you needn't take any boots. You must take some sunscreen and some insect repellent, and you must take some matches, too.

If you need any more help, just ask me. Have a good time!

Best wishes,
Andrew

# UNIT 19: Questions

**1**

2 Can he swim, too?
3 Does Sharon like playing tennis, too?
4 Did Mike read a book last week, too?
5 Has Anne bought a new car, too?
6 Are you wearing a red dress, too?

**2**

2 Does
3 Have
4 Can
5 Have
6 Did

**3**

2 Will you finish this tomorrow?
3 Did you remember to buy some eggs?
4 Has George moved house yet?
5 Can you help me clean the kitchen?

**4**

T: Are
T: Can
T: Do

**5**

2 Don't you know what the capital of Italy is?
3 Don't you find him handsome?
4 Haven't you ever swum in the sea?
5 Can't you keep quiet while I'm on the phone?
6 Didn't they know that the meeting was cancelled?
7 Haven't you paid the bill yet?
8 Aren't you taking the children with you?

**6**

1 Which
2 Which
3 What, Which
4 What, Which
5 What, Which

**7**

2 What
3 What
4 How
5 How
6 What
7 What
8 How

**8**

2 long
3 often
4 many
5 much
6 far
7 many
8 often
9 long

**9**

1 B
2 Which C
3 Which C
4 Who B
5 How many B

**10**

2 What time/When
3 Whose
4 How many
5 Why
6 Which
7 What
8 How often
9 How much
10 How long
11 Where
12 Who

**11**

2 Where
3 How long
4 When
5 How many
6 How much
7 How
8 Why

**12**

2 How often does Jane buy new clothes?
3 Whose desk is this?/Whose is this desk?
4 Are you going to his party?
5 How far is it from your house to the cinema?
6 When did you start work?
7 What time/When do you go to bed?
8 Why did you close the door?
9 Did you go shopping yesterday?
10 How much did your sunglasses cost?
11 How many people were invited to Helen's wedding?
12 Where does Jonathan work?

**13**

2 A
3 B
4 A
5 A
6 A

**14**

2 Who did Paul meet?
3 Who is James seeing tomorrow? (NB: when see is used in continuous tenses it means 'visit'.)
4 Who has found a new job?
5 What is Mum doing?
6 Who phoned Richard?
7 What is she reading?
8 Who did they welcome?
9 Who went on holiday with Joanne?
10 What are they building?
11 Who does Helen like?
12 Who lives with Bill?

**15**

2 Who is Linda talking to?
3 What is he looking at?
4 Who did Sandra buy a present for?
5 Where does Paul come from?
6 Who did the children go to the park with?
7 Who did she borrow this dress from?
8 What is Tim looking for?

**16**

1 haven't you, won't you
2 hasn't he, do you, have you
3 didn't he, aren't they

**17**

2 isn't she
3 haven't we
4 does he
5 have they
6 doesn't he
7 is she
8 aren't they
9 are we
10 can't he
11 is it
12 didn't she
13 aren't I
14 did you

**18**

2 hasn't she, she has
3 isn't he, he is
4 does he, he doesn't
5 don't they, they do
6 haven't you, I have
7 don't you, I don't
8 isn't he, he isn't
9 doesn't she, she does
10 isn't it, it isn't
11 don't you, we do
12 doesn't she, she does

**19**

2 doesn't she ↗
3 did he ↗
4 are we ↗
5 doesn't he ↘
6 isn't she ↘
7 didn't he ↗
8 haven't they ↘
9 isn't she ↗
10 won't he ↘

**20**

1 Did she **return** from her trip to Paris?/**Has** she returned from her trip to Paris?
2 **Which** one do you like best?
3 Who **phoned** last night?/Who did **you** phone last night?
4 Did **they not** enjoy their journey?
5 You never drive at night, **do** you?
6 Let's go shopping, **shall** we?
7 There are lots of flowers, aren't **there**?
8 **Does** he know the answer?
9 **Where** are you going?
10 Who do you **live with**?

**21**

2 He asked me if I could give him directions to the post office. / He asked me to give him directions to the post office.
3 The boy said (that) he was going to the park that day.
4 Father told me (that) he would tidy the garden the following/next day/the day after.
5 John asked me to turn off the light.

**22**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | A | 5 | C | 8 | C |
| 3 | C | 6 | A | 9 | B |
| 4 | B | 7 | A | 10 | A |

### Oral Activity

2 SA: How long did it last?
SB: It lasted six years.
3 SA: Which countries were involved?
SB: Germany, Italy, France, Great Britain, the USA, the Soviet Union, Japan and China were involved.
4 SA: Who was the British Prime Minister?
SB: The British Prime Minister was Sir Winston Churchill.
5 SA: Where did most of the battles take place?
SB: Most of the battles took place in Europe.
6 SA: How many people were killed?
SB: More than forty million people were killed.
7 SA: How did it end?
SB: The Americans dropped atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

### Writing Activity

**(Suggested answer)**

Where did you fight?
What was it like?
How long did you fight for?
Where were you when it ended?
Were you injured?

# UNIT 20: Prepositions - Linking Words

**1**

**(Suggested answers)**

2 at (I like going shopping with my friends.)
3 at (I usually stay at home.)
4 on (I usually go out with my friends.)
5 on (I wear very warm clothes.)
6 at (I am having an English lesson at the moment.)
7 at (I usually go to bed at 10 o'clock at night.)
8 in (No, I didn't.)
9 at (Yes, I usually do.)
10 on (I usually visit my family.)

**2**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | on | 5 | at | 8 | On |
| 3 | in | 6 | at | 9 | in |
| 4 | in | 7 | at | 10 | On |

**3**

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | At | 4 | in | 6 | on | 8 | at |
| 3 | on | 5 | on | 7 | on | 9 | on |

**4**

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | C | 4 | B | 6 | A | 8 | B |
| 3 | B | 5 | B | 7 | B | | |

**5**

2 SA: When was Gandhi first put in prison?
SB: He was first put in prison on March 10th, 1922.
3 SA: When was the Acropolis built?
SB: It was built in the 5th century BC.
4 SA: When was the Mona Lisa painted?
SB: It was painted in the 16th century.
5 SA: When was the telephone invented?
SB: It was invented in 1876.
6 SA: When was Mozart born?
SB: He was born on January 27th, 1756.
7 SA: When did Marilyn Monroe die?
SB: She died on August 5th, 1962.
8 SA: When did Neil Armstrong land on the moon?
SB: He landed on the moon on July 20th, 1969.

**6**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | under | 7 | opposite | 12 | between |
| 3 | in | 8 | in | 13 | on |
| 4 | at | 9 | beside | 14 | at |
| 5 | on | 10 | near | 15 | in |
| 6 | in | 11 | in | | |

**7**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | on | 6 | in |
| 3 | in | 7 | next to/behind |
| 4 | at | 8 | behind/next to |
| 5 | On | 9 | on |

**8**

2 next to/beside/ near
3 On
4 under
5 between
6 on
7 in
8 in, in
9 In
10 Between

**9**

2 in front of
3 Opposite
4 under
5 between
6 near
7 behind
8 on

**10**

2 B
3 C
4 A
5 A
6 C
7 C

**11**

2 through
3 over
4 from ... to
5 round
6 down
7 out of/into
8 up

**12**

2 down
3 along
4 behind
5 on
6 near
7 out of
8 Near
9 on

**13**

1 The car is going **along** the street.
2 Uncle Jim fell **down** the stairs yesterday.
3 I live **at** 14, South Grove.
4 The Eiffel Tower is **in** Paris.
5 Let's have a party **next** Saturday.

**14**

2 A
3 B
4 A
5 A
6 B
7 C
8 B
9 A
10 A

**15**

2 were you, I would
3 wishes she had gone
4 wish you would tidy
5 if I don't have/haven't got
6 had set

**16**

3 I was hungry, so I made a sandwich.
4 I had a party because it was my birthday.
5 I feel tired today because I went to bed late last night.
6 My clothes were dirty, so I washed them.
7 The food was burnt because she forgot to turn off the oven.
8 We were bored, so we went for a walk.
9 Jenny was late, so the boss was angry.
10 Frank went to the hairdresser's because his hair was too long.

**17**

2 was reading
3 had cleaned
4 made
5 see

**18**

2 although/even though
3 In spite of/Despite
4 in spite of/despite
5 although/even though
6 in spite of/despite
7 In spite of/Despite
8 Although/Even though

**19**

2 ... is old, it's in good condition.
3 ... that it was snowing, we went out for a walk.
4 ... Sandra is short.
5 ... was a hot day, he wore a warm coat.
6 ... busy, he helped me with my homework.
7 ... over, she didn't hurt herself.

**20**

2 a
3 e
4 b
5 d

# Revision 4 (Units 1 - 20)

**1**

2 A
3 C
4 B
5 B
6 A
7 A
8 C
9 A
10 C

**2**

1 must, mustn't
2 mustn't, must
3 Must, needn't, must
4 must, must, needn't, must
5 Must, needn't

**3**

2 You mustn't use
3 Kelly may/might/could be
4 Shall I call
5 You ought to/should go
6 Richard was able to buy
7 Alex can't be
8 Eric may/might have
9 You needn't/don't have to do
10 He must be

**4**

2 that/which/-
3 who
4 that/which/-
5 when
6 whose
7 why

**5**

2 Sam was attacked on Saturday night.
3 The beds are made every morning (by the maid).
4 The letter will be written next week.
5 The project had been finished (by Gary).
6 The birthday cake is being baked by Catherine.
7 Were the police informed by Alison?
8 The burglars were being watched by the police.
9 The dishes have to be washed before we go out.
10 Your homework must be completed tonight.
11 Their house may be painted this summer.
12 Three languages are taught at that school.
13 The car was being driven by Tara.
14 Who was that poem written by?
15 The kitchen was being tidied by Mrs Jefferson.
16 Andrew is going to be offered a better post by the boss. / A better post is going to be offered to Andrew by the boss.

**6**

2 leave
3 would not/ wouldn't buy
4 would stop
5 had been
6 had paid
7 did not/ didn't have to
8 would not/ wouldn't make

**7**

2 Mother asked Tommy why he was crying.
3 The woman begged the rich man to lend her some money.
4 Mr Smith told the children not to knock on the door so loudly.
5 The teacher told the students that coffee is grown in Brazil.
6 Rick asked me if I could go at four instead of five the following afternoon.
7 The man told the policemen that he had never seen the woman before.
8 Grandpa told/promised Alex that he'd buy him a new toy train for his birthday.
9 I asked what time Paul was coming.
10 The boss told me to call him as soon as I heard about the results.

**8**

2 Where does she live?
3 How old is she?
4 What are her favourite hobbies?
5 How often does she go swimming?
6 What do Doris and Peter do every Saturday morning?
7 How do they come home?
8 Why does Peter admire Doris?

**9**

2 C
3 A
4 A
5 C
6 B
7 C
8 C
9 C
10 A

**10**

2 The
3 a, the
4 the
5 an
6 The
7 a, the, an
8 An, the
9 The, a, a
10 a, the
11 the
12 a
13 an
14 the

**11**

2 the biggest ... in
3 the sweetest ... of
4 taller than
5 more generous than
6 better than
7 the youngest ... in
8 richer than
9 the most delicious of
10 the funniest ... in

**12**

2 the smallest of
3 the biggest of
4 more, than
5 more, than
6 the quietest of
7 the noisiest of
8 more, than
9 fewer, than
10 better, than

**13**

1 somewhere
2 anywhere
3 anyone
4 everyone
5 some
6 nobody
7 something
8 anything

**14**

1 any
2 no
3 anything
4 some, any
5 everyone
6 every
7 somewhere
8 Nothing
9 Anyone
10 No one
11 everywhere
12 Nowhere

**15**

1 to be
2 to buy
3 writing/to write
4 cycling
5 go
6 doing
7 to see
8 working

**16**

1 Neither John **nor** Sally likes swimming.
2 I don't want **anything** to eat at the moment.
3 You **mustn't** run across the road. It's dangerous.
4 Have you **ever** been to Italy?
5 I **could run** very fast when I was young, but I can't now.
6 Tom was the man **who** helped me paint my house.
7 Sandra **visited** the zoo with her friends yesterday.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR BOOK

# Grammarway 2

## with answers

**Grammarway 2 is the second book in a four-level grammar series in full colour. Designed for learners at post-elementary level, the book practises and revises English grammar structures systematically and can be used to supplement any main course at post-elementary level.**

Express Publishing

**Key Features**

- clear, simple presentation of grammar structures through functional examples and attractive photographs and illustrations
- comprehensive theory boxes
- a variety of exercises with space for filling in answers
- exercises designed to help the learner use correct appropriate patterns in everyday situations
- colourful photographs and illustrations
- error correction exercises
- oral and writing activities at the end of each unit involving structures presented
- revision units
- full key to the exercises in the Student's Book

**Components**

- Grammarway 2 Student's Book with answers
- Grammarway 2 Student's Book without answers
- Grammarway 2 Teacher's Book
- Grammarway 2 Picture Flashcards